TYPES AND SYMBOLS OF THE CHURCH
IN THE WRITINGS OF JACOB OF SARUG

A DISSERTATION

Submitted to
The Faculty of Theology
In Partial fulfillment of the Requirements
For the Degree of
Doctor of Theology

©
Copyright
All Rights Reserved
By
Armando Badih Elkhoury

Director: Prof. Dr. Peter Bruns
Reader: Prof. Dr. Sidney Griffith

Eichstätt, Bavaria, Germany
July 2017
ABSTRACT

TYPES AND SYMBOLS OF THE CHURCH
IN THE WRITINGS OF JACOB OF SARUG

Armando Elkhoury

Readers: Peter Bruns, Sidney Griffith

This study deals with the life story of Jacob of Sarug (A.D. 451-521) and the various typologies of the Church scattered in his copious mimre. Jacob of Sarug is one of the most prolific, distinguished, and influential Syriac authors, yet a systematic examination of his symbolic language referring to the Church remains a desideratum. The following research satisfies this want which stems from the fact that the Church is next to Jesus Christ in importance, as her subject is prominent in Jacob’s poetic works. The work presented herein complements and contributes to the scholarly works already published in the theological field of Syriac Ecclesiology. Moreover, it is a foundational study for further researchers and theologians wishing to investigate Jacob’s comprehension of the Church.

This study shows that the question about the person of Jacob of Sarug shall remain unsatisfactorily answered, for his life stories discovered in extant manuscripts are hagiographical. Next, it reveals the Church as a building on Golgotha based on the actions of Melchizedek, Abraham, Jacob, and Moses. Then, it explains Jacob’s depiction of the Church as a fisherman and life-giving fishnet. Next, it deals with the topic of the Church as the Garden of Eden on Earth in whose midst is the Tree of Life. Lastly, this study explicates the notion of the Church as the Virgin Bride of Christ.

The Church as such emerges as a permanent reality solidly founded on the cross, a sacramental and missionary Church, and sacrifice is central to her understanding. The Mysteries and the proclamation of the Good News are essential to the continuation of her Lord’s mission. Moreover, she is a return to the Garden of Eden which anticipates God’s promise of salvation in the afterlife.

Finally, Christ will always be united to her no matter what, for she is in effect his created body. Therefore, she remains with him wherever he is, and her actions mimic his deeds. She follows him to Sheol, breaks down its gates, frees Adam, resurrects with her Lord, is victorious over sin and death, and nothing overcomes her.
In memory of my parents, Badih and Laurence
To my siblings, their spouses, children, and grandchildren
They are one: wheresoever he is, behold she is with him.

—Jacob of Sarug
# CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGMENT ............................................................................................................. ix

ABBREVIATIONS .................................................................................................................. xi

INTRODUCTION ...................................................................................................................... 1

CHAPTER 1 JACOB OF SARUG .............................................................................................. 7

1.1 Life .................................................................................................................................. 7

1.1.1 Biographical Sources ............................................................................................... 7

1.1.2 A Sketch of Jacob’s Life ......................................................................................... 11

1.2 Works .............................................................................................................................. 24

1.3 Jacob’s Audience ............................................................................................................ 29

1.4 Theological and Political Contexts .............................................................................. 31

1.4.1 The Precursors of the Council of Chalcedon ......................................................... 32

1.4.2 The Council of Chalcedon (A.D. 451) ..................................................................... 39

1.4.3 State and Church ..................................................................................................... 40

1.5 Chalcedonian or Non-Chalcedonian? ........................................................................... 43

CHAPTER 2 THE CHURCH, BUILDING ON GOLGOTHA .................................................. 51

2.1 The House on Golgotha Melchizedek Built ................................................................. 56

2.1.1 Perfect Priesthood .................................................................................................... 56

2.1.2 New Mysteries ......................................................................................................... 60

2.1.3 House on Golgotha for the Holy Things ................................................................. 62

2.2 The Altar Abraham and Isaac Built ............................................................................. 63

2.2.1 The Day of the Lord ................................................................................................. 63

2.2.2 Golgotha, the Mountain of Sacrifice ....................................................................... 66

2.2.3 The Altar of Sacrifice .............................................................................................. 68

2.3 The Rock Jacob Anointed ............................................................................................. 71

2.3.1 The Path of the Mysteries ...................................................................................... 72
2.3.2 The Stone .................................................................73
2.3.3 Anointed Stone Symbol of the Church .....................74
2.4 The Rock upon Which Moses Sat ...............................77
  2.4.1 Miracle by the Hidden Sign ...............................78
  2.4.2 Victory by the Cross and Crucifixion .....................79
  2.4.3 Victorious Cross Fixed on the Church .....................84
2.5 Conclusion .....................................................................85

CHAPTER 3 THE CHURCH, FISHERMAN AND LIFE-GIVING FISHNET ........................................................................87
  3.1 Jesus Christ, ṣayādā (شیام) Par Excellence ..................89
    3.1.1 The Magi ..............................................................90
    3.1.2 The Samaritan Woman and the Samaritans ..........93
  3.2 The Evil ṣayādā (شیام) ................................................104
    3.2.1 The Man Possessed with Legion .........................105
    3.2.2 The Sinful Woman ................................................113
  3.3 The Church, Life-Giving Fishnet ..................................116
  3.4 The Church, Fisher of Men ..........................................118
    3.4.1 Peter and the Disciples, Fishers of Men .................119
    3.4.2 Paul, Caught for the Service of the Gospel .............131
  3.5 Conclusion .....................................................................134

CHAPTER 4 THE CHURCH, GARDEN OF EDEN ON EARTH IN WHOSE MIDST IS THE TREE OF LIFE .............................................137
  4.1 The Vineyard, Fig Tree, and Olive Tree .......................137
    4.1.1 The Church, Vineyard .........................................138
    4.1.2 The Church, Fig Tree .........................................153
    4.1.3 The Church, Olive Tree ...................................156
  4.2 Christ, Grape Cluster, Olive Tree, and Tree of Life ......159
    4.2.1 Christ, Grape Cluster .........................................159
    4.2.2 Christ, Olive Tree ...........................................166
ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Many have made this study possible by their support and encouragement. My adviser, Prof. Dr. Peter Bruns, has accompanied me throughout this research project. His guidance and insights were invaluable to bring this work to fruition. To Prof. Dr. Sidney Griffith I also owe my gratitude for having taught me Syriac and Christian Arabic literature, and for serving as a reader.

In addition to the formal reading committee, I would like to thank Domkapitular Paul Schmidt, the previous rector of Collegium Orientale, Eichstätt, Germany, Dr. Oleksandr Petryanko, the current rector, for their friendship, and for hosting and allowing me to use the Collegium’s resources for research.

Dr. Boulos Feghali, my uncle, has challenged me, pushed me forward every step of the way, and provided me with immeasurable advice. Dr. Seely Beggiani, Dr. David Fisher, and Dr. William J. Prather have been instrumental in editing this work. Their motivations, guidance, time and a keen eye for details are much appreciated. I also wish to thank Robert Rapljenović and Felix Rohr for editing the German summary of this work. Of course, any mistakes remain my own.

I am indebted to His Excellency Robert Shaheen, Bishop Emeritus of the Maronite Eparchy of our Lady of Lebanon of Los Angeles, and his successor, His Excellency Bishop A. Elias Zaidan. They allowed me to leave my pastoral duties at St. Rafka Maronite Church, Denver, CO, to pursue a deeper knowledge of the Syriac Church Fathers. Furthermore, their financial support helped me during these past few years.
It is equally my privilege to acknowledge a friend who insists on being anonymous, and Don Sawyer, pastor of Our Lady’s Maronite Church, Austin, TX, for their encouragement and funding my educational aspirations. I will never be capable of recompensing them for their generosity. A special thank you is also due to Dr. David Fisher, then pastor of St. Anthony of Padua Maronite Church, Cincinnati, OH, Fr. Elias Abi-Sarkis, pastor of St. Thérèse de Lisieux Maronite Church, Tulsa, OK, and Chorbishop Sharbel Maroun, pastor of St. Maron Maronite Church, Minneapolis, MN, for their monetary gifts.

My gratitude goes likewise to Periodeut Peter Fahed, Rector of Our Lady of Lebanon Maronite Seminary, Washington, D.C., and the seminarians for their patience and urging me on during the final stages of writing.

Without the support of my family and friends, this work would have never seen the light of day. Therefore, I would like to thank a former parishioner who emboldened me to undertake this endeavor. My friend, Rodrigue Constantin, has been the shoulder to lean on since we first met in 2002. The friends I met during my time in Germany, especially Petro and Iryna Stanko, and their two daughters, Marjana and Anastasia, made my sojourn in Germany wonderful. Last, but not least, I extend my gratitude to my cousin, Dolly Saliba, and her husband, Raymond Saliba, and their children, Grace, Aldo, and Alain, for welcoming me with open arms when my plane first landed in Frankfurt, Germany. To all of you and those who remain unmentioned, for they are too many to enumerate, I am thankful.

Finally, I am mostly indebted to my siblings, Joe, Silvie, Tony, Bakhos, Zeina, and John, their spouses, and their children, for their blind and unconditional support, encouragement, and love. To them and in memory of our parents, Badih and Laurence, I dedicate this study.
ABBREVIATIONS


[ ] Text added by the author
[...] Text left out by the author
A.D. Anno Domini
B.C. before Christ
bzw. beziehungsweise
c.a. circa
ed(s). editor(s)
et al. et alii
ibid. ibidem
i.e. id est
Lit. literally
Mt. Mountain
n. Chr. Nach Christus
trans. translator
u. a. unter anderem
vgl. vergleiche
z. B. zum Beispiel

AB Analecta Bollandiana
AS Acta Sanctorum
ASPD Aphraatis Sapientis Persae Demonstrationes
BED Baker Encyclopedia of the Bible
BKV1 Bibliothek der Kirchenväter: Auswahl der vorzüglichsten patristischen Werke in deutscher Übersetzung
BKV2 Bibliothek der Kirchenväter: Eine Auswahl patristischer Werke in deutscher Übersetzung
BOCV Bibliotheca Orientalis Clementino-Vaticana
CSCO Corpus Scriptorum Christianorum Orientalium
CSD A Compendious Syriac Dictionary
ECR Eastern Churches Review
ED Euntes Docete
ETL Ephemerides Theologicae Lovanienses
FC Fontes Christiani
GECS Gorgias Eastern Christian Studies
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEDSH</td>
<td>Gorgias Encyclopedic Dictionary of the Syriac Heritage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCO</td>
<td>Het Christelijk Oosten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HJS</td>
<td>Homilies of Mar Jacob of Sarug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HJSS</td>
<td>Hugoye: Journal of Syriac Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HS</td>
<td>Heiligenkreuzer Studien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSJS</td>
<td>Homiliae Selectae Mar-Jacobi Sarugensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSS</td>
<td>Journal of Semitic Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LM</td>
<td>Le Muséon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L'OrSy</td>
<td>L'Orient Syrien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVS</td>
<td>La Vie Spirituelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML'UniSJ</td>
<td>Mélanges de l’Université Saint-Joseph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAKG</td>
<td>Nederlands Archief voor Kerkgeschiedenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBD</td>
<td>New Bible Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIDB</td>
<td>The New Interpreters of the Bible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCA</td>
<td>Orientalia Christiana Analecta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCP</td>
<td>Orientalia Christiana Periodica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLA</td>
<td>Orientalia Lovaniensia Analecta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Ostkirchliche Studien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OrChr</td>
<td>Oriens Christianus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pdel'O</td>
<td>Parole de L’Orient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO</td>
<td>Patrologia Orientalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PS</td>
<td>Patrologia Syriaca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC</td>
<td>Revue Catholique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROC</td>
<td>Revue de L’Orient Chrétien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REB</td>
<td>Revue des Études Byzantines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSE</td>
<td>Revue des Sciences Ecclésiastiques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC</td>
<td>Sources Chrétiennes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SM</td>
<td>S. Martyrii, Qui et Sahdona Quæ Supersunt Omnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPL</td>
<td>Scrinium Patristicum Lateranense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVTQ</td>
<td>St. Vladimir’s Theological Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLCIA</td>
<td>Texts from Christian Late Antiquity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH</td>
<td>The Harp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTV</td>
<td>The True Vine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS</td>
<td>Thesaurus Syriacus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZDMG</td>
<td>Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZKG</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZKT</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Katholische Theologie</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Syriac Christian writers’ love for typological depictions of their beloved Church\(^1\) yielded the richest fields of symbolism in early Syriac literature.\(^2\) Murray shows the extent of this preference for this kind of ecclesiological-theological expositions in *Symbols of Church and Kingdom*. The work presented herein unfolds such imageries scattered in the vast poetic writings of Jacob of Sarug (A.D. 451-521), one of the most prolific writers in the Syriac Christian corpus.

Of the Syriac Fathers who can be studied, the choice fell on Jacob of Sarug, for no modern scholar has yet studied extensively his symbolic language referring to the Church\(^3\) albeit he has anchored his thoughts in the Syriac tradition and enjoys the reputation as one of the most important Syriac poets. In his *Symbole der Kirche: Die Ekklesiologie der Väter*, Rahner lays out thematically the Church’s symbols as employed in Greek and Latin literature. However, Syriac authors, except for a brief adverts to Ephrem\(^4\) and Jacob of Sarug,\(^5\) are absent from his work. Studying Syriac typology, one cannot do without *Symbols of the Church and Kingdom*, which has become a reference

---

3. In contrast to Jacob of Sarug’s images of the Church, his Mariological symbolism has been studied and published. See James Puthuparampil, *Mariological Thought of Mar Jacob of Serugh (451–521)*, Morān ’eth’ō, vol. 25 (Kottayam, India: St. Ephrem Ecumenical Research Institute, 2005).
book in the field since its first publication in 1975. In this work Murray laid
down the foundation for such studies. He consciously limited his extensive
research to the period before the fifth-century schism, since De Vries had
already published Der Kirchenbegriff der von Rom getrennten Syrer, which
covers the subsequent period6 (only the last chapter of De Vries’s book
corresponds in scope to Murray’s research and the study presented herein).7
Furthermore, De Vries’s primary interest lay in surveying only Syriac authors
he considered separated from the Church of Rome8—i.e, non-Chalcedonians.
Accordingly, Murray’s research ends before the Council of Chalcedon (A.D.
451), while De Vries’s study covers the post-conciliar period. These two works
supplement each other and together examine the impressive and extensive
corpus of Syriac literature. The two scholars, however, do not take into
account the theological thought of Jacob of Sarug, an important Syriac author
functioning and writing at the height of the Chalcedonian controversy.
Neither Murray nor De Vries makes use of his compositions. The former
rightly does not avail himself of Jacob’s poetic fecundity, since he did not
compose within the time span of the Syriac literary works investigated and
presented in Symbols of Church and Kingdom. The latter mainly chooses not to
include Jacob’s oeuvres because his research interest lay in Syriac writers who
rejected the Council of 451. By accepting Peeter’s arguments9 that placed
Jacob in the Chalcedonian camp,10 De Vries rarely quoted this Syriac
wordsmith.

8. See also Wilhelm De Vries, “La Conception de l’Église chez les Syriens Séparés de
9. See Paul Peeters, “Jacques de Saroug appartient-il à la secte monophysite?,” AB, 66,
10. Es ist aber zweifelhaft, ob das Zeugnis des Jakob von Sarug den syrischen
    Monophysiten zugeschrieben werden darf. Paul Peeters zog neuerdings die übliche
    These vom Monophysitismus des Jakob von Sarug stark in Zweifel und brachte gute
Owing to his interest in exploring Jacob of Sarug’s doctrinal stances, Abbeloos does not include, in his treatise on Jacob, any of his typological imagery of the Church. Bou Mansour, who published two volumes on the theology of Jacob of Sarug, recognizes in his chapter on the Church Jacob’s interpretive method but elects not to expound on it. He wrote, “I certainly do not have the intention to study at this juncture all the ecclesiological typology that Jacob discerns in the people and events of the Old Testament.” Engberding, studying the liturgy of the Church of the East, explores the theme of the Church as the Bride of Christ. Once again Jacob of Sarug’s writings on the subject do not come into the picture. Jacob’s influence on East Syriac theology is minimal, in view of the fact that they do not consider him one of their Church Fathers. Following in Engberding’s footsteps, Overstraeten centers her research on the nuptial liturgies of the different Syriac Churches and explores the subject of the Church as the Bride of Christ but without availing herself of Jacob’s oeuvres. Graffin writes on the same theme and only translates a few texts of Jacob of Sarug related to the subject. Besides Graffin, Harvey investigates biblical women as images of the Church in Jacob’s works. As important as the studies of Graffin and Harvey are, they remain limited, for they present two types of Jacob’s symbolic language of the


Church. Consequently, the lack of an overarching presentation of Jacob of Sarug’s typologies referring to the Church is the catalyst for this undertaking. The present study supplements the works of the aforementioned authors and fills in a gap in the research of Syriac studies, especially in the overall theological worldview of Jacob of Sarug.

Jacob the poet and biblical interpreter was no systematic theologian in the modern sense of the term. His Semitic thought process fits well the style followed by his intellectual ancestors such as Aphrahat and Ephrem. Their repetitive spiral-like expositions draw their audience into a deeper understanding of the mystery of God. Notwithstanding the fact that Jacob of Sarug’s writings follow a particular order that fulfilled the intent for which he tirelessly composed them, he did not arrange them in conformity with specific dogmatic themes, e.g., Christology, Ecclesiology. Therefore, the student of Jacob’s theological concepts on the Church has to ferret out the rich nuggets sprinkled throughout his impressive corpus and be satisfied with what they could find knowing in advance that finding all of them could be a life long pursuit. Hence, the findings presented herein are in no way exhaustive but should provide the reader an insight into Jacob’s concept of the Church. One must cautiously proceed in this endeavor bearing in mind Murray’s warning of the danger of unfaithful interpretation when modern presuppositions supersede the thought of the texts under consideration. Furthermore, one has to take into account Murray’s emphasis on ‘listening.’ He stresses that “the interpreters of early Syriac Fathers, as of the New Testament, must ‘listen to them’ to discover their theological idioms; their purposes were not necessarily the same as ours, and we will fail in our purpose if we impose a pattern alien to their thought.” Brock echoes Murray’s emphasis on listening concerning the writings of Jacob of Sarug, “... I should stress at the outset that it is essential to read Jacob on his own terms, and not to approach him with our

19. Ibid., 1-2.
own western European presuppositions, if we are to appreciate his true originality and profundity.”

The scope of this work is limited to the Jacob of Sarug’s body of work, as published in Bedjan’s *Homiliae selectae Mar-Jacobi Sarugensis* (Vol. I-V) and *S. Martyrii, Qui et Sahdona Quæ Supersunt Omnia*. Still, this undertaking remains an extensive survey of Jacob’s extant literary output. Besides, this study avoids entering into the Christological debate of the time, which Jacob shunned in his poems, for the most part, owing to the fact that the research is mainly bound to Church imagery. For this reason, the controversial letters ascribed to Jacob of Sarug, in which their author openly denounces the Council of Chalcedon, are not considered. The plan adopted for this work is, one the whole, based on the homilies in Bedjan’s editions. This research systematically presents the amassed types and symbols of the Church in Jacob’s poetry following Murray’s arrangement, in an order determined with reference to the Bible. For fear of making this work too large, this study limits itself only to Jacob’s writings. Still, the reader will not fail to see herein an attempt at connecting some of Jacob’s themes with topics addressed by his intellectual ancestors by leaning on Murray’s work.

This dissertation comprises five chapters, a conclusion, and an appendix. The first chapter presents a sketch of the life of Jacob of Sarug based on the available bibliographical sources, his writings, and the audience he addressed. Moreover, it contains a description in broad terms of the theological and political contexts in which he functioned and wrote and his theological positions concerning the Christological issue of the time. The second Chapter explains Jacob of Sarug’s depiction of the Church as a building on Golgotha based on the actions of Melchizedek, Abraham, Jacob, and Moses. The third chapter explores how the Lord calls human beings to

---


him. This call to salvation becomes the mission of the Church. In this capacity, Jacob of Sarug symbolizes her as a fisher and life-giving fishnet. As a fishnet, the Church is Jesus’s instrument of redemption, and as a fisher, she is responsible for continuing her Lord mission by proclaiming the Kingdom of God and calling human beings to him. The fourth chapter explains the notion of the Church as the Garden of Eden on Earth and Jesus Christ, the Tree of Life, is ever present in her. The Son of God is the source of the life of the Church, and she is the excepted eschatological salvation, the return of Adam to the Garden of Eden. The last chapter expounds on the Church as the Bride of Christ and unfolds the inseparability between the Bride and her Bridegroom. This study ends with a conclusion followed by an appendix. The conclusion summarizes the findings of the dissertation and suggests further research on the subject. Finally, the appendix makes available for the first time an English translation of Jacob of Sarug’s mimro 134 entitled On Inquiry and Sanctity of the Church. It relates to the Ecclesiological theme of this work, insofar as the Church is the mimro’s main protagonist, and some of her symbols found in this mimro are the main topic of discussion in this work.
CHAPTER 1

JACOB OF SARUG

1.1 Life

The biography of Jacob of Sarug\(^1\) could not be but brief, for reliable historical information about him is lacking. Still, a few documents narrating snippets of his life story and containing scanty biographical data about him have reached modern times. The following sections detail the available bibliographical sources that allow one to sketch Jacob’s life broadly.

1.1.1 Biographical Sources

One of these documents is a panegyric,\(^2\) entitled *In the Name of our Lord We Write a mimro About Mar Jacob, the Doctor, [Bishop] of Batnan in Sarug. [This mimro], Composed by George, his Disciple, is to be Recited on the Feast of Mar Jacob* (حطم قلّي لمسمّيّ شعاداً كـا كـا اـتّصـص مـصـصأ وـها أـتّصـص مـصـصأ وـها أـتّصـص مـصـصأ وـها أـتّصـص مـصـصأ وـها أـتّصـص مـصـصأ وـها أـتّصـص مـصـصأ وـها أـتّصـص مـصـصأ وـها أـتّصـص مـصـصأ). Its author is a certain George, whose identity and relationship to Jacob of Sarug remain an enigma.\(^3\) Martin and Landersdofer opine that

---


George, the author of the panegyric, lived in the eparchy of Sarug and could have had ties with the church where Jacob of Sarug was reposed. Furthermore, this George is the bishop of Sarug to whom Jacob of Edessa (ca. A.D. 640 - 708) sent a letter almost a hundred years after the death of Jacob of Sarug. Unfortunately, the panegyric contains a minimal amount of historical facts about Jacob of Sarug regardless of the identity of its author or the relationship between him and Jacob.

The second document containing information about Jacob of Sarug was written by an unknown person by the name of Xenos in the twelfth century. This eulogy, recited on Jacob’s feast day, does not add to the biographical details already found in George’s panegyric. According to Krüger, Xenos is not a proper name, but rather a reference to an unknown person. He further explains that this work is not a mimro, but rather an introduction to one which is no longer extant. Upon a closer investigation of the text, he realizes it is an edited version of a sixth-century composition and

---

4. The Epistle of the Holy and Wise in Divine Things, Mar Jacob, Bishop of Edessa, to the Pious and Holy Mar George, Bishop of Sarug, and Through Him to All the Scribes, Who May Encounter This Book.


concludes that it is the oldest introduction to a *mimro* about the life and work of Jacob of Sarug. It is entitled *A mimro on Saint Mar Jacob, the Greatest of the Teachers, Composed by an Unknown in the Year 1455 of the Greeks, in Latter Tishrin* (November, A.D. 1143/1144). Krüger published a transliteration of the Syriac text along with a German translation.

Matagne provides a Latin translation of a third and brief work containing minimal details about the life of Jacob of Sarug. Abbeloos translated it into Latin and reproduced the Syriac original. It is entitled *Another Narrative About the Holy, Chosen and God-Clad Mar Jacob, the Divine Doctor and Bishop of Batnan in Sarug*. Krüger published a German translation of this text. One can find the fourth of such bibliographical writings in an Armenian manuscript. Lastly, Assemani published in Syriac with a Latin translation the fifth document, ascribed to Jacob of Edessa, concerning Jacob of Sarug, and Abbeloos rendered it into Latin.

Martin recognizes the possibility that extant Syriac manuscripts could be preserving unknown works containing details about the life of Jacob of Sarug could be preserved in. He states, “...[W]e have access to five different texts regarding [Jacob of Sarug], and it is probable that many others exist in

---

10. Ibid., 40-43.
16. See Martin, “Évêque-Poète,” 313-314. Assemani and Abbeloos had recourse to manuscripts that did not identify the author of this text.
manuscripts” (translation mine). His assessment was correct, for Krüger and Vööbus published articles about such texts almost a hundred years later! The former wrote about two mimre containing accounts of Jacob’s life. One of them is a variation of George’s panegyric previously discussed. Krüger describes the one published by Abbeloos and the other he discovered as two brothers of the same mother. The other mimro brought to light by Krüger is entitled [A Mimro] About Mar Jacob, the Vigilant Shepherd of Batnan in Sarug, the Church’s Ornament and Pride of All Teachings. Krüger reproduced the Syriac original and provided his readers with a German Translation. It was composed by George, a monk at the Syriac Orthodox Monastery of St. Mark, in Jerusalem in 1521.

Vööbus discovered a manuscript kept at the monastery of Mar Ĥanânjā also known as the Za’farān monastery. In it, he finds a text entitled [A Mimro] About Mar Jacob, the Teacher, Bishop of Batnan in Sarug. Unfortunately, Vööbus does not publish neither the Syriac original nor a modern translation of the work although, according to him, it is the only available document whose author attempted to write a proper biography of Jacob of Sarug. Still, Vööbus provides details of the most critical stages of Jacob’s life described in the mimro.

Although the reliability of the biographical information about Jacob of Sarug found in the previously-mentioned documents is questionable, these texts remain to date the best available sources containing bits and pieces of his life story. With this caution in mind, what follows is at best a hypothetical

19. See Krüger, “sogenannte Philoxenosvita”.
22. Ibid., 112.
23. See Vööbus, “unbekannte Biographie”.
24. Ibid., 401.
A sketch of Jacob of Sarug’s life,25 reconstructed based on these preserved writings.

1.1.2 A Sketch of Jacob’s Life

Jacob was born to pious Christian parents26 in Kurtam (ܟܪܬܡ)27 a town probably located in the district of Sarug (ܣܪܓ)28 on the Euphrates.29 Krüger argues against Kurtam as Jacob’s birthplace and suggests Hawra (ܚܘܪܐ)30 instead, where Jacob grew up (ܚܘܪܐ ܒ݂ܓܝܾܾܓ).31 Sony presents another possibility, stating that Jacob’s family probably left Kurtam, Jacob’s homeland, to settle in Hawra.32 His mother’s birthplace is unknown.

Jacob’s father was perchance a priest, and Jacob’s mother was perhaps sterile.33 The state of his parents is oddly similar to that of John the Baptist’s parents, Zechariah and Elizabeth: he was a priest, and she was barren (see Lk 1:5-7). Given his mother’s sterility (ܕܳܗܶܗܳܝ),34 Jacob’s conception was considered miraculous and occurred due to divine intervention by the intercession of a holy monk according to Vööbus35

28. See Martin, “Évêque-Poète,” 315. Sarug is known today as Suruç, a rural district in modern-day Turkey, several miles southwest of Urhoi (ܐܘܪܗܝ) (also known as Edessa or Urfa, Turkey). See Thomas Kollamparampil, Jacob of Serugh: Select Festal Homilies, trans. Thomas Kollamparampil (Rome: Center for Indian and Inter-Religious Studies, 1997), 3.
30. See Krüger, “sogenannte Philoxenosvita,” 43-44.
32. See Behnam M. Boulos Sony, “La Doctrine de Jacques de Saroug sur la Création et l’Anthropologie” (Institutum Patristicum Augustinianum, 1989), 47.
34. Ibid., 311.
and Abbeloos. Abbeloos’s reading of the Syriac text could be debatable, for another interpretation of the expression is possible. Abbeloos presumes it is the name of a certain dominus Barhadatus. The more likely reading, however, could be, “the revitalizing Lord.” Regardless of the English rendition, the biographer wanted to highlight that God’s hand unquestionably came into play not only at Jacob’s conception but also throughout his life. The hand of God took hold of his hand and guided him.

A fictitious text narrates an unusual event which occurred when Jacob, a three-year-old child, was with his parents at a packed church on the feast of the Epiphany or another dominical feast. At the invocation of the Holy Spirit or epiclesis, the Holy Spirit bestirred Jacob to leave his mother, cut

36. Since Vööbus did not publish the Syriac text and this author did not have access to the manuscript Vööbus consulted, his interpretation of the Syriac document remains unverified.

37. See Abbeloos, “Vita et Scriptis,” 311.


The story of this child informs of the following:


The more likely reading, however, could be, “the revitalizing Lord.”

To decipher the meaning of the expression, one can look at a similar expression, which means to do evil or to harm anyone. See R. Payne Smith, ed., TS, I (Oxonii: E Typographeo Clarendonianon, 1879), 812; J. Payne Smith, ed., CSD, (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1903), 82. In this context this expression could mean to make new, to refresh, or to revitalize. Thus, one could argue for the validity of the following translation:

Her husband brought her to the revitalizing Lord. They prayed there. He knew her according to God’s will, and she bore a son of wonder.


The story of this child informs of the following:

His father was a priest and his mother was sterile.

They brought pure oblations and gifts (a calque on the Greek δωρεά see note v. 75 in Ibid., 33.) before God in faith at all times.

The Divine Goodness visited them

and bestowed on them this gift because they were deemed worthy.

He was born and was raised by his parents

in the fear of God, the beginning of all wisdom.
through the crowd, go up to the altar, and drink three “handfuls” (i.e., sips?) of the already consecrated wine out of the chalice placed on the altar, the life-giving banquet table (كُفُّنُو: مَعْيَةِ). The author narrating this unusual occurrence wants to show that Jacob was a remarkable child, endowed early on with the gifts of the Holy Spirit and chosen to flourish. This story is meant to explain


When the child reached the age of three years, his mother took him on the feast of the Epiphany of the Only-Begotten and went to the holy church, along with many. While the bishop was in the inner sanctuary at the banquet table upon which the Son of God is sacrificed, [and] while he was bent down, and was petitioning God in sorrow and tears for the Holy Spirit to come down, rest upon and overshadow his offering, and perfect the mystery, which are pardons all who partake of it and they become heirs in heaven on high with the holy ones, whom baptism bore in holiness, Divine Goodness bestirred the Child. He went down from his mother’s arms and cut through the crowd while all who gathered were watching him. He entered the inner sanctuary rejoicing. He immediately approached the life-giving banquet, lowered his head three times, and bowed himself before it as in the [service of the] mystery. Just as one who thirsts for water to drink and greatly rejoices when water is found to quench his thirst, so the pure one (Jacob) stretched forth his hands before the banquet table (كُفُّنُو) and drank three times three handfuls (sips?).

[Lacuna]

Here and now, the Spirit began to reveal and explain to him all the hidden [mysteries] in the divine books.

[Lacuna]

See also Assemani, “BOCV I,” 287.
When he (Jacob) was three-years-old, his parents brought him along to pray on the feast day of the Lord, who roused the child (οὗτος οὐκ ἔστιν χήρα). [See Thomas Joseph Lamy, “Études De Patrologie Orientale: S. Jacques De Sarug,” RC, 1:9 [25], (1867), 516 Footnote 1. Abbeloos reads in die festo sancti Makimi pueri. See Abbeloos, “Vita et Scriptis,” 313.] There was a large crowd, the people who had come to pray in the holy temple had crammed the house of God, and priests had filled the chancel. Also, after the Holy Spirit had come down to consecrate [the bread into] the life-saving Body of our Savior, Jesus Christ, our Lord, God, and Redeemer, the child went down of his mother’s arms, made a way through the crowd standing in the house of God, went up to the holy altar, and stood before the life-giving banquet table [i.e., the altar]. As all those present in the church of the martyrs were watching him, the Lord’s angel came down and gave him an extraordinary gift. He (Jacob) stretched out his hands and drank three sips like Ezekiel when he ate the scroll [Ezekiel 3:3]. Henceforth, the Spirit of the Lord made him flourish, and he began to speak unusual utterances.

See also Krüger, “zweiter anonymer Memra,” 118.

We mention first of all his teaching that he received since his childhood by the grace of the Holy Spirit. As he was still growing up on his mother’s arms, he was greatly loved because great honors stirred him since his childhood. His mother took him and went up [reading ἅμα] to the holy place (church) on a feast day because of a hidden mystery whose manner is the Lord. The Holy Spirit, revealer of mysteries, revealed a stupendously heavenly vision to the child. As the bishop was standing in the holy temple, celebrating the divine and awe-inspiring mysteries, he (the child) saw life-giving water flowing from the sanctuary. He made a way through the crowd of the people. The Spirit directed him to the sanctuary, and he took three handfuls and drank as in the [service of the] mystery while the people wondered at what he had done. Behold the chosen one began henceforward to teach.
the origin of the extraordinary talent Jacob had in composing copious mimre and elucidating many scriptural passages as an adult. His teaching abilities, revealed later in his adult life, were considered not as a product of any human schooling but rather due to exceptional gifts that the Holy Spirit granted him.  

Another legend narrates that Jacob began composing dodecasyllabic (twelve-syllable) meter mimre at the age of twelve. The number twelve has probably a theological import. The Holy Spirit placed it into the heart of the young Jacob to correspond to the number of the twelve Apostles at an age identical to that of the twelve-year-old boy Jesus (see Lk 2:41-52). This imaginative story explains once more the outstanding talents which the future Syriac poet enjoyed. Thus, Jacob is known as the inventor of the dodecasyllabic meter named after him.  

42. See Krüger, “zweiter anonymer Memra,” 118-119.  
43. See Sebastian P. Brock and others, eds., Gorgias Encyclopedic Dictionary of the Syriac

When the twelve-year-old [Jacob] was alone, he began to compose refined doctrinal mimre. He gushed out and spurted, as through from a spring, major mimre, [and] a new meter never used before him. He measured a meter with twelve syllables, finer than both Greek and Syriac meters. He saw the foundation of the orthodox faith built on twelve rocks, a building of the disciples. [Accordingly,] he measured the meter the Holy Spirit fashioned and forged, and orderly authored his compositions based on their number. Just as the Spirit typified and fashioned the meter on the tablets of his heart, so he (Jacob) forged the meter of his expressions in wisdom. The Spirit, who chose and instructed the Twelve, who established the foundation of the orthodox faith, is the one who fashioned this meter in [Jacob’s] pure heart that he might arrange his compositions on the foundation of apostleship.  

15
Jacob’s story continues when he was twenty-two years old. His talent for preaching attracted many to him\(^44\) when he was still probably a student in Edessa. During that period, the books of Diodore of Tarsus (d. A.D. 394), Theodore of Mopsuestia (ca. A.D. 350-428), and Theodoret of Cyrrhus (A.D. 393-466) were being translated from Greek into Syriac and scrutinized.\(^45\) Consequently, Jacob’s fame drew the attention of the ecclesiastical hierarchy and several bishops came to examine his orthodoxy.\(^46\) Who these bishops

---

44. See Gabriel Cardahi, *Liber thesauri de arte poetica Syrorum nec non de eorum poetarum vitis et carminibus* (Roma: Typographia Polyglotta, 1875), 15.

45. Jacob of Sarug mentions his education at the School of Edessa in one of his letters addressed to the Monks of the Monastery of Bassus. See "Epistulae," 58:21-25, 59:18-22.

46. See Abbeloos, "Vita et Scriptis," 38:120-129.
were is unknown. However, Bar Hebraeus (ca. A.D. 1225-1286) claims that Severus (d. A.D. 538), the patriarch of Antioch, was the one bishop who tested the rectitude of Jacob’s teaching although Bar Hebraeus admits that others say that Jacob was scrutinized by five bishops when he was a young man. Upon these bishops’ request, Jacob composed an impromptu commentary on Ezekiel’s chariot, an extant mimro entitled On the Chariot That the Prophet

When [Jacob] was twenty-two years old, the fame of his teaching spread in the four corners [of the world]. People began coming to him from all places to receive from the treasures which the Spirit granted him. Behold! Henceforward, his teaching gushed out as a sea and began to irrigate every field with eloquence. The life-giving drink the Spirit mixed inside its stream is sweeter and more delightful than the honey of a honeycomb. It is also said about him, that five bishops came to him to look into his teaching.


Henceforth, he began to produce mimre and teachings. As soon as bishops heard of [him], they came to him to try them.

47. See Assemani, “BOCV II,” 322.

A sample of his brilliant teaching was examined and scrutinized by St. Severus, patriarch of Antioch. It was accepted and praised by him. Some say that [Jacob’s] teaching was examined by five bishops when he was young.


Heavenly Chariot.

Since they (the bishops) thought he (Jacob) did not compose mimre by the Spirit but by worldly wisdom as they do, they asked him to compose a text before their Excellencies to examine whether his teaching is true.

They had agreed among themselves if he said anything that harmed the orthodox faith the Fathers had preached, they would not depend on him to compose mimre or a sughito in the church of the Son but would reject and condemn him.

So his teaching would not be accepted in any form.

The Holy Spirit, who had chose him to teach, immediately revealed to him the whole beauty of faith.

The humble one, because of humility, did not want to speak out before the crowd present.

However, the bishops compelled him, along with the crowd present in the church of Batnan in Sarug, to get up and compose a mimro on a topic of their choosing, and they would not condemn him as they had reckoned because of it.

He immediately asked them "Which mimro do you ask of me "

They all looked at the veil of the altar of truth and saw the chariot that the prophet saw drawn [on it]; Ezekiel the prophet of wonder and marvel.

They asked him to speak about it as long as possible.

He stood on the step [Lacuna] of the bema [Lacuna] that was in the church [Lacuna].

He received the blessing from the holiness of the blessed curtain.

The power of the Spirit opened the mouth of the innocent one, and he cried out and said in a booming a voice teaching before a great crowd who was thirsty to hear his words, "Exalted One, sitting on the inscrutable Chariot, may a wondrous mimro about your Exaltedness be uttered through me."


Thenceforth, he began to compose mimre and homilies. As soon as bishops heard [about him], they came to him to test him. They commanded him to recite a mimro on the Chariot that Ezekiel saw. He began to say, "Exalted One, sitting on the Heavenly Chariot."
This Mimro Is Holy Mar Jacob’s First mimro.⁴⁹ Could this have been Jacob’s first mimro as its title claims?⁵⁰ Four recensions of this mimro might have existed, for four authors quoted four different opening verses of it.

Exalted One, sitting on the inscrutable Chariot, may a wondrous mimro about your exaltedness be uttered through me.⁵¹

Exalted One, sitting on the inscrutable Chariot, grant me your word that I should proclaim on earth that you are eternal.⁵²

Exalted One, sitting on the heavenly Chariot [Lacuna]⁵³

Exalted One, sitting on the inscrutable Chariot, allow me to proclaim your exaltedness, for you are eternal.⁵⁴

Needless to say, the examining bishops wondered at him and were so impressed with his ability⁵⁵ that they commissioned the twenty-year-old Jacob


50. Golitzin suggests that Jacob of Sarug recited this mimro before listeners attracted by the idea of ascending to the heavenly throne and that Jacob’s audience was primarily monks. See Alexander Golitzin, “The Image and Glory of God in Jacob of Sarug’s Homily ‘on That Chariot That Ezekiel the Prophet Saw’,” SVTQ, 47, no. 3-4 (2003), 331. Although this does not preclude the presence of bishops in Jacob’s audience, it could question the historical context occasioning the recitation of Jacob’s presumably first-composed mimro.


to teach in the church.56 He began composing mimre, many of which he wrote in Hawra, where he eventually ministered as a periodeutes (قانوني).57

The dates and locations of Jacob’s priestly ordination and elevation to the Order of Periodeutes are unknown. However, it must have happened some time before 502/503,58 since he was already fulfilling his role as a periodeutes59

He grew up in Hawra in Sarug, where he became a periodeutes and composed many mimre. He began to compose mimre and homilies in the church when he was twenty-two-years-old.

Then they commanded him to commit his teaching to writing in the church. He began to compose mimre and homilies in the church when he was twenty-two-years-old.

57. See Abbeloos, “Vita et Scriptis,” 312.
59. A periodeutes (قانوني in Syriac) was a priest commissioned by a patriarch, metropolitan or bishop to perambulate and visit parishes. His responsibilities included rebuilding churches and monasteries that had fallen into disrepair, collecting the revenues of his hierarch and repairing bridges and streets. He was also a public official.
during that period, He was encouraging Christians to trust in divine salvation and not to flee the invasion of Kawad, the Persian Shah. Joshua the Stylite mentioned this tidbit of information in passing.

(People) prepared to flee westwards, but the respected Jacob, the preiodeutes, who composed mimre on sections of the Scriptures and sughydrotho and songs (zmirotho) on the time of the locusts, did not neglect his duty at that time. He wrote letters of exhortation to all the cities, encouraging people to trust in divine salvation, and not to flee.

In his panegyric, George describes how the Holy Spirit inspired Jacob of Sarug to digress from talking about the chariot seen by Ezekiel and to narrate the pain, suffering, and destruction that the Persians brought to Amid. As ahistorical as this version of George’s story sounds, it still


highlights the atrocities that Amid saw at the hands of the Persians and point to a role that the periodeutes Jacob played during the horrible events that swept the city.

Jacob’s writings betray a deep monastic spirituality, detailed knowledge of the monastic life and a relationship to monks and monasteries. According to Sony, all of this coupled with the fact that the student at the school of Edessa had to follow a monastic mode of life could reveal that Jacob was a monk.63 Before Sony, Krüger had reached the same conclusion.64 Nonetheless, Kollamparampil casts doubt on the issue.65 Jacob’s biography that Vööbus found describes Jacob observing stereotypically rigid monastical practices: dried bread and water were his only nourishments. He spent long hours in prayers, vigil, and wailing.66 That Jacob was a monk is perhaps more of an attribution than a reality. Griffith says it best,

And just as it is easy to suppose that Mar Ephraem was in his lifetime an ḫidōḡ, and a so-called “son of the covenant,” so those who have written of Mar Jacob have not hesitated to speak of him as “having lived as a monk, in an ascetic life-style characteristic of Syriac monasticism,” as Wolfgang Hage67 has put it.68

Toward the end of his life, bishops, priests and the laity imposed on Jacob the episcopal office.69 He was already sixty-seven and a half years old in

64. See Krüger, “kirchliche Zugehörigkeit,” 28.
519\textsuperscript{70} when he became the bishop of Batnan in Sarug, \textsuperscript{71} and he remained in this office two and a half years. During his episcopacy, he wrote his last\textsuperscript{72} mimro entitled Mary and Golgotha (ماري و جلگوطة),\textsuperscript{73} which he never finished due to his death on 29 November, 521. Jacob was buried in Sarug the city\textsuperscript{74} or Batnan.\textsuperscript{75} Krüger claims that Jacob was forced to abdicate his Episcopal See and retire into the desert where he died.\textsuperscript{76} The document discovered by Vööbus reports that Jacob died on 29 November, 520, one year and eleven months after his consecration as the bishop of Batnan in Sarug. Therefore, his elevation to the episcopacy could have taken place toward the end of December 518.\textsuperscript{77} That Jacob became the bishop of Batnan in Sarug in 519 and

\textsuperscript{70} See Assemani, “BOCV I,” 289.

\textsuperscript{71} See Abbeloos, “Vita et Scriptis,” 312.


\textsuperscript{73} For Mouterde’s French translation and the Syriac text of Jacob of Sarug’s last and unfinished mimro, see Mouterde, “Deux Homélies Inédites,” 9-14 and 23-28 respectively.

\textsuperscript{74} See Assemani, “BOCV I,” 289.


that his death occurred in 521 are the currently accepted dates.78 Jacob lived a total of 70 years.79 Accordingly, he could have been born in A.D. 451. It was happenstance that Jacob came to life the year the controversial Council of Chalcedon took place!

1.2 Works

Just the sheer number of mimre Jacob of Sarug wrote bears witness to the fact that he was a prolific writer.80 Bar Hebraeus tells of seventy amanuenses who accompanied the bishop of Batnan and wrote down the mimre he composed, which numbered 760, and his other works which include biblical commentaries, letters, odes, and canticles.81 The third document containing insights into Jacob’s life and mentioned above also attests that Jacob of Sarug authored 763 mimre,82 theological tracts, interpretations, hagiographies, and canticles.83 The significance of his writings - not just the

78. See “GEDSH,” 433.
80. Martin speaks of 800 mimre (mimro) he composed, which numbered 760, and his other works which include biblical commentaries, letters, odes, and canticles.
83. See Abbeoloos, “Vita et Scriptis,” 312.
quantity of his compositions - afforded him the honor to be counted among the most distinguished Syriac authors.  

Mimre (sing. mimro) is the literary genre for which the bishop of Batnan is famous. Vööbus explains that this genre of a composition is not meant to be sung, but rather to be recited, as its name implies, in a way unique to the ears of the hearers. He describes it as a religious epic set to a poetic meter. Jacob’s beloved meter was dodecasyllabic, which, as stated above, he pioneered. Indeed, the majority of his extant mimre were composed using this twelve-syllable meter, which was conducive to the quality of his writings. The subjects with which Jacob dealt in his mimre are numerous. They cover the whole gamut of religious life, hagiographies, and do not lack on interpretations of biblical texts out of the Old and New Testaments. Jacob’s main source of inspiration is unquestionably the Holy Scriptures. Unfortunately, a significant number of Jacob’s mimre are still unearthed hidden in manuscripts or have not reached modern times. Still, more than 300 are still extant, of which Bedjan have published 212 texts. Along with
mimre, the bishop of Batnan wrote seven other poetic genres. Jacob’s literary fecundity also extends to prosaic works, which includes six festal homilies on the liturgical feasts of the Lord, biographies of hermits, a baptismal rite and three anaphoras attributed to him, and letters. No wonder that Jacob of Edessa referred to Jacob of Sarug, the Doctor, as “The Flute of the Holy Spirit and the Harp of the believing Church.” These titles are appropriate, for Jacob of Sarug sees himself as a musical instrument played by the Holy Spirit or by the Son of God and emitting beautiful and rich sounds. He refers to himself as a wind instrument, “Spirit, who is of an essence that could not be inquired into, blow into me that I should richly flute a mimro of your praise,” and particularly a flute, “I am your flute. Blow into me, and I will beautifully flute sounds of praise distinctly by the faculties of the soul.”

Jacob also describes himself as a ten-stringed instrument, particularly a cithara (ܐܳܒܳܪܳܐ ܒܨܳܚܰܢ ܚܳܨܫܰܒ),

I am a ten-stringed cithara you have constructed.
Play me that I may chant your praise for your sake.
Sweep your finger and strum my still strings
that, through me, sweet music may sound in a blaring tune.
[Just as] a string does not emit a tune without a player,
so the mouth does not [utter] a word without your gift.
The cithara could not sound by itself,
for unless the one holding it plays it, it is mute and silent.
The player on the cithara sweeps their finger by their skills
and gives rise to a tune in the string that was still.
Play me, my Master, since you hold me, and I am gazing at you
that glory should richly produce through me your revelation.
The string is still, and the sound that it is producing does not belong to it.
It is looking for the player to awake a tune in it.

91. See “Handscriftliche Überlieferung I,” 22-27.
The soul is the string. Behold! It is silent from your praise.
Strum it that it should play sounds of praise with great astonishment.\(^96\)

Jacob of Sarug likens the five strings of the ten-stringed harp to the five physical senses, i.e., smell (صمت), touch (وضع), taste (فواحة), hearing (سمع), and sight ( البصر). The other five strings refer to the five faculties of the mind: comprehension (تَمَثَل), thought (مكانة), discernment (سَنَةً), reason (عقل), and intelligence (عَقلًا).

Arise my harp and sound distinctly praise
to the Son with sounds abundantly filled with love.
Rouse yourself, O spiritual harp,
to make a joyful sound to the one who richly plays you.
Arise and sound eloquent [tunes] with the ten strings
Goodness interwove in you by to glorify [God].
O eloquent harp, established by the One who established all,
arise by yourself and sound glory with new tunes.
With the five physical senses glorify [God] openly
and also with the five spiritual [faculties] glorify [God] secretly.
With [the senses of] smell, touch, taste, hearing, and sight,
with all these five senses glorify [God] physically.
And also with comprehension, thought, discernment,
reason, and intelligence, with the hidden faculties of the soul, confess [him].
Through these, play, [O] ten-stringed harp,
and without ceasing, sound praise distinctly.\(^97\)

---

96. Ibid., 184:12-185:12.

97. Ibid., 77:3-18.
This harp should continually praise the Son of God, lest death come, take it apart, thus silencing it. In the stillness of Sheol, there are neither choristers nor speakers. Therefore, one could attribute the prolifieness of Jacob of Sarug to his attitude toward his call in life, which consists of praising the Lord and teaching.

Bestir yourself, my harp, to the praise the Only-Begotten, lest death loose your sounding strings.

Offer praise to the Son of God with a loud tune.

He for designed you to praise him. Why did you cease to praise [him]?

Play for God while you exist, for it is easier for you.

[The day will come when] you will be silent. Play now, for it befits you.

Bestir yourself, play [tunes] about the greatness of the Lord, your Lord, lest the sleep of death and stillness of Sheol silence you.

In Sheol’s pit, there are neither choristers nor speakers.

Until that time give forth the sound of praise richly.98

Moreover, “As long as this present life still exists [for you], plant teaching in a land that offers the fruits of praise richly.”"99 The bishop of Batnan is also known as the “Channel of the Holy Spirit,” “loyal Zither of the Church,” “Teacher of Truth,” “Spiritual Pillar,” or just “Doctor.”100 Jacob was translated early on into Coptic, Arabic, Ethiopian,101 Armenian,102 and Georgian.103

---

100. See Martin, “Evêque-Poète,” 316.
1.3 Jacob’s Audience

The question of Jacob’s audience pertains to the members of the congregations who were present as he recited his mimre. The bishop of Batnan spent most of his life (approximately forty-eight years out of the seventy he lived) delivering his compositions to diverse audiences.

A few of Jacob’s mimre betray a monastic audience, while others a church community. He directed his exhortations at monastic communities. He warned the monks against boredom, lethargy, distractions, anxious thoughts, desires, and uncertainties. Moreover, he exalted poverty and fasting and enjoined the monks to remain focused, attentive, and engaged in their struggle.104

Jacob also preached to the lay person whose life’s exigencies and attraction to the distractions of the world competed with the ever multiplying and time-consuming liturgical celebrations and the Gospel’s message. Busy with the hustle and bustle of their daily lives, Christians seemed to have been too occupied to attend the services offered by the clergy. When they did participate, they fidgeted in Church, were impatient with long homilies and liturgical celebrations, or allowed their mind to wander. Some were so eager to leave the Church that they would exit in the middle of the service when the doors were opened to allow the catechumens to leave. At this time, the late arrivers would sneak in. If this were not enough, Christians who were attracted by what the theater had to offer, exposed themselves to messages that competed with the Gospel’s tidings.105

However, the majority of Jacob’s mimre, especially the biblical ones, are timeless, for they transcend time and rarely hint at the historical context in which he wrote them. He addressed them to Christian congregations without

105. Ibid., 117-123.
due regard to the profession, age, gender or social status of the hearers.\footnote{106} The communities to which Jacob preached were most often a mixture of clergymen, monastics, and laity. Laity would have attended services held at monasteries, and monks and nuns, including solitaries, would also have participated in liturgical celebrations held at different parishes. Jacob’s genius in preaching made his \textit{mimre} accessible to all present at the various rites of the Church.\footnote{107} The bishop of Batnan did not differentiate between the clergy, monastics, and laity as far as their Christian obligations are concerned. Harvey explains,

\begin{quote}
Jacob does not, in fact, understand the devotional obligations to be different for the laity, monastics, or clergy in their essential discipline. Love of God, compassion for the poor, sick, and needy; service of the church; distance from worldly desires: such self-discipline in Jacob’s view was required of every Christian, of every station in life, regardless of age or gender.\footnote{108}
\end{quote}

The Bishop of Batnan infused his \textit{mimre} with his theological viewpoint and comprehension of the Christian message. Overwhelmingly Christological, they offer theologians a lot to ponder over and discuss. However, they provide historians few contextual crumbs,\footnote{109} which leave the student of history disappointed and frustrated.

To whom did Jacob preach? Harvey thus answers the question concerning Jacob’s audience,

\begin{quote}
Jacob spent most of his career traveling throughout the district of Serugh preaching at vigils, serving daily offices and celebrating liturgies. In his homilies we glimpse his congregation amidst its every-day world; for in his exasperated criticism and his delighted praise, Jacob also shows us who they were by the lives they lived. The reverse to his complaints of their behavior looked like this: his parishioners were hardworking, beleaguered, and harried men and women struggling to provide for their families, seeking respite from the pressures of their burdens. They were newlyweds longing for children, frightened of the dangers even as they craved the wonders of new life. They were the widowed and bereaved, worn, exhausted, and lonely. The were monks and nuns who struggled in all sincerity to work with
\end{quote}

\footnotesize
\begin{itemize}
\item 106. \textit{Ibid.}, 116.
\item 107. \textit{Ibid.}, 116-117.
\item 108. \textit{Ibid.}, 125.
\item 109. \textit{Ibid.}, 116-117.
\end{itemize}

30
unflagging commitment at the daily grind of self-sufficiency, while earnestly striving for illumination of the heart. They were ordinary villagers and townspeople who at the same time served their churches faithfully as deacons and deaconesses, chanters and readers, choir members, pastors, and teachers. And now and then, they all managed to sing together, in tune, in harmony, at the right time, and in the right place.110

Just as Jacob’s mimre would have enriched their hearers back then, they could expand the mind of their reader today and the many generations to come. Although Jacob wrote to a specific Christian audience toward the end of the fifth century and the beginning of the sixth, the timelessness of his rich theological message witnesses to the fact that his preaching could reach other generations beyond those who heard him deliver his compositions. In fact, his preaching and teaching are a treasure for the whole Church. Could the bishop of Batnan have been aware of this? “Your word is vigilant, and the silence of Sheol could not compel it to sleep. Let it be uttered through me that future generations may utter it too.”111

1.4 Theological and Political Contexts

Jacob of Sarug lived at a time during which bitterly divisive controversies plagued the Church. They came to a head after the Council of Chalcedon (A.D. 451), and whose effects on the Church’s unity still reverberates today. The contentious Christological symbol of faith promulgated by the Council was at the heart of the debate. It could be summarized as follows: Jesus Christ; one person, one hypostasis (ὑπόστασις) in two natures.112

Consequently, three main competing Christological formulations emerged over a period and could be identified mostly by the church communities that represented them. Each claimed to possess the correct

110. Ibid., 130.
formulation of how divinity and humanity co-exist in Jesus Christ. How one is to express and correctly explain the incarnation of the Word of God. The opposing factions exchanged anathemas and excommunications. That facilitated subsequently the emergence of independent ecclesial entities which took shape and consolidated with the Islamic conquests. The theological disagreements between rival Christian factions coupled with antagonisms between patriarchal sees and topping it with political meddling and cultural differences led not only to breaking up the one Church of Christ but also atrocities committed by Christians against Christians such as the mutual slaughter between rival groups that took place in Constantinople in the early part of the sixth century.

The following sub-sections are, therefore, meant to highlight major theological debates leading to the Council of Chalcedon and those that took place during the life of Jacob of Sarug. They paint with a broad brush the political and ecclesial circumstances surrounding the Council of Chalcedon and its consequences. The goal of this endeavor is not to be exhaustive but rather to present the reader with a modest summary of the ever so complex ecclesial and political context in which Jacob grew and functioned.

**1.4.1 The Precursors of the Council of Chalcedon**

Calling a council to address challenges bedeviling the Church is not an invention of post-biblical ecclesiastical hierarchy. It finds its roots already in the New Testament. The Apostles were the first to convene in Jerusalem to address the pastoral concern of whether non-Jews must abide by the Mosaic law as a condition to coming into the Church (see Acts 15; Gal 2). Since that time, the so-called “Council of Jerusalem” became the model for future...
councils and the preferred way by which the gathered Church confronts difficult theological and other issues facing her.

Jesus’s question to his disciples, “But who do you say that I am?” was not put to rest when Peter answered, “You are Christ, the Son of the living God” (see Mt 16:15; Mk 8:28; Lk 9:20). Around A.D. 318, Arius, a Libyan priest living and teaching in Alexandria, attempted to answer for himself Jesus’s question. Endeavoring to preserve the unicity of God, Arius ended up denying the divinity and eternity of the Son of God by asserting that he was a creature, albeit the first and most noble of all creatures, and that there was when he, i.e., the Son, was not. Sonship, in the eyes of Arius, is not intrinsic to the Son of God, but he earned it and God granted it to him, for he willed it so.116 Arius’s rejection of the ontological relationship between God and his Son greatly troubled the Church.

The stability and unity of the state, which depended on that of the Church, led Emperor Constantine to convene a council.117 The Church convened in Nicaea in A.D. 325. The Council Fathers promulgated a Christological symbol by which they rejected the teachings of Arius and his followers. Also, they maintained the divinity and eternity of the Son of God, and declared their faith in the one Lord Jesus Christ. This Lord is from the substance of the Father (ἐκ τῆς οὐσίας τοῦ Πατρός), true God from true God (θεὸν ἀληθινὸν ἐκ θεοῦ ἀληθινοῦ), begotten not made (γεγοςθέντα οὐ πουηθέντα), and consubstantial with the Father (ὁ οὐσιώδες τῷ Πατρί).118 Unfortunately, the Council of Nicaea triggered other sets of theological problems which revolved mainly around the Greek word homoousias.


ὁ οὐσίος or consubstantial, a philosophical term with gnostic overtones,¹¹⁹ and led to splintering the Church into several factions.¹²⁰ The ruling emperor sided with one Christian group against another. His support gave the imperial party the power to enforce their teaching.¹²¹

In the second half of the fourth century, the Cappadocian Fathers ironed out the Trinitarian dispute between the theological schools at that time. One Christian faction emphasized that the Godhead comprised three things (πράγματα) or persons (πρόσωπα). For the other Christian group it was indispensable to protect the unity of God. Thus, it championed the teaching of the one hypostasis (ὑπόστασις), which was usually taken to be a synonym of substance (οὐσία). These two schools could neither agree nor reconcile, for they did not speak the same language literally and figuratively.¹²² The Cappadocians provided a solution to this complicated theological quagmire. They modified the original meaning of hypostasis (ὑπόστασις) by making it also mean person. Accordingly, the Godhead comprises three hypostases or three Persons. This theological term was supposed to explain what is unique to each Person of the Trinity: the Father is the Unbegotten (ἀγεννησία), the Son the Begotten (γέννησις), and the Holy Spirit the One Proceeding (ἐκ πόρευσις). The Cappadocians kept ousia (οὐσία) to mean substance, a term that explains the commonality between the three Persons of the Trinity.¹²³

The Council of Constantinople, held in A.D. 381, confirmed the divinity of the Holy Spirit and his consubstantiality with the Father and the Son against the teachings of some theologians. The Council’s Fathers toiled to avoid and succeeded in steering clear of philosophically laden expressions,
especially the term *homoousios* (ὁμοούσιος), that had proven to be controversial. Instead, they had recourse to the Bible for confessing that the Holy Spirit is Lord (2 Cor 3:17f), giver of life (Rom 8:2; Jn 6:63; 2 Cor 3:6), has spoken through the prophets (2 Pet 1:21), proceeds from the Father (Jn 15:26; 1 Cor 2:12), and is adored and glorified with the Father and the Son. The last expression finds its source, not in the Bible but the Church’s prayer tradition. Unfortunately, each council contributed to the further splintering of the Church and left behind it shrapnels of discord. Already the Council of Constantinople recognized and condemned seven dissident Christian factions, including the Apollinarians.125

The Apollinarians veered away from the Trinitarian debate and ventured to explain how divinity and humanity co-existed in Jesus Christ. In this question lies the seed that eventually led to the Council of Chalcedon. Apollinarianism finds its roots in the Platonic trichotomy, i.e., the tripartite view of a human being as spirit, soul, and body. Applying it to Jesus Christ while maintaining his divinity, the Apollinarists ended up denying him having a human mind (νοῦς), which, they claim, the Word of God replaced. In other words, in contrast to a normal person comprised of a spirit, mind, and body, Jesus Christ comprehends the Word of God, a soul, and body. Accordingly, Jesus Christ, lacking a mind, is no longer a whole human being. Although the Fathers of the Council of Constantinople rejected Apollinarianism, they did not provide an alternate explanation. The problem festered consequently, and two theological schools butted heads, namely, the theological Schools of Alexandria and Antioch.

While the latter, in its emphatic rejection of Apollinarianism, stressed the separation between the divinity and humanity in Jesus, the former strived to maintain the unity between the Word (λόγος) and flesh (σάρξ) in the

person of Christ. To express this unity, the School of Alexandria employed a formulation that goes back apparently to the Apollinarians’ teachings: one physis (φύσις) of the incarnate Word (μία φύσις τοῦ θεοῦ λόγου σειρακωμένη). The crux of the matter is the meaning of physis (φύσις). The Alexandrian School had used it to refer to the one person (φύσις) of the Incarnate Word God and to mean nature (φύσις) as in the two natures (φύσεις) — divine and human — as regards to Jesus Christ. The reading of physis (φύσις) to mean nature leads to the following Christological formulation: one nature (φύσις) of the incarnate Word. The ambiguous formulation of one physis (μία φύσις) drove some to postulate that there was truly a divine nature and a human nature before the Incarnation of the Word, but one nature afterward. As a result, either the divine nature engulfed and eliminated the human nature - this could be comparable to a droplet of water in an ocean - or the divine nature was mixed with the human nature to produce a new nature in Jesus Christ.127

The Antiochene School faced difficulties in explaining adequately how the two distinct natures unite in Jesus Christ. The divine nature and the human nature remain two separate and independent entities after the Incarnation, whereat the Word of God lives in the man Jesus as a person residing in a house. What brings the two natures together is admittedly Jesus Christ, the person (πρόσωπον). Nonetheless, the unity existing between the two natures is neither substantial nor ontological but is a relative and moral relationship, i.e., a unity of the wills.128 The Antiochene School sounded as though it was dividing Christ into two persons, and, by extension, introducing a new person into the Godhead, thus transforming the Trinity into a quaternity.129

---

128. See Grillmeier, “Jesus der Christus 1,” 614-634.
129. See Grillmeier, “Jesus der Christus 2/1,” 288-289.
The Council of Ephesus took place in A.D. 431. At the heart of the debate was the title appropriate for Mary: 1. *Anthropotokos* (ἀνθρωποτόκος) or the one who bore the man [Jesus]; 2. *Christotokos* (χριστοτόκος) or the one who bore Christ; 3. *Theotokos* (θεοτόκος) or the one who bore God, i.e., the Mother of God. The city of Ephesus saw two rival councils convening one after the other and whose participants strongly condemned each other. On the one hand, the Alexandrian led council adopted *Theotokos* as the title for Mary due to the concept of *communicatio idiomatum* (ἀντίδοσις ἰδιωμάτων), i.e. that in view of the unity of Christ’s person, His human and divine attributes, experiences, etc. might properly be interchanged. On the other hand, the Antiochene side professed one Christ, one Son, One Lord, in whom two natures are united without being mixed. Now based on this unity, they accepted the title *Theotokos*. It is certain that Mary did not give birth to God qua God, but to Jesus, who is God and man and in whom - in this one person - are united both the divine nature and the human nature without being mixed. Because of this unity between the two natures, one can crisscross the idioms, i.e., natural properties or attributes, that refer to God and man. In another term, what one declares about the Son of God, one can also say of the Son of Man and vice-versa. Accordingly, the Fathers of Ephesus could teach that Mary gave birth to God. By the same token, one could say that God, the Immortal, died on the cross! It was not until 433, however, that the Antiochenes and Alexandrians finally agreed on a common profession of faith. Although both rival schools accepted the symbol of faith of 433, not everyone on both sides was happy because they interpreted it as a theological sellout.

130. See Kelly, “ECD,” 326-328; Grillmeier, “Jesus der Christus 1,” 687-691.
133. See Ibid., 328-329; Grillmeier, “Jesus der Christus 1,” 704.
Meanwhile, the East Syriacs, who belonged to the see of Antioch, who followed its theological directions, and who lived outside the Roman Empire, cut the umbilical cord from their mother Church for linguistic, cultural, and political reasons. Moreover, they declared themselves in 410 and again in 424 as the Church of the East, whose Catholicos resided in Seleucia-Ctesiphon. In contrast to the Antiochene school who modified the teachings of Diodore of Tarsus and Theodore of Mopsuestia as presented above, the Church of the East, under the influence of Narsai (d. ca. 500) and Barsauma of Nisibis (d. ca. 491-496), clung to the extreme interpretation of their Antiochene Christology: Jesus Christ; two natures, two persons, morally united in a prosopon (πρόσωπον).\(^{136}\)

The direct theological debate leading to the Council of Chalcedon was the narrow reinterpretation of the expression “one physis (φύσις) of the incarnate Word,” namely, the assertion that the Lord is of two natures (ἐκ δύο φύσεων) - divine and human - before the Incarnation, but one nature afterward.\(^{137}\) Furthermore, Jesus’s human body is intrinsically different from that of a human and is, therefore, not consubstantial with it.\(^{138}\) Although this extreme interpretation does not represent the original formulation of and enunciation by the Alexandrian School, Alexandria rose to its defense.\(^{139}\) Pope Leo wrote a letter known as Tomus Leonis or also as Epistola Dogmatica ad Falvium to be read at a council in Ephesus, which was held against his will in 449, and which he later calls it Latrocinium (Brigandage) or the “Robber Synod” of Ephesus.\(^{140}\) In this letter, he condemns this new formulation and upholds the teachings of the symbol of faith of 433.\(^{141}\) As its title indicates, the

---

137. See Grillmeier, “Jesus der Christus 1,” 732-733.
140. See Kelly, “ECD,” 334.
Robber Council proved to be very controversial and divisive. It was the catalyst that drove the Church to Chalcedon.  

1.4.2 The Council of Chalcedon (A.D. 451)

The Church convened in Chalcedon in A.D. 451 and declared,

... One and the same Christ, Son, Lord, only-Begotten, [is] made known in two natures [which exist] without confusion, without change, without division, without separation; the difference of the natures having been in no wise taken away by reason of the union, but rather the properties of each being preserved, and [both] concurring in one person (prosopon) and one hypostasis - not parted or divided into two persons (prosopa), but one and the same Son and only-Begotten, the divine Logos, the Lord Jesus Christ; even as the prophets from old [have spoken] concerning him, and as the Lord Jesus Christ himself has taught us, and as the Symbol of the Fathers had delivered to us.  

Based on this declaration, the Council’s Fathers rejects both extreme interpretations of the Antiochene and Alexandrian Christologies. They employ four adjectives to explain how the Lord Jesus Christ is made known in two natures (εν δύο φύσεσιν). The two adjectives without confusion (ἀσυγχύτως) and change (ἀτρέπτως) are meant to rebut the extreme Alexandrian Christology that claims that there were two natures before the Incarnation, but a single nature afterward. The two other adjectives without division (ἀδιαιρέτως) and separation (ἀχωρίστως) discredit the strict Antiochene assertion that the two natures are so separate that two persons exist and are united in one prosopon (πρόσωπον). Although the two natures are united without confusion, without change, without division, and without separation, their different characteristics are not taken away by reason of the union (οὐδαμον τῆς τῶν φύσεων διαφορᾶς ἀνηρμηνεύς διὰ τὴν ἑνωσιν) and their distinctive properties are maintained (τῆς ἰδιότητος ἐκατέρας φύσεως). They concur not in two parted and divided persons (prosopa) (οὐκ εἰς δύο πρόσωπα μεριζόμενον ἢ διαιρούμενον) but in one person (prosopon).

(ἐν πρόσωπον) and one hypostasis⁴⁴ (μίαν ὑπόστασιν), in the one and the same Son and Only-Begotten, the divine Logos, the Lord Jesus Christ.¹⁴５

Instead of bringing the different warring factions together, Chalcedon hardened the position of each group. Three main Christian parties finally emerged. The first are the Chalcedonians. They adhered to and promoted the teachings of the Council of Chalcedon. This group includes the Christians of Antioch, Rome, Constantinople and a small group of West Syriacs known as the Maronites. The second party is the East Syriacs. They belonged to the Church of the East, clung to the extreme interpretation of the Antiochene Christology, and were outside the realm of the Roman Empire to be affected by the Christological inclinations of the Roman emperors and by their church policies. The third and final party taught and promulgated the Alexandrian Christology and rejected its extreme interpretation. This group included the West Syriacs and the Christians of Alexandria, Ethiopia, and Armenia.

1.4.3 State and Church

Since the time of Emperor Constantine, a precedent had already been set for emperors to call for Councils, depose and exile opposing bishops deemed heretics, and meddle in Church policies. That was the case of Pulcheria, the sister of Emperor Theodosius (d. 450), who persuaded General Marcian, her husband,¹⁴⁶ to call together a Council to settle the dispute between the Antiochene and Alexandrian Christological teachings. He obliged by calling the Church to assemble in Chalcedon although against Pope Leo’s wishes.¹⁴⁷ Besides, the Emperor, who was present at all of the conciliar sessions, forced the assembled bishops to produce a symbol of faith, albeit against their will.¹⁴⁸

---

144. Both Prosopon and hypostasis mean person.
145. For the Greek terms, see Grillmeier, “Jesus der Christus 1,” 755.
146. See Ibid., 738.
148. See Grillmeier, “Jesus der Christus 1,” 753.
The sympathizers with the Alexandrian school rejected the Chalcedonian Christology, for they found the Council’s formulation to be too separative. It promoted, according to them, the teaching of two separate persons in Christ. Furthermore, the deposition of Dioscorus, the bishop of Alexandria, added insult to injury. The backers of the Alexandrian School must have felt as though they had lost the fight to Antioch! Consequently, the unity established in A.D. 433 fell through. The conflict reemerged and bedeviled the Church. As a result, violent rebellions occurred in Alexandria and other cities. Emperor Marcian responded forcibly to restore order and enforce the decrees of the Council of 451. Many anti-Chalcedonian bishops, archimandrites, and other clergy were deposed and exiled.

The situation worsened with the death of Emperor Marcian in A.D. 457 and with the coming of Emperor Leo I, a pro-Chalcedonian, to the throne. For example, a mob in Alexandria killed a Chalcedonian bishop in the baptistery, dragged his corpse through the streets, hung it, burnt it and scattered the ashes to the four winds. An account of the resistance reports the slaughter of over ten-thousand people in Alexandria. Emperor Leo I remained faithful to his pro-Chalcedonian policies until his death in A.D. 474, around the time when Jacob of Sarug was gaining fame for composing mimre.

Zeno (d. A.D. 491) succeeded Leo I as emperor in A.D. 474. Basiliscus, Zeno’s son-in-law, who was an anti-Chalcedonian, overthrew him already a year later. Although Basiliscus’s reign was also short lived because Zeno returned at the head of a strong army and overthrew him in A.D 476, Basiliscus was able to depose Chalcedonian bishops and install anti-

---

150. Ibid., 125.
151. Ibid., 126.
152. Ibid., 127.
153. See Grillmeier, “Jesus der Christus 2/1,” 268.
154. Ibid., 279.
Chalcedonians, adherents to the Alexandrian Christology, in their stead. Consequently, Bishop Acacius of Constantinople (d. A.D. 488) called the Emperor a heretic and refused to sign the emperor’s edict\textsuperscript{155} issued against the Council of Chalcedon.\textsuperscript{156}

The situation did not improve even six years after Emperor Zeno had regained the imperial throne. As a result, the Emperor attempted to reconcile the warring factions and to reunify the Church by issuing an edict, known as the Henoticon,\textsuperscript{157} in A.D. 482. With the Henoticon, Bishop Acacius composed\textsuperscript{158} tried to find the middle ground between the Chalcedonians and their opponents.\textsuperscript{159} However, it was proved to be a failed attempt at achieving unity and led eventually to the first schism between the two Churches of Constantinople and Rome\textsuperscript{160} whose bishops were pro-Chalcedon. In 489, Emperor Zeno shut down the famous theological school in Edessa, where Jacob of Sarug had studied, to hinder the doctrinal influence of the Church of the East from seeping westward.\textsuperscript{161}

A new lifeline was given to the anti-Chalcedonians when Anastasius I climbed the imperial throne following Emperor Zeno’s death in 491. His preferential treatment to the anti-Chalcedonians helped the two protagonists, Philoxenus of Mabbug,\textsuperscript{162} and Severus, defend and promote the Alexandrian Christology, and even catapulted the latter to the Antiochene episcopal See in 512.\textsuperscript{163} With the death of Emperor Anastasius I on July 9, 518, began the pro-Chalcedonian comeback.

\textsuperscript{155} For a German translation of Basiliscus’s edict, see \textit{Ibid.}, 269-271.
\textsuperscript{156} “\textit{Geschichte des Christentums},” 129-131.
\textsuperscript{157} For a German translation of Zeno’s edict, better known as the Henoticon, see Grillmeier, “\textit{Jesus der Christus 2/1},” 285-287.
\textsuperscript{158} \textit{Ibid.}, 284.
\textsuperscript{159} See “\textit{Geschichte des Christentums},” 133.
\textsuperscript{160} \textit{Ibid.}, 134-135.
\textsuperscript{161} \textit{Ibid.}, 136.
\textsuperscript{162} See \textit{Ibid.}, 140-141; Grillmeier, “\textit{Jesus der Christus 2/1},” 304-409.
\textsuperscript{163} See “\textit{Geschichte des Christentums},” 143-144.
On July 10, 518, Justin I was proclaimed emperor. The Chalcedonians could not have wished for a better choice, for Emperor Justin was a huge supporter of the bishop of Rome and a zealous defender of the pro-Chalcedonian cause. Consequently, many anti-Chalcedonians bishops were deposed already in 518. Whereas Severus, the Bishop of Antioch, who found refuge in Alexandria, and his likes were excommunicated, Jacob of Sarug was elevated to the See of Batnan in 519.

1.5 Chalcedonian or Non-Chalcedonian?

In this tumultuous period grew up Jacob of Sarug, witnessing the effects of a divided Church, and the repugnant violence committed in the name of Truth. The world in which he lived was disturbed and tossed around by Christological symbols of faith.

What should he who is seeking to speak about your generation do when everyone wants to talk about it according to their whims? The one [group] gazing at your divinity and greatness wants [only] to hear you are God and nothing else. Another [group] came closer to you. Since it saw you have a body, it hastened to cry out that you are [just] a human being. The other [group], being cunning, perceives that you are two [persons]: a God and a man. What could your Virgin Church, betrothed to you, make of these opinions [of the different groups], which, opposite each other, bark at her? O Speaker, why would [anyone] agree to talk to you, for each one desires to hear the saying according to their whims? The simple, innocent, and single-minded folk are agitated by the many and various expressions. The world is perturbed. Still, each to themselves wants to uphold [their] perturbing saying[s] with perturbing voices that obey [them].

164. Ibid., 146.
166. See “Geschichte des Christentums,” 148.
Jacob himself, however, did not contribute to the discords. His mimre betray a pastoral and biblical approach which allowed him to engage in the controversies of his day without being directly involved in the conflicts over doctrinal terminologies. Whereas many of his contemporaries chose the path of confrontation, debate, and theological investigation of the Son of God, Jacob of Sarug elected the less traveled road by rejecting theological inquiries into him.\(^{168}\)

The Father freely offered us his Son
that we might speak about him with love and undebatable simplicities,
and not with contention, and not with strife, and not with debate,
and not with knavishness which begets words by perversions.\(^{169}\)

Jacob of Sarug’s association with a specific Christological school is difficult to ascertain, for he walked a thin line between the feuding Christian parties. Nonetheless, the following explores some of the available scholarly research on the subject.

Undoubtedly, Jacob of Sarug refuted the teachings of the Docetists, Apollinarians, and Euthychians,\(^{170}\) and also rejected the Christological formulation that divided Christ into two persons. However, his position on the Chalcedonian symbol of faith is ambiguous not only to modern readers but his earliest readers as well. The anecdote of bishops coming to ascertain the rectitude of his teachings allows the reader a glimpse into a world when influential clergy was forced to take up a clear position regarding Chalcedon. Furthermore, it highlights the enigmatic position of Jacob of Sarug. Bar

---

168. See appendix below.
Hebraeus’s claim that it was Severus, the bishop of Antioch, who tested and accepted the teachings of Jacob of Sarug further shows how, at least, Bar Hebraeus, who lived in the thirteenth century, associated Jacob of Sarug with the party of Severus. However, Timothy, the priest of the main church in Constantinople, believed to have lived in the seventh century, wrote that Jacob was an adherent of the Chalcedonians.171

The question of Jacob’s faithfulness to the Council of 451172 returned to the fore no sooner than Western scholars took notice of him. Already in the late 1700s, Renaudot judged Jacob to be a disciple of Severus of Antioch and a champion of the heresy of Eutyches.173 Assemani,174 followed by Abbeloos175 and Lamy,176 defended Jacob’s pro-Chalcedonian stance. Interestingly, Lamy goes as far as accusing Anti-Chalcedonians of doctoring some of Jacob’s mimre by adding expressions that favored their Christological formulation.177 These are old accusations, for, already in the seventh century, Jacob of Edessa (d. 708) leveled these charges against the same group.178 Malagne, whose ideas Bickell adopted,179 propounded the view that Jacob had non-Chalcedonian tendencies, but, at the end of his life, was reconciled with the Chalcedonian Church and died in that faith.180 Bickel also accused the Anti-Chalcedonians of tampering with Jacob’s mimre by removing Chalcedonian expressions.181 The circle of arguments was closed with Martin emphatically

171. See Peeters, “Appartient-il à la secte monophysite?”, 196.
172. It is not the intention of the author to present a detailed account of Jacob of Sarug’s stance on the Council of Chalcedon but to show how scholars teetered between opinions. To understand better the complexity of this issue at hand, see Krüger, “kirchliche Zugehörigkeit,” 16-21.
177. Ibid., 521.
180. See Matagne, “Episcopi Sarugensi”.
asserting, “Jacob was born, lived and died in heresy [i.e., non-Chalcedonian].” Martin seemed to have settled the debate over Jacob’s position on the Council of Chalcedon with his publication of anti-Chalcedonian letters attributed to Jacob of Sarug. Moreover, the host of letters edited and published by Olinder and whose author decidedly rejects the Council resolved this debate conclusively. Landersdorfer concluded thus.

This mystery was supposedly solved, but when it reached modern times, Peeters reopened against all odds. He defended Jacob of Sarug’s Chalcedonian affiliation against the predominantly scholarly opinions. He based his arguments on historical events. The gist of it is that Jacob was consecrated bishop of Batnan in 419 during the time of the pro-Chalcedonian Emperor Justin I, who deposed the likes of Severus and Philoxenus of Mabbug. Non-Chalcedonian bishops were severely persecuted, banished from their eparchies, and their empty Sees were filled with Chalcedon sympathizers. Consequently, Jacob, according to Peeters, could not have been but Chalcedonian. Others such as Altaner and De Vries agreed with Peeters’s arguments, while Ortiz de Urbina cautiously placed Jacob in the

182. See Martin, “Évêque-Poète,” 419.
186. For Peeters’s arguments and Jansma’s counterarguments, see Peeters, “Appartient-il à la secte monophysite?”.
187. Ibid., 134.
188. See Vööbus, “unbekannte Biographie,” 402.
Chalcedonian camp, and left the question open for debate. Meanwhile, Armalé published his study on Jacob of Sarug in Arabic in which he defended Jacob’s Chalcedonian affiliation.

Jacob’s Christological elucidations remained an enigma, for one could fish out of his vast writings Chalcedonian and non-Chalcedonian. To illustrate this point, one has to read Krüger, who kept returning to this subject over a span of twenty years! Unlike Peeters, Krüger looked at the content of Jacob’s writings and dealt with Jacob’s letters and *minre*. In his first assessment, which he published in 1953, Krüger found Jacob to be Chalcedonian. Looking at the question again, Krüger argued that Jacob was assuredly non-Chalcedonian and ascribed him to the school of Severus. In another article, Krüger arrived at the same conclusion. He was so certain of his investigation that he emphatically wrote that one could say that Jacob of Sarug did not only belong to the non-Chalcedonian party, but he was also its advocate! In the last three articles he wrote on the subject, Krüger defended and adhered to his final opinion on the subject. One can summarize it as such: Jacob started out Anti-Chalcedonian, but at the end of his life, two to three years before he was forced to abdicate his episcopal See and retire back into the desert, i.e., back to his monastery, Jacob reconciled himself with the Chalcedonian Church.

The circle of the debate is once more closed with Jansma who concludes that Jacob’s Christology is pure Alexandrian, i.e., the Christology of Cyril of Alexandria, one of the main antagonists who signed the symbol of faith agreed upon with the Antiochene school in 433 (see above). The difference between the two is that Cyril, who slept in the Lord before 451, died in communion with the Church, whereas, alas, Jacob died after 451.

If the Monophysites revere him as their saint, they do so - as we have seen - on good grounds, in spite of the fulminations of the abbot of Mar Bassus ... And if, beginning with Timotheus Constantinopolitanus in the early seventh Century, Catholic authors regard him as one of their number, they too in a sense are entitled to do so. In a sense: for Jacob in his Christology has not written a single positive word that is not to be found in Cyril of Alexandria as well. But whereas Divine grace allowed the latter to die before 451, it fell to the lot of the former to be born in the very year in which the Council met, whose formula was henceforth to be the touchstone of the orthodox creed.

Furthermore, Jansma rejects the idea of Jacob’s conversion to the Chalcedonian Church toward the end of his life. Last, but not least, Bou Mansour joins the debate and extracts doctrinal expressions from Jacob of Sarug’s large corpus to argue Jacob’s non-Chalcedonian stance. Meanwhile, he rejects the false claim advanced by Chestnut that Jacob of Sarug was a sympathizer of aphthartodocetism.


Lest this important and fascinating topic consume the rest of this work, it must be brought to an end. Was Jacob of Sarug Chalcedonian or non-Chalcedonian? Before placing Jacob in either camp, one must keep in mind that it would have been difficult for a Syriac theologian to accept the formulation of the Council expressed in Greek, which was absurd in the Syriac language because the technical term nature (حَيْثُ) necessitates a hypostasis (مَسْتَحِيلًا). Nature and hypostasis are closely associated and could not be separated. Therefore, either one nature corresponding to one hypostasis could exist in Christ, or two natures corresponding to two hypostases. Accordingly, the two-nature in one hypostasis declaration of Chalcedon would have seemed to Syriac theologians illogical. Furthermore, to declare Jacob’s Christology as pure Alexandrian would ignore his Syriac tradition in which he was rooted. He is well established in the tradition of Ephrem, whom Jacob studied while a student in Edessa. The utter hiddenness of God and his incomprehensible nature compels the theologian to adore him rather than inquire into him. For that reason, a good number of Syriac Church Fathers, when contemplating the divine realm, prefer the language of symbols, types, and images extracted from the Holy Scriptures, the principal source of their theological elucidation, to a philosophical mode of expression.

This author agrees with Albert and Konat’s discrete analyses: although Jacob of Sarug does not use the exact terminology used by the Council’s Fathers, he ascribes to their teachings. By not using the Council’s terms, one could pronounce him non-Chalcedonian. However, one could declare Jacob of Sarug Chalcedonian, for he expresses and defends the same beliefs of the Council of 451, albeit within his own pre-Chalcedonian Alexandrian and

---


204. Ephrem refuses to answer the Arians by developing speculative theology on the orthodox side, as both Athanasius and the Cappadocians did; he sticks to his symbolism and demands that the mystery remain veiled. Not fides quaerens intellectum but fides adorans mysterium! Murray, “Symbols,” 89.

Syriac Christological framework. Albert showed this point by looking at the debatable tenets of the Council of 451 and exposed how Jacob of Sarug proclaimed the same beliefs of Chalcedon.206 Taking a closer look at Jacob’s typological expressions, Konat evinces Jacob’s beliefs in the divinity and humanity in the one person of Christ.207 Konat wrote in his conclusion, 

Without going into philosophical criteria to explain how the union occurred in the incarnation - whether it was a hypostatic union or in nature or in the prosopon - he (Jacob) solves the problem by affirming that Christ is fully God and man ... we can affirm that Jacob’s writings contain all the essential elements of a sound Christology.208

The irenic Syriac Poet could have purposely avoided the wording of the controversial Council of 451 altogether to give a wide berth to the conflict between the contending Christological schools while hoping for a reunited Church and nostalgically looking at what he found to be a better past.209

208. Ibid., 71-72.
CHAPTER 2

THE CHURCH, BUILDING ON GOLGOTHA

In Jacob of Sarug’s theological outlook, the prophets, whose prophecies the Old Testament records, announce the complete truth about the Son of God and his Church. God the Father, however, conceals this revelation as if he had covered the whole Old Testament with a veil. Jacob justifies God’s action by the fact that the Almighty did not want to be the cause that led people to polytheism. Only the Son, who did not break the seal of virginity by his birth, does rend the veil of prophecy by his crucifixion, thus making possible the interpretation and explanation of the Old Testament using typology. Types and symbols are ubiquitous throughout the pages of the Old Testament according to the bishop of Batnan, who tirelessly fished them out based on people, events, and prophecies. He explains,

Not so are waters gathered in the great sea

3. On the exegetical method employed by Jacob of Sarug, see Zingerle, “ungedruckte Homilie,” 315-466.
4. On the Syriac Church Fathers’ use of symbols and types, see De Vries, “Kirchenbegriff”.
7. The vision of Jacob at Bethel is such an example. See Ibid., 192-207.
8. Ibid., 287:17.
like the Book of Moses is filled with the types of our Lord. The sky is not lit by the moon, that orbits in it, like the Torah shines with the news of the Son of God. The sun is not adorned by rays surrounding it, as the Book of the Father manifesting the beauty of the Son. The glow [of a flame] is not close to it as the Cross lucidly depicted in the Scriptures. All those who prophesied about hidden things foretold about our Lord, for otherwise the revelations of truths would be of no effect. The Scriptures were for him like [body] members, and he was like a soul to them and through, him they were moved to speak about him abundantly.\(^9\)

These types and symbols foretell not only the coming of the Son of God but also prefigure his Church. The bishop of Batnan poetically states that along the glowing beauty of the Son, the definition of all that is beautiful,\(^10\) shone also forth, in the Book of the Father,\(^11\) i.e., the Old Testament, the beauty and brilliance of his Church. Furthermore, the Church is inseparable from the Only-Begotten,\(^12\) for the type of the Son of God does not journey without her.\(^13\)

A building is one of these images that Jacob of Sarug exploits as a type of the Church. For him, prophets, priests, and patriarchs toiled as architects in building her.\(^14\) In fact, they contributed, in their ways, to the preparation and

---


10. Ibid., 301:14.

11. Ibid., 244:2.


52
prefiguring of building the Church, which their prophetic types and symbols constructed. This chapter illustrates the notion of the Church as a building as the bishop of Batnan expressed in his flowery mimre.

The Syriac Churches value the depiction of the Church as a building. Their liturgical books, in which this symbolism appears, witness to this fact. In his book Der Kirchenbegriff der von Rom getrennten Syrer, Wilhelm De Vries enumerates such building-images: the tent of meeting, Solomon’s temple, Noah’s ark, the altar built by Abraham on the mountaintop, the stone anointed by Jacob. De Vries writes quoting from the breviary of the Syriac Antiochene Church,

Solomon’s Temple, which superseded the tent of meeting, is also considered a type of the Church. The liturgical text where it speaks of these representations enumerates an entire series of different prefigurations of the Church. “The fathers and forefathers foretold of her (the Church) and depicted her in various ways as types: Noah as his ark, Abraham as the altar he built on the mountaintop, Jacob as the stone he anointed, Moses as the temporal tent, and Solomon as the house he constructed.” Noah’s Ark, the only haven of salvation for humanity, is a befitting image of the Church. “Blessed are you, believing Church, Bride of the Son, for the concealed parables and mysteries find their meaning in you. Noah the righteous depicted you as his ark. Jacob portrayed you as the stone he anointed. Moses, the chosen one, saw you on Mt Sinai and Isaiah with the Eye of the Spirit. Christ perfected your mystery with the blood that flowed out of his side.”

18. Ibid., 10.
19. Auch der Tempel Salomons, der das Bundeszelt ablöste, gilt als Typus der Kirche. An der Stelle, wo die Liturgie von diesem Typus spricht, werden noch eine ganze Reihe anderer Vorbilder der Kirche genannt: »Die Väter und Urväter haben sie (die Kirche) vorbedeutet und auf verschiedene Weise in Typen dargestellt: Noe in seiner Arche,
Quoting liturgical texts satisfied De Vries’s research interests on this topic. Therefore, he did not provide his readers with other written sources whose Syriac authors could have been the pioneers — at least in the Syriac-speaking world — of these types.

These images are clearly present in the works of early Syriac writers such as Ephrem and Balai. Robert Murray, writing a few years after De Vries, identifies in his book *Symbols of the Church and Kingdom: A Study in Early Syriac Tradition* Syriac authors who have portrayed the Church as a building in their writings. His investigation shows that Aphrahat appears to have been the first “to develop the image of a building at length, but always as the structure of faith, laid on the foundation of Christ the rock ( kephtu or šōḏā’).”20 This image, however, relates to the individual believer rather than to the Church.21 Aphrahat’s structure of faith then falls short of referring to the Church. In Ephrem’s œuvres, Murray identifies three Old Testament types symbolizing the Church: the tower of Babel, the Tabernacle and the City of Refuge. Balai, composing about a century after Aphrahat and two generations after Ephrem, develops the image of the temple as a type of the Church.22 Murray’s investigation, limited to the period before the fifth-century schism,23 shows that the Church as a type of a building already belonged to the Syriac theological worldview at the time of Jacob of Sarug.


21. Ibid., 219.
22. Ibid., 219-228.
23. Ibid., 1.
Jacob of Sarug, in turn, availed himself of these types in his interpretation of the Old Testament. Tanios Bou Mansour recognizes this but chooses not to elaborate on the subject. He states,

Jacob goes even further: that the just ones of the Old Testament, “those who lived spiritually,” were allowed to celebrate God was due to the mysteries (ràzê) of the Church (IV 796, 10-11). Therefore, in light of eschatology, of the Church as an eschatological reality, does the past gain its meaning. In this manner, the prefigurative deeds of Melchizedek, Abraham and Isaac, and in particular those of Jacob, who, by building the house of God (Bethel), has apparently signified the Church, should be evaluated (IV 796, 18sv). Jacob even sees in the building of Bethel a foundation (šestê) of the Church (IV 800, 18-19). I certainly do not have the intention to study at this juncture all the ecclesiological typology that Jacob discerns in the people and events of the Old Testament. Let us remember the importance he attributed to the prophets, here to Moses, Samuel, and Elisha (IV 801,8-11), and to the fact that they significantly contributed to the establishment of the Church: Architects have forever toiled in (building) this house; prophets, priests, and patriarchs by their revelations (IV 801,14-15).


This chapter picks up where Bou Mansour left off. Its objective is to explicate three building-images Jacob of Sarug exploits in the people and events of the Old Testament to speak of the Church. The following section discusses the first type, the Church as A House on Golgotha for the Holy Things. Its context is Melchizedek’s encounter with Abraham (see Gn. 14:18-20). Then, the second section elaborates on the image of the Church as The Altar Abraham and Isaac Built (see Gn. 22: 1-19). This type anticipates the sacrifice of the Lord.
on the cross and the water and blood flowing from his side. The goal of the third part is to explore the type of the Church as *The Rock Jacob Anointed* (see Gn 27:46-28:5). By doing so, he establishes the foundation of the Church. Lastly, this chapter ends with a conclusion.

2.1 The House on Golgotha Melchizedek Built

Jacob of Sarug shares with his audience the image of a house on Golgotha for the holy things as a symbol of the Church in his *mimro* entitled *On Melchizedek, Priest of the Most High God and the Types of Our Lord*. In it, he credits Melchizedek with establishing this building within the walls of the Holy City, Jerusalem.

That *perfect priesthood* (مَصَاصِبُهُ) established, from the beginning, the Holy City, the beloved place of the crucifixion.

He (Melchizedek) built it abounding in delights and abundant in treasures that the *tabernacle of mysteries* (مَكَامُ المَصَاصِبَاتِ) might be pitched there from the beginning.

He became there a proxy for the crucifixion to minister spiritually according to *new mysteries* (مَصَاصِبُ) established, from the beginning.

The faithful [servant] built a *house on Golgotha for the holy things* (صَدَا صَحِيفَةَ خَاصِمَةَ) that they might be sustained within it by the mysteries of the Church.

2.1.1 Perfect Priesthood

Melchizedek was a figure of captivating mystery for Jacob of Sarug. The Old Testament (see Gn 14:18-20; Ps 110:4) briefly mentions this obscure Canaanite. Whereas Ephrem identifies him with Shem, who became a king due to his greatness and was the head of fourteen nations, Jacob of Sarug,

See “*HSJS V,*” 154-180. For a translation of this *mimro* see “A Homily on Melchizedek, Priest of the Most High God, and on Types of Our Lord,” *TTV, 2,* (1989): 30-55.

See “*HSJS V,*” 160:15-22.

27. See “*Priest of the Most High God,*” 30.
adhering to Heb 7, does not identify Melchizedek with anyone. According to the bishop of Batnan, Melchizedek’s origins, birth, and death are a mystery, and his likeness is transcendent, just like Christ. He is a priest forever, whose enduring priesthood has neither beginning nor end. In contrast to Ephrem, who claims that Melchizedek received his priesthood from his father, Noah, through the rights of succession, Jacob insists that no priest has conferred it on Melchizedek and he did not pass on to another. Furthermore, the priesthood of Melchizedek, by which he established Jerusalem, the Holy City, is unequaled in perfection. He is the perfect priest embodying the perfect priesthood that contrasts with the imperfect priesthood of the children of Levi.

This imperfection of the levitical priesthood lies in the manner they worshiped. The priests of old immolated sacrificial animals to God, a gift

---

31. Ibid., 162:3-4.
32. Ibid., 161:5-6.
33. Ibid., 162:6.
34. Ibid., 161:9-12.
35. See “In Genesim I,” 68.
38. Jacob of Sarug seemingly preferred to employ the title ṣ_pause pause_ (pagan priest) when referring to Melchizedek and the title ṣ_pause pause_ (levitical priest) when referring to the priests of Israel, albeit inconsistently.
outside of themselves.  

Abel, Noah the righteous, Abraham, Levi and his descendants, the great Aaron, the distinguished priest Eleazar, even Phinehas, who kept the angel of death away from the Hebrews, and all other priests of old sacrificed animals and shed animal blood before God. Despite the holiness of these priests, their "priesthood was imperfect, for it served 

shadows until his advent," i.e., until the coming of the Son of God (see Heb 8:5, 10,1).

The priesthood of Melchizedek is perfect and unlike any other 

priesthood in the Old Testament, for the way he worshiped was distinct. He did not perform his priestly duties like other priests and did not vest like them, for he was both a king and a priest. Rather than staining his hands

41. See "HSJS V," 156:5.
42. See "HSJS II," 200:21-22.
43. See "HSJS II," 200:5-20.
44. See "HSJS II," 156:11-14.
46. See Ibid., 156:15-16.
with the blood\textsuperscript{47} of sacrificial animals,\textsuperscript{48} Melchizedek pleased God the Father\textsuperscript{49} by offering him nothing other than his true self\textsuperscript{50} and his spotless person.\textsuperscript{51} Through perfectness, he brought his being to the Lord of Holiness,\textsuperscript{52} stood before him with a clean heart, chaste thoughts,\textsuperscript{53} and a clear conscience\textsuperscript{54} offering him the sacrifice of the self,\textsuperscript{55} thus making himself a pure oblation, a burnt offering, and ascending to him a pleasant scent that does not stink.\textsuperscript{56} Prayers and a pure mind are, in his eyes, more precious and exalted than sacrifices.\textsuperscript{57} The bishop of Batnan imagines Melchizedek saying,

I shall not bring [animal] flesh to offer to the Lord because he certainly does not eat the sacrifice offered to him. The sacrifice of animals will be an insult to the Lord.

[Therefore,] I shall purify myself and sacrifice my mind to the Godhead.\textsuperscript{58}
Jacob of Sarug could not have had recourse to the Old Testament for this description of Melchizedek because, as mentioned above, the Old Testament provides a scanty portrayal of Melchizedek. However, Jacob of Sarug’s depiction of Melchizedek mirrors the language of Heb 7:26-28 depicting the Son of God, the holy, innocent, undefiled, separated from sinners, higher than the heavens, High Priest, who offered himself to his Father and was made perfect forever.

2.1.2 New Mysteries

Besides offering his self, Melchizedek “alone performed a new sacred rite to minister to the mysteries of the crucifixion.” By this innovative religious ritual, Jacob of Sarug also saw the perfect priesthood manifested through Melchizedek as if through the inscrutable Son of God, the Lord of priests, who humbled himself to resemble Melchizedek. The encounter between Melchizedek and Abraham will provide the reader a better understanding of what is meant by this unprecedented spiritual rite and these new mysteries.

Melchizedek brought out bread and wine after Abraham’s victory over the four kings (Genesis 14:18-20). His priestly function consists in offering them to God all his life.

He (Melchizedek) did not bring oxen and sheep for the offering, for he performed his priestly duty with bread and wine all his life. He performed his priestly duty with these sacred rites, for the blood of sacrifices is, in his eyes, worthless to offer.

60. Ibid., 156:2.
62. Ibid., 165:22-166:3.
Abraham shares in this priest’s spiritual mysteries,\(^63\) which are also the mysteries of the Church,\(^64\) when he received Melchizedek’s bread and wine. Accordingly, Melchizedek was the instrument through which Abraham\(^65\) participated in these mysteries. The latter was the first person to partake of the holy things at the former’s hands. Until the advent of the Lord no one, except Melchizedek, ever thought to offer the mystery of bread and wine, whose meaning the crucifixion reveals. Melchizedek solely perceived these types and was purified for this priestly service.\(^66\)

The new mysteries refer to Melchizedek’s offering of the bread and wine. The Eucharistic connotation in this account is unmistakable. Jacob of Sarug saw in the Melchizedek’s bread and wine a clear indication of the Eucharistic offering that the Church celebrates at the altar of her Lord. Melchizedek, whom the perfect food of the Spirit gratified daily,\(^67\) realized that Abraham was worthy of receiving these mysteries. Since the love of the Lord also inflamed Abraham,\(^68\) Melchizedek took a portion of his offering and gave it to him to join Abraham to him. Melchizedek carried bread and wine and brought out body and blood that Abraham, the only one worthy of this honor, partake of the mysteries of his Lord and be joined to this grace-filled...

\(^{63}\) Ibid., 165:18-19.

\(^{64}\) Ibid., 165:20-21, 166:1-2.

\(^{65}\) In Gn. 14:18-20, Abraham was still known as Abram. Jacob of Sarug called Abraham both Abraham (אָבָרָם) and Abram (אֲבָרָם) without any theological distinction or otherwise in his mimre on Melchizedek. Abram provided a convenient way to reduce the number of syllables by one.

\(^{66}\) Ibid., 166:6-13.

\(^{67}\) Ibid., 178:2.

\(^{68}\) Ibid., 167:2.
service.

Jacob also wrote elsewhere, “Melchizedek saw him (the Son of God) giving the world his body and blood and drew an image through bread and wine that he offered.”

Indeed, Melchizedek invited Abraham to the sacrifice of the Spirit that the latter might take delight in it. Furthermore, Melchizedek joined, through his action, Abraham to the priesthood of the Lord.

2.1.3 House on Golgotha for the Holy Things

The house Melchizedek built on Golgotha for the holy things refers to the Church owing precisely to this Eucharistic context. Scriptures do not speak of any structure that Melchizedek constructed. Still, Jacob of Sarug claims that Melchizedek has built a house for the holy things. It is unclear how Jacob comes up with this type, unless he was thinking of Jerusalem, which Melchizedek established and is its king. It seems, however, that the sacramental mysteries provide the bishop of Batnan with the necessary context to identify the Church while he supplies the image of a building: the house for the holy things. Now, the tabernacle of mysteries and the house for the holy things appear to be one and the same. Jacob informs his audience that Melchizedek built this structure on Golgotha, where the crucifixion will occur. This declaration foretells the founding of the Church on the crucified One, Jesus Christ. Each structure, be it physical or spiritual, must be built on a firm foundation lest it may collapse. A reference to Golgotha or the Cross, in the mindset of Jacob of Sarug, is a direct reference

69. Ibid., 166:14-19.
70. Ibid., 400:11-12.
71. Ibid., 166:21.
72. Ibid., 167:3-4.
to Jesus Christ. Therefore, the house for the holy things built on Golgotha is a plausible allusion to the Church.

It is worthwhile stating that for Ephrem the Church is built on the location where the temple stood.\(^7\) Contrary to Ephrem, Jacob imagines the Church built on Golgotha as attested in his account of Melchizedek. The place where the Church is built remains unchanged in the mindset of Jacob of Sarug as shown below.

### 2.2 The Altar Abraham and Isaac Built

The altar Abraham built to sacrifice his son Isaac in fulfillment of God’s command is another image that Jacob of Sarug interprets as a type of the Church. In his *mimro* entitled *On Abraham and His Types*,\(^\text{74}\) a commentary on Genesis 22: 1-19, Jacob of Sarug portrays Abraham as one who established the Church symbolically. As the architect of faith, Abraham builds a house for the mysteries on the spot of the crucifixion. The connection between that which Abraham built and the Church will come to the fore as the journey of Abraham and Isaac unfolds below.

#### 2.2.1 The Day of the Lord

An arch-patriarch, a great prophet, and priest, Abraham was close to God by his deeds. He so trusted God that he did not ask him for the reasons behind God asking him to leave his ancestral home. Furthermore, although dragged throughout the lands of pagan kings and without a place to lay his head, Abraham did not murmur against God. He starved, had to surrender the well he dug and had to endure the pain of having his wife taken away from him. Moreover, God has not blessed him with children yet, and his trials were numerous!

Come, see the love of this patriarch

---

and how close he was to God by his deeds:
When a voice called him away from his ancestral home, he did not delay by asking, “Why, indeed?”
When dragged throughout the lands of pagan kings, he did not have a pillow for his head in their kingdoms.
At one location, hunger drove him away, and he moved to another region.
His wife was taken to another country, and he did not murmur.
At one place, he dug a well, which they seized from him.
At one time, his wife was carried away.
He was without children and abundant in trials.
He loved his Lord and was a great prophet as stated by the revelations.  

Abraham never ceased loving the Lord despite all the trials and tribulations he endured. Although he lived among Canaanites and the inhabitants of Sodom, he did not follow in their sinful footsteps. On the contrary, Abraham “diligently sprinkled them with his sweetness every day and dropped on them a wholesome taste of his kindness” that they might imitate his good deeds. By his acceptance and willingness to sacrifice to God his only son, Isaac, whom Sarah miraculously bore to him late in their lives, he further manifested plainly his great love to God and foreshadowed the Father’s sacrifice of his only-begotten Son on the cross. Abraham, “who tied up his only son that he might become a sacrifice, clearly manifested, by his trials, whom he loved.” Abraham was an important figure, who left behind

---

75. “HSJS V,” 175:5-16.
76. Ibid., 83:9-12.
77. Ibid., 83:17-18.
78. Ibid., 83:19-20.
79. Ibid., 175:19-20.
prophets, priests, and kings,\textsuperscript{80} and whose account every page of the Scriptures narrates.

There is no page in the Scriptures, on which he (Abraham) does not exist. He is both beginning and end among the readings. He left behind prophets, priests, and kings on earth, and every book of the Scriptures mentions him amply.\textsuperscript{81}

Abraham, the friend of the Lord,\textsuperscript{82} inflamed with God’s love\textsuperscript{83}, yearned daily to see God’s Son and greatly rejoiced when he finally saw him in the event of the crucifixion.\textsuperscript{84} Abraham receives this revelation at the moment when he raises his knife to sacrifice Isaac, a type of Christ. Abraham also longed to see the day of the Son (see Jn 8:56),\textsuperscript{85} a reference which Jacob of Sarug applied to the great day on which the great slaughter will occur, i.e., the crucifixion, that is also Ephrem’s interpretation of Jn 8:56.\textsuperscript{86} Jacob of Sarug wrote imagining God saying to Abraham, “I shall manifest to you the great day for which you have longed. While rejoicing, observe the great

\textsuperscript{80} Ibid., 168:21.
\textsuperscript{81} Ibid., 175:21-176:3.
\textsuperscript{82} Ibid., 167:11.
\textsuperscript{83} Ibid., 167:2.
\textsuperscript{84} Ibid., 175:17-18.
\textsuperscript{85} See “HSJS IV,” 61:12.
slaughter. To fulfill Abraham’s desire, God devised a plan which comprised of commanding Abraham to sacrifice Isaac.

The Lord said to him, “Take your only son and sacrifice him to me on a mountain which I shall point out to you.” He asked for Isaac not because he was in need of sacrifices, but rather to indicate the great slaughter of his (God’s) Son.88

2.2.2 Golgotha, the Mountain of Sacrifice

Abraham consented to follow God’s commandment in faith.

After a long time, the heir to the house of Abraham came to exist. He (Abraham) was not sorrowful although he was leading him (Isaac) to become a sacrifice.

To the centenarian, he (Isaac) appeared as a [grape-]cluster on his vine. He plucked it with love that it be consecrated to the Lord of the vineyard. His tree grew old, and then this fruit appeared on it. He presented and offered it as first fruits to the one who sustains all. A shoot sprung from the stump of the centenarian, yet he was not sad while breaking it off by faith. He took Isaac and set out as commanded.

The type came, led the boy towards the slaughter.89

By calling Isaac a cluster on a vine that Abraham plucked to offer as first fruits to God, Jacob of Sarug evokes in the mind of his audience the image of wine that is in direct correlation with the blood of Christ flowing out of his side and, consequently, with the Eucharist. Abraham trusted greatly in God’s promise,90 took his son as directed, and traveled toward a place that God will manifest to him.

---

88. Ibid., 63:3-6.
89. Ibid., 70:12-21.
90. Ibid., 81:3-4.
Unbeknownst to Abraham, God leads him to Golgotha to show him the day of the Son that he longed to see (Jn 8:56). On this mountain of Sacrifice, Abraham observes the crucifixion of the Son of God and contribute symbolically to the establishment of the Church. Through the Eye of Prophecy, Abraham recognizes the mountain to which they had to travel.

When the day of the Son ([إنجليزية] لحظة العبد) [Jn 8:56] arrived on the third [day], and the road of the mysteries of the Only-Begotten ended, Abraham looked up and saw the mountain toward which he was traveling, since the sign of the Son signaled to him, “Hither, old man.” After every mile on the road of the slaughter had been trodden, and since there was on it one abode, namely, that of the altar, the type signaled to him, “Come, ascend to me. Behold! Here I am. It is mountain on which the redemption of the world occurs. Come, up to see the slaughtered One placed on the altar alive, and the Sacrifice slain but the knife does not kill him. Come, I shall show you the day of the Son ([إنجليزية] لحظة العبد) [Jn 8:56] through signs and manifest to you the slaughter of the Only One. Come nearer to me, see the type of truths, and observe me. Behold! I anticipate sincerity. Behold! Come, draw the types shall be set here, and take with you a great image of the Son of God. It is the sign [indicating] your way, man, go towards peace. Come to me. Do not pass by as a stranger. To this harbor steer your ship, captain of types, for the cargo of treasures, which enriches you, is laid here. Come, painter, take divine colors, and through chosen pigments form an image of the Son. It is the place in which the truths are achieved. Do not go another mile, lest you miss it. It is the spot on which the forgiving blood shall be poured [Jn 19:34]. Come, sprinkle on it the blood of the type. Pass by and depart. It is the mountain on which is sharpened the spear for the slaughter [Jn 19:34]. Come, try upon it the knife that sharpened your love. Golgotha, as we say, is the mountain of Isaac, for, on the spot of the crucifixion, his father tied him up.

92. “HSJS IV,” 77:4-5.
93. Ibid., 74:19-76:5.
The biblical story of the testing of Abraham (Gn 22:1-19) does not provide the name of the mountain where Abraham is to sacrifice his son, Isaac. Still, Abraham names the place ירוה י getNodeh, or Yahweh yireh (Gn 22:14)—a Hebrew expression meaning the Lord will see or provide. Since the biblical account is silent on the name of the mountain, it left it open to interpretation. According to Ephrem, it is the mountain of the Amorites. Jacob of Sarug does not follow Ephrem’s lead and identifies it with Golgotha.

2.2.3 The Altar of Sacrifice

After Abraham had finally reached Golgotha, his final destination, the tabernacle of mysteries (�ܡܟܢܐ) manifested where he shall pitch it, and Abraham build its foundation on the exact spot where crucifixion of the Son of God will take place.

The place where Zion set up wood to crucify the Son is the location where the tree carrying the mysteries sprouted.

On the very spot where the hands of the Son were nailed did bonds seize Isaac.

The place where the spear [see Jn 19:34] was lifted against the Redeemer

Abraham arranged stones according to the instructions revealed to him and built an altar for the sacrifice, which Jacob of Sarug calls a house for the mysteries, an implicit type of the Church.

After the priest and the sacrifice had reached the top of the mountain, the tabernacle of mysteries (ܚܫܟܐ ܕܒܪܐܘܓ) appeared where it would be pitched. A revelation came and led him to the spot of the crucifixion that he might build an altar for the sacrifice he will offer.

Building the Tabernacle of Mysteries was, according to Jacob of Sarug, a team effort. Isaac did not sit idle as his father was building the altar but he set down the wood he was carrying, brought stones for the construction of the table of sacrifice, and handed them to his father, Abraham. Therefore, Isaac also contributed to the erection of the Tabernacle of Mysteries and, consequently, the Church.

When Isaac looked and saw what his father was doing, he picked up stones to bring them to the building of the altar.

---

96. This reading differs from that of Richard E. McCarron in McCarron, “Mystical Symbols,” 69. McCarron wrote, “He knew the spot because the ‘visible glory of the mystical symbols’ (škintä drżē) dwelt there.” The participle (ܚܚܟܐ ܕܒܪܐܘܓ) conveys the future tense rather than the presence tense, since Abraham ends up building the altar, which Jacob of Sarug also calls the “house of the mysteries” (ܚܫܟܐ ܕܒܪܐܘܓ).
97. This reading differs from that of Richard E. McCarron in Ibid. McCarron wrote, “house of mystical symbols.”
He saw the priest building an altar for his slaughter
yet calmly extended his hand to offer [the sacrifice]99 with him.
For he (Abraham) is the priest, the architect and the father of the lamb.
And Isaac is the sacrifice, the stonemason and the priest’s son.100

Furthermore,

Isaac lent a hand to his old man with the building
that he would not strange the type by this construction.
Who has [ever] seen a lamb building an altar for its slaughter,
or a sacrifice becoming a laborer on the day of its death?
Where and when did an offering build an altar for itself,
or did first fruits make, with its hand, a house for the holy things?
A sweet [grape] cluster made a winepress to be pressed by it,
and it stomped to trample, alongside its crusher, its grapes.
A calf carried stones on its shoulder to build its altar.
It dragged and unloaded the load for the house of its sacrificing.101

In his mimre on Melchizedek, discussed above, and on Abraham, Jacob
of Sarug employed the same or similar expressions to refer to the building
Melchizedek, and Abraham and Isaac erected on Golgotha, namely, a
tabernacle of mysteries (חֵ设计器, הֶעָּסָּתָּה תַּמַּנָּלָּה), a house for the holy things (חֵ设计器 תַּמַּנָּלָּה) or a house
for the mysteries (חֵ设计器 תַּמַּנָּלָּה). The symbolism of these structures closely connects
with the crucifixion on Golgotha and the Eucharistic connotation it carries.
These structures refer to the crucified Son of God, Jesus Christ, who floods
the world with water and blood flowing out of his side (see Jn 19:34).
In other words, Jesus is the tabernacle or the house, and the water and blood are the
mysteries. By extension, these structures also refer to the Church, whom Jesus

---

99. The verb חֵ设计器 has many meanings, one of which is to offer a sacrifice. See “CSD,” 274.
The verses that followed, mainly, “Bedjan IV,” 90:18-91:7 were the reason behind
selecting this meaning. They refer to the offering helping in its own oblation.
Christ, the Crucified One, made her responsible for dispensing these mysteries. Furthermore, she may not be separated from him, for he had joined her to him. That these structures refer to the Church could also be implicitly inferred from the allusions to the Eucharist further depicted as the sweet wine overflowing from Golgotha. According to Jacob of Sarug, Abraham became inebriated with the sweet wine that flew down Golgotha toward him.\textsuperscript{102} In contrast to Melchizedek, whom Scriptures did not portray erecting a structure, Abraham built an altar by stacking up stones. Whereas Ephrem seems to be silent on interpreting the meaning of the altar Abraham built, Jacob of Sarug interprets it as a type of the Church built on Golgotha.

2.3 The Rock Jacob Anointed

Jacob, the son of Isaac, is another figure in the Old Testament who, according to Jacob of Sarug, contributed to the building of the Church symbolically. According to the biblical story, Isaac sent his son to his ancestral land that Jacob might pick for himself a wife, just as his father did before him, for fear of Jacob marrying a Canaanite or a Hittite girl (see Gn 27:46-28:5). However, according to Jacob of Sarug’s interpretation of this biblical narrative, another reason was behind this journey, namely, for Jacob to travel on the road of the Son and climb the mountain of suffering, where God would reveal to him in a dream the crucifixion of his Son. This revelation impelled Jacob to set down the cornerstone of the Church, thus establishing her foundation. Whereas the structures built by Melchizedek, Abraham and Isaac implicitly allude to the Church, the stone that Jacob laid down undoubtedly refers to her. This powerful imagery unfolds in Jacob of Sarug’s \textit{mimro} entitled \textit{On the Revelation to Jacob at Bethel (ܕܾ˛˛˛˛˛ͷ͚ܰ˛˛˛˛˛Ύͺ˛˛˛˛˛}}\textsuperscript{103} a commentary on Jacob’s dream at Bethel (see Gn 28:10-22).

\textsuperscript{102} Ibid., 79:19-20.

\textsuperscript{103} See “HSJS III,” 192-207.
2.3.1 The Path of the Mysteries

After blessing his son Jacob, Isaac sent him to visit the path of mysteries (יוֹאֵשׁ, מְכוֹנָה), which drove Jacob to leave his father’s house and to tread on the road of the Son, located upon the mountain he reached. The account in Gn. 28:11 mentions an unnamed place, which Jacob of Sarug imagined to be a mountain. This desolate place was so eerie that the patriarch Jacob thought that not even God was there. Fear struck him. Somehow he recognized that the path that he was on could be perfected only through suffering and was afraid to have to suffer there.

The mysteries that cleaved to him as he set out on this journey made him stop at a location that became his lodging place. He was unaware of that which would come to pass there. He slept. Jacob of Sarug likened Jacob’s sleep to the death of the Son of God, thus making the patriarch Jacob a type of Christ. Consequently, it is not far-fetched to presume that the mountain that Jacob reached was Golgotha and the spot where he slept was the exact location where the crucifixion will take place. This presumption is shored up when Jacob of Sarug interpreted the ladder the patriarch Jacob saw in a dream as the cross upon which Jesus, the Son of God, will be crucified. The cross, the source that inundated the world with all treasures, was also

104. Ibid., 193:3-4.
106. Ibid., 193:8-9.
107. Ibid., 193:11-12.
109. Ibid., 5-6.
110. Ibid., 9-10.
111. Ibid., 194:7-8.
depicted by the staff that Jacob carried traveling on this path of the Son.\textsuperscript{112} This image clearly depicts the Son carrying his cross.

2.3.2 The Stone

The patriarch Jacob reached his lodging for the night, picked up a stone, and made it his pillow. His act points to an image of the Church. Inferring that this stone-pillow is a symbol of the Church is a fair assessment of the thinking of Jacob of Sarug, for he penned, “The righteous [Jacob] picked up a stone, laid down his pillow and slept, for the type of the Son does not journey without the Church.”\textsuperscript{113} As stated above, Jacob of Sarug saw in the patriarch Jacob a figure of the Son. Since the type of Son travels only with the Church, one could draw the conclusion that the pillow upon which the patriarch Jacob laid his head is a type of the Church. One does not have only to guess, for Jacob of Sarug makes an explicit connection between the stone and the Church as will be shown shortly.

In his sleep, Jacob dreamt of a ladder, whose symbolism is different than the literal one. Jacob of Sarug arrived at this reasoning with the simple argument, “If angels were climbing [the ladder], for what purpose was it? To what end was steps arrayed for spiritual beings.”\textsuperscript{114} The bishop of Batnan interprets the ladder as a symbol of the path of the Son.\textsuperscript{115} This path refers to

\begin{flushright}
\textsuperscript{112} Ibid., 19-20.
\textsuperscript{113} Ibid., 193:13-14.
\textsuperscript{114} Ibid., 196:5-6.
\textsuperscript{115} Ibid., 196:7-8.
\end{flushright}
the cross, the highway connecting Sheol and earth to the realm of God.\

The dream was clearly a teacher for Jacob.
It gave him a vision that he might read it and be enlightened by it in [his] sleep.
Through the slumber of the night, he rested from the hustle and bustle of the world and saw
the Lord of the universe teaching him about the concealed things.
He entered the [realm] of sleep and arrived at the place of the hidden things
where he learned [about] the concealed mysteries and their elucidations.

2.3.3 Anointed Stone Symbol of the Church

The patriarch Jacob finally realized that the place where he was not, as he had previously thought, deserted, for the Lord was indeed there. Moreover, he discovered that “This is truly the house of God, and this is clearly the gate of heaven (אֲגָּרָה הַמִּשְׁכָּנָה).” Ephrem had used the image of the gate of image in this context. Consequently, as soon as “he got up in the morning, he began with the construction of the Church that the location of the vision might be honored with beautiful symbols.” Jacob accomplished this

117. Ibid., 200:9-10.
118. Ibid., 197:7-8.
119. Ibid., 196:9-10.
120. Ibid., 197:9-10.
121. Ibid., 197:19-198:2.
122. “In Genesim II,” 74 (Latin); “In Genesim I,” 89.
by erecting the Church’s cornerstone and smeared it with oil, thus symbolizing her establishment. This foundation stone refers to the stone that Jacob used as a pillow. Jacob of Sarug wrote, “Jacob erected a stone and brought oil to pour on its top that the type of the Church might be clearly completed.” Consequently, Jacob

built God a house in name, for he set up a stone for him as one evidently affirming the Church in the world. The sagacious man called the entire place the house of God, placed a stone in it, and smeared it as in mystery.127

The bishop of Batnan points out that Jacob was the first one to anoint a stone and that he did not learn it from anyone who came before him.128

For both Aphrahat and Ephrem Jacob anointing the stone is a type of Christ anointing Gentile believers. The stone is a type of believers stemming from the Gentiles. The following passage is Murray’s translation of the related text from Aphrahat’s Demonstration IV, On Prayer,

And Jacob called that place Bethel; and Jacob set up there a pillar of stone for a testimony, and poured oil on its head. This also our father Jacob did as a mystery, foreshadowing that stones were to receive unction; for the nations who have found faith in Christ are they who are anointed, as John said concerning them, From these stones God is able to raise up sons for Abraham. Thus in Jacob’s prayer the mystery of the calling of the Nations was prefigured.129

126. Ibid., 201:13-14.
Murray’s further writes,

Ephrem has the same interpretation; the oil which Jacob poured on the stone contained the ‘mystery’ of Christ hidden within it, and ‘Again, by the stone was signified the mystery of the Church, to which were to come the vows and sacrifices of all the nations.

According to Jacob of Sarug, the patriarch Jacob knew what to do, for the Lord revealed it to him in his dream. The Lord instructed him, “Build me a house, and then you may continue with your affairs.”

“Bring oil, pour it upon the stone, for it is the Church, and depict her for me, since she will return after some time. Lay down the foundation for the great house for the King’s Bride that, upon it, all the righteous might build all their offsprings.”

This quote leaves no doubt to the fact that, in the mind of Jacob of Sarug, the stone used by the Patriarch Jacob as a pillow refers to the Church. The stone is just a foreshadow of what is to come. The Church shall no longer be depicted by symbols, for she will return. The Son of Isaac did not build the entire structure of the Church but laid down her cornerstone. The righteous who shall come after him will continue building upon it until the Son of God hung on the columns of pearls, i.e., the cross, reveals the whole structure.
The house built by the Patriarch Jacob is not just any house. It is the Church, the house of mysteries (تاناويات). This expression brings to light similar phrases Jacob of Sarug used to manifest the structures built by Melchizedek, and Abraham and Isaac. Furthermore, it reinforces the interpretation that these structures are symbols of the Church. The house of mysteries is a place of rest for the Lord, who had already decided to come down to earth. The Patriarch Jacob thought to himself, “The Lord, who is standing on the ladder, desires to come down. [Therefore,] I shall prepare him a befitting house that he might be honored by it.” Ultimately, the Lord is the One building his house.

He (the Lord) set his face to descend to become one of us. He builds a house that it may be prepared for his honor. He desires to do something on earth that when he comes down to it, a place will be established henceforward for his resting-place.

So, the Patriarch Jacob was God’s instrument in building the Church, the Lord’s house, symbolically.

2.4 The Rock upon Which Moses Sat

As will be shown below Jacob of Sarug, in his mimro entitled On the Extended Hands of Moses, a Symbol of the Cross, During the Battle of Amalek (سجدان موسى، مظاهر الصليب، خلال معركة أمالك), sees, in this specific scene (see Ex 17:8-16), a clear symbol of Jesus crucified between two thieves. This biblical event out of the Old Testament further provides the bishop of Batnan yet

---

136. Ibid., 207:16-17.

The righteous Jacob built a house of mysteries there and greatly supported it with tithes and vows.

137. Ibid., 203:21-204:1.

138. Ibid., 204:6-7.

139. Ibid., 204:12-15.

140. See “HSJS V,” 290-306.
again with another rock — the one upon which Moses sat — which he perspicuously interprets to be a symbol of the Church.

The biblical narrative of Ex 17:8-16 tells of the Israelites defeating Amalek in a battle which he waged against them. Moses sent Joshua at a head of a group of selected courageous men to engage the Amalekites in battle, while he, Aaron, and Hur climbed to the top of a nearby hill. The outcome of the combat depended solely on Moses, standing with raised arms atop the hill. As long as he, carrying the staff of God, kept them up, the Israelites had the upper hand in the fight. But, when he let them down due to weariness, the tables were turned, and Amalek was at an advantage. To bear his tiredness, Moses sat on a rock which Aaron and Hur had pushed underneath him, and they supported his arms, standing one to his right and the other to his left. They remained in this posture until sunset when Joshua finally crushed the forces of Amalek.

2.4.1 Miracle by the Hidden Sign

Moses, bearing a hidden sign and carrying the staff of God, stood atop a nearby hill, whereas Joshua, following Moses’s instruction, faced Amalek in a fierce battle. Notwithstanding that Jacob of Sarug questions Moses’s decision to climb the mountain and is ready to call him a coward, he hints at the fact that there is more to the story than meets the eye.

Why would you, Moses, go up the hill near the battle? 
The combat is [occurring] in the valley, and you climb to a high place! 
The marshaled troops are alarmed, and you crawl up to a hilltop! 
The combat is ferocious, and you climb to a pronounced place! 
Behold! The Amalekites are engaged in battle with the Nation. Go down, fight! 
Behold! Legions attack each other, point out yours. 
If it were not for the sign (ܠܘܼܢܐ, I would count you as a deserter. 
If you had not been a type (ܠܹܓܺܝܹܐ), you would have wanted to escape. 
Unless you courageously join the battle and fight with your people, it would look like as if you had abandoned the struggle and fled. 
You had provoked the young man, who led the mighty men, [into battle]! 
Now go out and fight. 

78
You, in the fortress of hilltops, did you expect that you would not be smitten?\textsuperscript{141}

Moses goes up the mountain, for he is on a mission which he had shared with Joshua. “I shall climb the hill with the hidden sign (شَقْصَا) and the staff of God in my hands to perform a miracle.”\textsuperscript{142}

### 2.4.2 Victory by the Cross and Crucifixion

Moses is “the fountain of prophecy, who set down in his book all unfathomable wealth, treasures, and riches.”\textsuperscript{143} He had the temerity to call the Son of God, who is to come, “a prophet like me” (see Dt 18:15, 18; Act 3:22, 7:37), for he served his types from his youth on and depicted him in everything his entire life. This great prophet, who was to the Son of God what a shadow is to the body, also represented the crucifixion of Christ during the battle waged by Amalek against the Hebrews.

The great Moses depicted in everything the Son who is to come. On that account, he had the audacity to declare him “like me” to his people.

The inarticulate [Moses] declared him “a prophet like me” without being ashamed, for he knew that he served his types from his youth.

The son of the virgin, the daughter of Pharaoh, depicted, by his types, the Son of Mary, the Virgin, who gave birth without relations.

Moses portrayed him by his birth and crucifixion (كَشَفَّامُهُ), for he cleaved to him as a shadow to a body to depict his likeness.

He wore his types from birth until death.

For this reason, he declared him “like me” without shame.

He prepared before his Lord every abode in which his Lord dwelt until he (Moses) ascended on the cross (مَكَّكُهُ أَهَ كَرَكُّهُ) just like Jesus.

He began to depict the Son’s image by his prophecy.

\textsuperscript{141} \textit{Ibid.}, 293:1-12.

\textsuperscript{142} \textit{Ibid.}, 292:20-21.

\textsuperscript{143} “HSJS III,” 44:1-2.
He depicted him for one hundred and twenty years and then died.
For a long time, the painter worked on the King's image,
reached death, and accomplished it by his many gifts then.
In a previous minhag we regarded his birth,
and in this second one, we examine his deeds.
There are in today's [minhag] nails, sufferings and crucifixion,
the spear of murder, the sight of death, and the image of blood.
Behold! In the battle between Amalek and the Hebrews,
he appeared to him, and the type revealed itself out of the [biblical] verses.
Until now, they had been talked about symbolically,
and now Moses openly depicted the crucifixion.144

The hidden sign mentioned in the previous section is the cross, and the
miracle is the victory of the Hebrews over the Amalekites. This sign
accompanied Moses, Aaron, and Hur. Accordingly, the bishop of Batnan
urges his audience not to judge the actions of Moses quickly without
scrutinizing the entire biblical story. Furthermore, he asks them to go beyond
the fact that Moses did not join Joshua in the battle. Jacob of Sarug eventually
argues that Moses did admittedly go up to the top of the hill, but not to run
away. He stood overlooking the battle that the sign cleaving to Moses might
shine forth. In this context, he is mainly speaking of the event that took
place on Golgotha. Moses shall resemble the cross of Jesus, whereas Aaron and Hur
the crosses of the two thieves crucified to Jesus's right and left.

Look, you insolent! Why do you find fault at the end?
Look at the destruction of judgment, and then you may lodge a complaint.
Do not only see that he (Moses) left the combat and went up [the hill],
but that he provided victory [to the Hebrews] by extending his hands.

He summoned his disciple (Joshua) and ordered him to marshal against the [Amalekite] nation, and he climbed the high mountain to depict the sign (šā’īm). The humble one led Aaron and Hur, who ascended with him, to resemble the three crosses on Golgotha (ܠܫܐ ܠܟܒܐ ܫܝܚܐ). [Moses] placed the cross of strength on his chest and extended his hands that he, by his manifestations, might depict the Son in reality. He set up on the hill the sign of the cross (ܫܡܐ ܪܟܚܐ), and the nations fell. He inclined its shadow among the marshaled troops, and it troubled them.145

Jacob of Sarug, like Ephrem,146 sees in Moses extending his arms a clear symbol of the cross. The reason that the Hebrew achieved victory in the battle is that the cross overshadowed the Amalekites, startled and confused them. In fact, the entire outcome of the fight lay solely in Moses’s hands. What was happening on the battlefield was of no consequence, for Moses was in control. He is the one who could grant either victory or defeat by the sign of the cross he displayed. It was impossible for Amalek to win this fight, for he was not fighting the Hebrews, but the cross.

The wretched Amalek did not know where to fight. The cross [was] against him, and he raged about the victory. The [outcome of the] entire battle was altered at the hands of Moses, who could grant [to one side] victory and defeat [to the other]. Both to stand and to fall [in the battle] were placed in the palms of his hands, and he could grant victory and defeat to whomever he willed like a judge. He was to the fighting as a charioteer [to a chariot] by the outstrecthing of his hands and held the bridles of the marshaled troops and their courses. When Moses lowered his hands, the Nation was defeated, but when he raised [them], Israel conquered the Nations. The marshaled troops [waged] the battle, but victory [came] from Moses. Both sides [were ravaging], but their movements were in the hands of the tongue-tied one [see Ex 4:10].

Neither the warriors could escape because of their strength,

145. Ibid., 293:13-294:3.
146. “In Genesim II,” 127 (Latin); “In Genesim I,” 147 (ܒܝܬܐ ܒܐ ܟܛܡܝܒ ܦܫܛܝܒ ܐܬܘܢܗ �� ܟܟ).

81
nor the innocent could be decimated because of their indolence.
The one not helping was esteemed surpassing,
for Moses vanquished [them], brought [them] to their knees, made [them]
rise, granted them victory, and condemned them to defeat.
They who shot [arrows] did not conquer and who neglected [to fight] were
not decimated and who deserted did not revolt.
Those who battled did not triumph and who ceased [to fight] did not lose
and who kept silence did not die.
Although they battled with their might, they did not triumph,
but if Moses raised his hands, he strengthened them.
Their zeal to attain victory was to no advantage,
and whenever the power appeared on the hilltop, their troops prevailed.
By the burnished swords in their hands, they were not victorious,
Their zeal to attain victory was to no advantage,
Although they battled with their might, they did not triumph,
but if Moses slacked a little, the hosts went on their knees.
The bravery on both sides was of no effect,
for the power that overthrows and raises up appeared from the hilltop.147

To grant the Hebrews victory, Moses must keep the posture of the
cross, however. As soon as he lets his hands down due to weariness, Amalek
and his troops had the upper hand.

[When] he (Moses) outspread his hands, he gave his kinsfolk victory,
[but when] he lowered them, he made them powerless by his feebleness.


---
82
When he was able to raise the symbol, he grew strong, but when he grew weary, he rested the Type, the Hebrews were impuissant. When he (Moses) depicted the image of the crucifixion, Amalek was powerless, but when he wanted to stop, the spear was drunken with his kinsfolk's blood. When he displayed the King's sign, the persecutors fell, but when he wanted to hide it, the uncircumcised dared to destroy them. When he outspread the sign on the mountain, Israel prevailed, but when he concealed the likeness, the persecutors entered his camp. When he clung to his Lord's sign, the foreigners were powerless, but when he came close to resting, he brought suffering onto those belonging to his family.

When he stretched out on the crossbeams of pains, his people were relieved, but if came close to [taking] a break, he afflicted his people.

When he bore the image of the Shepherd, his sheep exulted, but when he rested the image, the wolves returned to his pasture. When he took up the Eagle to the summit, his flocks leaped for joy, but when he brought [it] down into the depth, hawks pounced on his nestlings.

He was not able to uphold the symbol the whole day, so the combat down below was both waxing and waning.  

Aaron and Hur came to help the old man Moses endure tiredness. They assisted him by keeping his arms until the Israelites finally triumphed over the Amalekites. To make the event of Golgotha vivid, Jacob of Sarug explains that Aaron and Hur also extended their hands standing one to Moses’s right and the other to his left. Like Moses, their postures represented the crosses on Golgotha. Therefore, the three men thoroughly depicted the crucifixion of Jesus; Moses being the type of Jesus and Aaron and Hur typifying the two thieves crucified on either side of Jesus. Although Jacob of

Sarug does not foresee the hilltop where Moses stood extending his hands to be Golgotha, his reader could still adduce a close association between the two and that the former depicts the latter.

The distinguished Aaron and the illustrious Hur approached him (Moses) to attend to the hands of the old man that were waxing feeble. They outspread their hands in conformity with the crucifixion lest [this event] be void of the three on Golgotha. Wanting to attend to Moses’s hands, they also raised theirs on the right and left. They signified with the outstretched hands the type as if [to represent] with the affair the truth, and they accomplished the type which occurred at its appointed time with [their] action. Who would consider hill of Moses and his (the Son’s) Golgotha and would interpret their crucified ones differently? Three are on that of Moses and three on that of the Son, [so there is] one interpretation. There is the shadow, and here the body that manifested the truth.149

2.4.3 Victorious Cross Fixed on the Church

Lastly, the rock, brought by Aaron and Hur to Moses that he might sit on it, depicts the Church. Jacob of Sarug, moreover, sees in this rock her establishment on Golgotha, whereas Ephrem does not make this association. The bishop of Batnan, therefore, presented and offered his hearers with a vivid image of a church structure adorned with the victorious cross, whose foundations are entrenched in Golgotha. With this depiction, Jacob of Sarug ends his minro.

Moses was crucified on the hill summit in conformity with an evident type and strengthened in the battle by a hidden sign. The old man was long-suffering and reached the evening. Behold he would have gone down but he had realized that the count of his talents was missing a small coin. The painter looked at the awesome painting he accomplished,

149.  Ibid., 300:2-13.
and one single color was lacking on it, so he finished it. He realized that the subject of the Church was remote from his account, and he feared going down, for he has not depicted her in his hymns. They brought a rock, placed it underneath him, and he sat on it. Then the Church was established with the cross on her. Blessed be his redemption!150

2.5 Conclusion

The Old Testament is full of typological interpretation that the Son of God overtly revealed. These many types and symbols fed the extraordinary imagination of Jacob of Sarug. In these representations, he identified a building as an ecclesiological type.

This chapter explored the biblical events of Melchizedek encountering Abraham and offering him bread and wine, of Abraham and Isaac building an altar, and of Jacob’s dream that provided the essential background allowing Jacob of Sarug to identify structures as types of the Church. Although Melchizedek did not, according to Scriptures, build a structure, Jacob of Sarug claims that Melchizedek built a house for the holy things on Golgotha. This building is an implicit type of the Church due to the Eucharistic connotation that the bread and wine offered. Jacob of Sarug apparently interprets the bread and wine as symbols of the body and blood of Christ.

The bishop of Batnan explicitly explains the altar built by Abraham and Isaac as a type of the Church. The wording used to interpret this image is the same as the expressions used in connection with the building built by Melchizedek. The location of the altar is Golgotha, the exact location where the crucifixion of Jesus will occur.

150. Ibid., 305:8-306:5.
The stone that Jacob, the son of Isaac, used as a pillow and anointed is a clear symbol of the Church and its foundation. Here too, the bishop of Batnan envisions Jacob dreaming on Golgotha where he set the foundation of the Church. Lastly, the rock upon which Moses sat during the battle of Amalek became for Jacob of Sarug a depiction of the Church adorned by the victorious cross of the Jesus.

In these biblical events, the image of the Son of God on the cross is at their center. From his side on the cross flow water and blood which inundate the world. These are God’s gift for the redemption of the world and are the responsibility of the Church to dispense on all believers. One of her other duties is to evangelize by becoming a fisherman like her Lord and a fishing net cast by him into the sea of the world. The following chapter presents these images employed in the poetry of Jacob of Sarug.
CHAPTER 3

THE CHURCH, FISHERMAN AND LIFE-GIVING FISHNET

The image of fisherman is appropriate for Jesus Christ because he is the Fisherman par excellence who promised to make his followers Fishers of Men (see Mt 4:19; Mk 1:17; Lk 5:10). Jacob of Sarug, commenting on Jn 21:1-14, interprets as the Church the fishing net full of one hundred fifty-three large fish that Simon Peter dragged ashore after the resurrected Lord had informed him to cast it on the right side of the boat. Accordingly, the current chapter focuses on the images of Fisher and Fishnet as symbols of the Church and her missionary role in the world, an ever important topic of discussion.

The figure of the Lord as a fisherman\(^1\) had already been present in Syriac literature before the time of the bishop of Batnan. Murray provides his readers with an overview of this imagery starting with Aphrahat, who employs it exclusively to refer to the snares of the Evil One or the behavior of the deceivers: “The wily one set [traps] in many ways and spread his net (crastus) as a wise fisherman (nirat) capturing, leading, and taking [human beings] to destruction as he pleases.”\(^2\) Both Ephrem and Marutha apply it to the Apostles winning men for Christ.\(^3\) Murray points out that Ephrem also speaks of Jesus as the “great Fisherman” to the apostles in the following passage he translated from Ephrem’s hymn on Virginity,

Let Bethsaida offer a crown

---

1. On Jesus and his Apostles as Fishermen in Syriac literature before the time of Jacob of Sarug, see Murray, “Symbols,” 176-178.
to the Fisher of all!
The Fisher of all fished for her
so as to fish through her fishermen.
[Once] they sought a catch for the belly,
[but now] a catch for the Kingdom.
The twelve fishermen went out and netted the world;
they caught kings from the sea of bitterness,
freeborn men from the abyss of lust,
and slaves from the stream of wickedness.4

Cyrillona also adverts to Christ as a fisherman casting his fishing net
and sending his Apostles as merchants into the world that they may fish for
souls.5 None of the Syriac Fathers before Jacob of Sarug seem to have
associated the image of a Fishnet with the Church.

Now Jacob of Sarug inherits this fisherman-imagery tradition. “The
Light came out to kill the darkness of the world and fished wisely in every
region.”6 The bishop of Batnan does not only make use of it but expands upon
it as well. His interpretation of several biblical texts using this image is
distinctive. In his theological outlook, the symbol of a ṣayādā (شیادا)7 refers both

---

7. A word is due concerning the Syriac word ṣayādā (شیادا), which normally means a fisher or hunter. See R. Payne Smith, ed., TS, II (Oxonii: Ḥ Typographeo Clarendonianon, 1901), 3376; “CSD,” 477. Since Jacob of Sarug employs it in different contexts, it is challenging to translate it consistently. Admittedly, it is a biblical image which signifies a fisherman (see Mt 4:18-22; Mk 16:1-20 and their parallels Lk 5:1-11; Jn 21:1-14), yet nor the word fisherman nor the noun hunter nor the substantive bird-catcher always fits the theme of a poem-snippet under consideration. Thus, the title ṣayādā (شیادا) is left untranslated. Also, one should keep in mind that besides the meanings just mentioned above, ṣayādā (شیادا), in its wider sense, can also signify a catcher.
to the Lord and the Evil One, and the Church’s symbols as a fisher and a life-giving fishnet emerge as appropriate tools the resurrected Lord employs to capture souls. The remainder of this chapter explicates this rich symbolism in the writings of Jacob of Sarug.

3.1 Jesus Christ, śayāḏa (𐭥𐭥) Par Excellence

The title śayāḏa (𐭥𐭥) relates to a net as a symbol of the Church in that it refers to the agent casting the net, to Jesus Christ. Without him, the net is useless because it cannot throw itself. The Lord, in the theological understanding of the bishop of Batnan, employs different means at his disposal to capture the world, and lead it to repentance, thus bringing human beings to him, into his light, for he is light and life to them. “Jesus, Might of the Father, who sent you, strengthen me too. You are altogether light and life for human beings.”

Jacob compares Jesus Christ to a śayāḏa (𐭥𐭥), for he “cast his net here and there in the whole world that the entire creation might be gathered in the life-giving net [see Lk 5:10].” This designation is not an innovation of Jacob. Ephrem, before him, refers to Jesus as the Fisher of all (ܡܳܩܳܟܠܳܐ). The story of the Magi who came to Bethlehem seeking the newborn King (see Mt 2:1-12) will serve as one of two examples employed herein to illustrate the theme of the Lord as a ܡܳܩܳܟܠܳܐ. The other extracted from the corpus of Jacob of Sarug deals with the narrative about the Samaritan woman whom Jesus met at the well (see Jn 4:1-42).

---


By every means he captured the world for repentance.


12. The reader of Jacob of Sarug could certainly find other examples scattered in his numerous mimre.
3.1.1 The Magi

To attract Assyria and Persia to him, represented henceforth by the Magi, the Lord acted as a skilled ᵁ,³⁴ In his mimro entitled On the Star that Appeared to the Magi and the Massacre of the Innocents,⁴ Jacob of Sarug likens the Lord to a skilled ᵁ.³⁵ This ᵁ knows that setting up the proper trap and choosing the suitable bait to lure are essential for capturing their prey. The wrong bait will produce a failed catch and lead the prey not to bite, but to flee.

A ᵁ sets up bait to lure [a prey].
They attract and ensnare every kind [of prey] by the food it desires,
for they know that unless they lure [it], they cannot catch [it].
For this reason, they attract each kind [of prey] by [a bait] pleasing to it.¹⁴

Being astronomers, the Magi study the zodiacal signs, observe the luminaries and stars and busy themselves with their calculations. Therefore, the heavens, being the passion of these stargazers from the East, are the perfect snare. Magianism, referring to the Magi and their peoples,
labored with birthdays and the zodiacal signs.
For this reason, Truth caught it by [the thing] about which it muses.
It turned its mind toward the luminaries to gaze at them.
Truth then came upon it out of them and through them by his skillfulness.
It gazed at the stars and [busied itself] with the way of their calculations.
Truth then set traps for it that it may see him there while he is ensnaring it.
It has power over customs based on the zodiacal circle.
The news of the Son shone to it out of it that it may see his face.¹⁵

---

13. See “HSJS I,” 84-152.
15. Ibid., 91:3-10.
Jacob asks, what is the best way to catch the Magi? They are fascinated with the skies, gaze at, and study heavenly bodies and their movements. Therefore, to catch them, the Lord must choose something out of the zodiacal signs they desire and employ it as the suitable bait.

What is the [right] bait to catch Magianism
if it is not something out of the zodiacal signs that it desires?
He gave it that for which it yearns while seizing it that it come to him,
for it would have run away from its happening].16

The star of light is the right bait which peeked the Magi’s interest, drew their attention, intrigued them, and raised their curiosity. Through this celestial body, the Magi knew of the newborn King.

Although it (Magianism) is mad and gazes upon auguries, in its judgment,
the star of light signaled to it guilefully that the King is in Judea.
Its heart was captured based on the calculations of its craft,
from which it learned that the King has appeared, as we have said.17

The Lord also employs the craft of the Magi to their benefit. He uses it to lure them to him. This call to him does not mean, however, that he approves of their craft, for once he caught the Magi, he destroys Magianism.

The Wise-Hearted caught the skilled one by what it possesses.
However, it did not know how he ensnared it by its craft.
He conquered it by skillful trappings that it had honed, and he subjugated it.
He valiantly killed it by that which it possessed like Goliath.18

That the heavens, the star of light and the craft of the Magi were the appropriate capturing tools used by the Lord could be seen by the fact that


the Magi end up coming to the Lord and abandoning their craft. Jacob exhorts the discerners to listen to what he has to say “concerning the astronomical calculations that were exposed by him, who captured it with what belongs to it. It became his and abandoned that which belonged to it.”19

In fact, there is no other way to capture the Magi. The Lord uses what is at his disposal to lure them to him. He chooses to shine through something fake to attract them to him. “The Truth entered what is untrue not true to bring them [to him], for there was no other snare to catch them.”20 The prophets and their message, according to Jacob of Sarug, would have been the wrong bait. They could not have produced a catch. The investigation of the heavens had already corrupted the Magi, who only regard what they see in the skies.

If a prophet had said to it, “A Virgin shall conceive in Judea,” it would not have accepted it, unless the zodiacal would have permitted [it]. It had a distaste for the reading of prophecy. The study of [celestial] bodies has already damaged its heart.21

The Lord knows beforehand that the Magi will only respond to what they discover investigating the stars. Sending prophets to them would be to no avail and detrimental to the prophets. If the Lord had sent them prophets, they would have rejected their message and stoned them, for neither the prophets nor their message was the Magi’s passion. Indeed, Magianism would not have accepted the doctrine from Isaiah nor would it have listened to the words of Jonah if he had preached, for over against the teachers of Magianism is Moses, and it does not acknowledge the doctrine of the servants of Adonai. Since over against Chaldean knowledge is prophecy, it would have stoned the prophets if they had proclaimed anything to it. It did not incline its ear to Moses to listen to him.

20. Ibid., 92:16-17.
21. Ibid., 91:19-22.
or to refute his words, [for] it was preoccupied with its craft.  

Since the Lord knows that the Magi’s passion lies in the observation of the heavens and the studies of the stars and zodiacal signs, he sets up his trap in the skies to bring them to him. Their fascination with the firmament makes it an appropriate snare. It is precisely there, among the celestial bodies, where the Lord lay in wait. “The True One set an ambush, hid among the zodiacal signs, caught Magianism thence and guided it to him.” Thus, Jesus Christ is the par excellence.

The shining star the Magi followed westward is the fitting lure. Their examination of the heavenly bodies leads them to learn about the newborn King, for “The news of the Son shone to [them] out of [the zodiacal signs] that [they] might see his face.” For this reason, they undergo the journey seeking the Incarnate Word, whom they finally worship. What is intriguing is that Jacob of Sarug accentuates the Magi’s ability to recognize the face of the Son of God in their craft!

3.1.2 The Samaritan Woman and the Samaritans

The Lord was successful in luring the Magi into coming to him, for he employed the suitable bait for them. Nevertheless, what is appropriate to catch the Magi would not be fitting to capture the Samaritan woman whom the Lord set out to meet at the well. Therefore, he must set a different trap and use the proper bait to capture her and her co-villagers. Jacob describes this

---

22. Ibid., 90:16-91:2.

23. Ibid., 90:2-3.

24. Ibid., 91:10.
lure in his *minro* entitled *On the Samaritan Woman* (אַּמְרַת תְּמוּנָת), a commentary on Jn 4:1-42.

Being the good Shepherd (Jn 10:11), who goes after that one lost sheep (Mt 18:12-14; Lk 15:3-7), i.e. Adam, Jesus moved by love goes to Samaria, for its inhabitants had entered into error.

Love was the reason that summoned him to Earth to walk on it. He set forward looking for Adam, the lost sheep. After the good Shepherd had set out after his sheep, the journey directed him to the Samaritans to care for them. It made him pass through there, as it is written, that he find them, for they had gone astray.

Jesus goes straight to the well to set his trap there, for the knows that the road leads the prey there. After setting the trap, he lies in wait.

At the beginning of his journey, as a wise man, he directed his course he had taken to the water well. As a he hurried to the spring to set a trap, for he knew that the road of the prey [leads] there. He saw the water and wisely hid his snare. He lay in wait, watching as a full of foreknowledge.

Tired of walking, the Lord sat at the well to rest. His exhaustion was only a means to achieve his goal to eradicate Adam’s weariness.

He (Jesus) was wearied by labor, for he wanted to be weary as a stratagem. Tired is the One who eradicated the weariness of smitten Adam. The One who made straight paths in the desert was weary and sat down, and endured exertion and weariness of the road he was traveling. The reason for his weariness was Adam’s body which he had put on, for unless he had will to become one of us, he would not have been weary. The One who bestrides the cherubim, and whose path is loftier than that of the spiritual beings,
travels on a road although he encloses regions. He refreshes the weary and is neither weary nor exhausted, yet since he became a human being, exertion overtook him on thoroughfares. The entire weariness of Adam’s journey did he carry on his feet to eradicate the labor of the weary one, for he was weak when he stumbled. He wearied for the sake of Adam that Adam rest from exhaustion. Weariness overtook him that he acquire rest for Adam. He, the origin of human races, went forth to the land of thorns and was lost, so his Lord when out seeking him out and was weary while looking for him. He sought him on the roads, pursued him throughout regions, wearied, found [him] in the manner he sought [him] out, and was not irked. Therefore, he was weary in the manner he was weary for Adam’s sake, and he sat down to rest from the labor that befell him.28

The Lord did not leave as soon as he rested but stayed longer because he was waiting for the prey to come there. His physical exhaustion was only an excuse to prolong his break at the well, for he wanted to fill his life-giving trap.

He delayed [at the well] to be on the lookout for his prey coming into his hands. He got tired to rest that, by this pretext [weariness], his trap might be filled. Our Lord buried a life-giving snare in the place of death, sat expecting to fill [his] net, and then he will draw it.29

His prey is the Samaritan woman, whom he draws toward him. “The weary One sat at the well because he willed [it so], and his sign drew the Samaritan [woman] to him.”30 She is unaware of that which is about to occur

---


to her when she had gone out to the well to fulfill a mundane chore. Thirsty, she goes up to the well to fill up her water jug yet returns inundated with the Water of Life that is from above.

The woman went out to draw water and was unaware that the great Sea of New Life was about to meet her. While she was seeking to fill her water jug, a deluge gushed out, and the Sea, who was sent to irrigate the entire world, encompassed her. She began to draw [water] from the deep well, and the anointed Sea opened himself to her that she drink from him. While she was gazing at the water in the bottom [of the well] to draw it up, Heavenly Waters came down and surrounded her from every side. The heavenly Flood overcame the waters down below and drew the woman that she draw from him and leave them behind.\textsuperscript{31}

As a consequence of the Samaritan woman’s encounter with Jesus, she “left behind her water jug and returned impetuously without water, for she took with her a different kind of water that is from above.”\textsuperscript{32}

Jesus initiated the conversation with the Samaritan woman by asking her to give him to drink. This image is paradoxical in itself, for the Lord himself, who bears the worlds, is the source of all waters and they belong to him,\textsuperscript{33} yet he is asking someone to quench his thirst.

He (Jesus) asked the Samaritan [woman] for water meagerly, and deluges gush out abundantly from springs? Do I reckon him thirsty? All the seas are his. Do I proclaim him wearied? He carries the worlds by his might.\textsuperscript{34}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{31} Ibid., 286:7-16.
\item \textsuperscript{32} Ibid., 300:9-10.
\item \textsuperscript{33} This along with Jesus being weary echo Aphrahat’s thoughts. See “ASPD I.1,” 277:3-6.
\item \textsuperscript{34} “HSJS II,” 283:2-5.
\end{itemize}
It is truly surprising that the Lord of the seas is now asking to be given a drink.

Along with his Father did he gather the waters into a basin. Now, that he has become one of us, he asks for water, and will it not be given to him? By his command does the earth bring forth springs and rivers. It is astonishing that he said, "Give me to drink!"

Engaging the Samaritan woman in a conversation was the trap Jesus set to catch her, and the water for which he asked was the bait. His thirst was nothing but a pretext that opened the door to Jesus’s teaching. He did not, in fact, want to drink, but to quench her thirst with the Water of life.

The Lord began talking to her [saying], "Give me to drink."
It was this pretext that opened the door to the teaching. Through the subject of water does the Lord open the door for dialogue. Indeed, he did not seek her out to drink, for he did not even drink. To the woman who was drawing water did he plan to talk. What would one say except "Give me water to drink?"

Jacob reasons that Jesus did not want to drink in reality, for the biblical story does not state that he drank.

Furthermore, the Apostles were not present, for Jesus wanted to be alone with the woman. How many would it have taken to purchase food for thirteen men? Was it necessary for the twelve apostles to go to acquire something to eat? One would have been enough for that task.

---

35. Ibid., 283:16-17.
On that which the Lord of the Sea had asked A minuro was set in motion to be recited with great love.


[Our Lord] sent his disciples under the pretext of [buying] food that he might have the opportunity to talk to [the Samaritan woman]. The incident clearly announced that the reason for which he sent all of them was for him to remain [at the well]. If he had wanted to bring back food according to the incident, one [of the disciples] would have gone to seek it out and not the many. They were twelve. He sent all of them that he might remain [there] and make a way for him while the disciples were not around. If he had allowed just one [of the disciples] to be with him, [that one disciple] would have spoken with the woman instead of our Savior. If that disciple had remained [there], he would not have allowed the woman to talk to the Master of all masters. For this reason, the Son of God sent all of them that he alone might make a way proper to him.

Just one [of the disciples] could have bought the food if they had trodden on the road of all of them. One would have achieved [this task] if it were about food.

What the Son of God achieved before they returned, not even all of them could have achieved if they had remained. He sent them, kept them far from the event, and brought the woman to talk to her under the pretext of water.38

Jesus, the dismissed his disciples under the pretext of acquiring nourishment to capture his prey.

The disciples who bought the food as commissioned asked him to eat the food, but he did not want to. He showed clearly the reason for which he had sent them: They will bring food while he is filling his snare with a catch.39
The main reason he goes to the well is to give the Samaritan woman exactly what she is thirsty for. Thirst and weariness are Christ’s pretext for stopping at the well, and his hunger was just an excuse to send his Apostles away. Engaging her in conversation was the Lord’s trap, and the drink for which he asked her is his lure. All of this was just an excuse conceived by the ḳ to benefit the Samaritan woman.

Was he asking to drink water in reality, or did he plan to give away Water of Life? Was he truly longing for a drink? Did he ask for water because he thirsted, or was he not thirsty but wanted to quench the thirst of the thirsty [woman]? It was not written that he drank or that she gave him that for which he had asked.

He said, “Give me to drink,” yet did not drink. Notwithstanding that there is a reason to be thirsty, it is easy to learn that he did not ask for water because he thirsted. It is not necessary for a person to drink water before a meal, and, behold, the disciples went to buy food!

It is evident that the Lord did not thirst for water, but he had planned to give the Water of life. He, therefore, fabricated this cause for the discussion as we have said. He began to ask the woman for water as you have heard. He fabricated a cause to talk to her as a someone who is needy that a gift may be taken from him, for he is rich. ː  

The Samaritan woman bites the bait as soon as Jesus informs her of his “Living Water,” that eternally quenches her thirst.

[The Lord] ensnared the woman with the love of the water he possesses. Although she did not know what this water is, she loved it. She began asking him for the water he promised, “Lord, give me Water of life that I may never again thirst.” ː

40. Ibid., 287:2-17.

41. Ibid., 290:10-13.
The conversation between the Lord and the Samaritan woman continued and ended with Jesus revealing himself to be the awaited Christ. She said to Jesus, “I know, Lord, that Christ will come and that he will teach us.” He responded, “I am Christ, who is to come.”

Although he strongly instructed his followers not to reveal his messianic identity, he revealed it to her to fill the only spiritual gap she had, thus making her perfect.

[The Lord] was saying everywhere that no one should reveal that he is Christ yet openly revealed himself at that place.
He saw that the woman was enlightened about everything and nothing lacked her soul except him.
He offered her himself to fill her need that she might be made perfect in everything by the revelations.

This tête-à-tête eventually leads the Samaritan woman to catch his prey: the Samaritan woman believes in Jesus Christ and becomes his disciple. “The Lord saw the love that was hastily running after him, he let himself be caught that [this love] might not be abated, and then he caught the [Samaritan woman].

Jacob of Sarug seems to have imitated Ephrem’s thoughts as found in Ephrem’s commentary on the Diatessaron. One could also conjecture that both theologians came up with the same imagery. This conjecture is based on the fact that the bishop of Batnan did contemplate the Lord as a and tried to portray him as such. Beck doubts that this section of the diatessaron commentary belongs to the authentic writings of Ephrem and suggests that
an unknown hand is at play here. Commenting on the meeting between Jesus and Samaritan woman, one reads in Ephrem’s commentary.

Our Lord came to the fountain of water like a hunter. He asked for water that he might water, under the pretext of water. He asked for a drink, like someone who was thirsty that the gateway to quenching thirst may be opened to him. He asked a request of [the woman] that he might teach her, and that she in turn might make a request of him. Although rich, [the Lord] was not ashamed to make a request. He was not afraid of reproach for talking to a woman on her own, that he might teach me that whoever stands in the truth will not be upset. They were amazed that he was standing, talking to a woman. He had sent his disciples away from him lest they chase away his prey. He cast a bait for the dove that through it he might capture the entire flock.

Being caught, the Samaritan woman, in turn, becomes the bait that allows the Lord to catch also her co-villagers.

She was running down the street, her voice booming and was unashamed, her mouth was clearly filled with the news of the Son.

Our Lord, however, sat, watching, as a ḫῳ the dove that he sent to bring back her brood that it become his.

He sent his Word to the Samaritans as the One who loves all that they too might not be deprived of his teaching.

Our Lord remained at the well, sitting on it, to finish the kind deed he had begun.

Jesus commissions the Samaritan woman to irrigate the Samaritans with the Water of life, with which she is now filled.

---


Our Lord poured the Water of life and filled the woman with it and sent her to return to her walled [city] that was smitten and to irrigate it. She left her water jug behind, filled her soul with faith, carried the Water of life, and returned unashamed.  

She did not take her flagon with her, for it was too small to contain the river that is now flowing from the true Well to water the town.  

She let flow a river to reach the entire city. Since her flagon was small, she left it behind wisely. She went out under the pretext of water and became aware of the Water of life. She returned hurriedly to irrigate the land with inundating water.  

Moreover, “For this reason, she left her water jug behind and hurried to return to prepare a place for the Water of life in the entire walled [city].”  

The Samaritan woman returned to the city to her co-villagers about Jesus.  

The woman returned to the walled [city] and cried out with a loud voice, “O, all those who thirst, come, go to the Water of which I became aware. Come out, Samaritans, accept the Irrigation of the Water of life, for, behold, he opened up his spring at the well to water our walled [city].  

Filled with the Water of life, she was eager to share it with her people. “The woman with a loud voice cried out in the streets [of the city] because she was in a hurry to give the Water of life to her people.” Therefore, she began
proclaiming in its midst that Jesus is the awaited Christ. “A man chanced
upon if it right for me to call him a man, for I say that truly he is Christ.”53 He
is God, who revealed himself to her that she might proclaim him to them.
Moreover, she exhorted the inhabitants of the city to go to him, for he is the
Son of the Father, through whom the Father sent them the Water of life.

Come, Samaritans, reject the idols of your forefathers,
for, behold, God has revealed himself to me that I might bring you tidings.
The thirsty, who surround us, come and drink the Water of life
which the Father sent at the hand of his Son to delight you.
He revealed to me himself, a great treasure. Come, you who are poor,
be consumed with his riches and fill up your needs from it.
The Light came to me in the likeness of man. As he was talking to me,
I shined on account of him, dissipate darkness and shine like me!
The Sun of Righteousness appeared at the well.
The shadows of darkness fled from our midst, for he shined upon us.54

Heeding her proclamation, the Samaritans came to Jesus.

The Samaritan woman came to the Savior, along with the crowd,
after her mouth profusely proclaimed the tidings.
Darknesses came out and saw the Sun of Righteousness
whose light shined and dispersed darkness from the regions.55

They hear his teaching and believe in the One, who captured them at
the hand of the Samaritan woman. “At the hand of the Samaritan woman [our
Lord] caught the Samaritans who had shunned the divine doctrine and
teaching.”56

The previous examples of the Magi and the Samaritan woman and the Samaritans show how Jacob of Sarug sees the Son of God as the ṣayādā (per excellence. Jesus Christ uses the different means at his disposal to lead people to him to give them eternal life. He meets them at their level, interacts with them, and reveals himself to them. They, in turn, believe in and follow him. Jesus is the role model for the Church to emulate. However, she must shun the other ṣayādā (the Evil One, who, unlike Christ, captures human beings to destroy them. The evil is the theme of the following section.

3.2 The Evil ṣayādā (ṣayādā)

Jacob of Sarug does not employ the image of a ṣayādā to refer only to the Lord but also to the Evil One, who also uses different kinds of baits to entrap humanity. The bishop of Batnan imagined the sinful woman praying, “The Evil One laid hidden snares for me and caught me with his deceit. O of Truth, break them that I belong to you.” In a similar manner, Jacob of Sarug beseeches the Lord to free him from the entrapment of the evil world, “The wicked sins of this evil world were traps for me. In your compassion, Lord, shatter them, and I will escape.” Furthermore, he warns his audience from the traps of the darkened world and its desires lest they catch them. “The world is in darkness, and its desires are traps. If you do not read the Scriptures, they will catch you!”

The mimre on the man possessed by a legion of evil spirits (see Mt 8:28–34; Mk 5:1–20; Lk 8:26–39) and on the sinful woman whose sins the Lord forgave (see Mt 26:6-13; Mk 14:3-9; Lk 7:36-50; Jn 12:1-11) provide two suitable samples to illustrate the figure of the Evil One as a ṣayādā.
3.2.1 The Man Possessed with Legion

Jacob’s mimro *On the Man in Whom Were a Legion of Evil Spirits* (קַחֶהוּ אֵס לָא חֵקִיתָהוּ, וְחָפַרְתָהוּ) offers the reader a frightening image of this evil [noise]. In contrast to the Lord, the benevolent Catcher, who heals redeemed humanity of all its ills, the Evil One always seeks the annihilation of human beings.

A legion of evil spirits, thirsty for human blood, dwelt in a man whom Jesus met in the territory of the Gerasenes.

Among these, he happened upon a man, in whom were many demons, and dwelt a Legion of unclean, evil spirits.

A vicious band thirsted for humanity’s blood.
Numerous Evil Ones dwelt in one soul and lived [together] at peace.61

This miserable person endured unbearable pain at the hands of these demons, who utterly hated humankind.

An entire Legion dwelt in one human being.

How great was the pain that [this] woeful person had to endure because of [these] bullies?

They drove him insane, tormented and squashed him,

this human being, in whom dwelt these haters of humanity.62

The image of the man naked and living away from home and society indicate that Legion had stripped him of his dignity as a person.

It is written that the madman did not wear clothes and did not live in houses, for he was unable to.

The lovers of the desert expelled him from the inhabited land, and would not allow him to live in the vicinity of humans.

They, although many, dwelt in him as if in a big house without being crammed, for they were in accord to annihilate [him].

---

60. See “HSJS IV,” 683-700.
61. Ibid., 687:8-11.

62. Ibid., 687:14-17.
They lived [together] at peace with this unfathomable wickedness to afflict [him] together, for [they were] many.  

Not only do these evil spirits hate humankind but abhor each other as well. They are bad and filled with deceit. Furthermore, there is not even a glimpse of love in them. When they hate God, who created them, they will certainly despise human beings made in the image and likeness of the Creator. Although they hate one another, they still found a way to be in accord to dwell in this man. What is horrifying is that they united to devastate him.

The evil spirits have always hated each other, for love does not exist in an evil-filled will. The Evil Ones hate. They are full of guile and deceit, calumny and great deception of all sorts. It is not possible for an evil spirit to love another evil spirit, or for love for and peace toward its neighbor to exist in it. The deceitful [demons] are lovers of falsehood and rulership. They are highly arrogant, whose pride, nevertheless, overthrew them. They are wrathful, perturbed, troubled, and thirsty for blood. They are forever deceivers, for they do not even know what love is. Behold! They have never loved God, who created them. How then could they love their companions? They hated God and human beings, for they are his image. They even hate each other tremendously, as we have [already] said. When they are ready to do harm by their wickedness, they come together in one will to annihilate [a person]. You ought to learn [this] from that wretched [man] who was for a long time a squashed nest for a multitude of evil spirits. They were together to destroy one soul. They unite to annihilate. Otherwise, there is no unity [among them], for they come together only to do harm in one soul. Since two thousand [evil spirits] entered into [this] man and dwelt in him, you ought to learn how diligent they are about doing harm.  

---

63. Ibid., 687:18-688:5.  
64. Ibid., 688:6-689:7.
These demons come together only when they want to bring destruction to a human being. The death of humanity is their ultimate goal. They love cemeteries, the places of the dead, where they mock Adam and his children. They learned this from Satan, who deceived human beings and caused their death.

[The possessed man’s] habitation was in the mountains among the tombs. This [living situation] is also a significant investigation for the discerners. Now, why do evil spirits love tombs more than the inhabited land, and the places of the dead more than settled areas where life exists? Since the death of human beings came from Satan, the Evil One loves to dwell in the place of the dead. The transgression of the commandment and the deception that was from Satan are the reason that caused humankind to die from the beginning. Therefore, the powers of the Evil One love graves, in which they live and rest, as you have [already] heard.

That is to say, they brought death unto humanity and are proud to have been the cause with great guile. They frequent cemeteries filled with the dead: to mock the human race [with] how low it had been degraded; not only to laugh at, but also to deride the noble race who became wretched, reached destruction and did not let go of dust; to destroy there the images of human beings. Therefore, the evil spirits hasten to see the destruction they love.

In their haughtiness, they laugh at and deride the corpses collected in Sheol like towering heaps and hills. The evil spirits would say at the place of perdition something to the effect of, “Our war caused this situation for human beings. These bodies collected here in hills and hills are due to the teaching that the Evil One, our lord, taught Eve. This destruction, the raised arm, and the famed name run after us, for death and slaughter are his. The serpent remembered to go down and do as commanded. Therefore, it was the cause of this destruction on the entire earth. For this reason, the evil spirits always frequent the graves,
for death had the occasion to kill Adam.  
The Evil One is a killer of humanity from the beginning,  
it loves seeing the annihilated ones in the depths of Sheol.  
For this reason, the man, in whom these evil spirits dwell  
live among the tombs, as we have [already] said.  

Although breathing and walking on the face of the earth, the possessed  
man is dead, for Legion had ensnared and killed him. The life he leads is no  
longer of that of a human being who is alive but of a dead man walking.

They tied him up with fetters and shackles, and he did not stay  
in the inhabited land of man, for the evil spirits do not love the inhabited  
land.  
The wretched man was bound up and kept in chains.  
He cut off his bonds and did not remain [in the inhabited land].  
He broke his fetters, cut off his shackles and went out.  
He became a neighbor of the dead and lived among them in the place of  
perdition.  
Whenever friends, loved ones, and kindred took pains  
to clothe [him] to teach him to be chaste, he would rend his garment and  
strip himself naked.  
Whenever they asked him to remain with his relatives, 
he would not consent to stay [with them] and would not [consent to] be  
sheltered.

He was squashed, lacerated, afflicted, driven away and filled with woes.  
He mingled with the dead, endured dreadful things among the graves every  
day.


---

108
He forgot his family. They lost hope over the one driven away.
His loved ones left him, for he had become a companion of the dead.
His beautiful image was also corrupted
because of the cold and heat which squashed him with [their] variations:
rain, ice and snow, light winds and storm;
thirst in the summer, at noon and hot winds.
All the seasons changed in turn for this squashed [person].
They also changed him, who became in his entirety as a dead person.
What a fearful, hideous and terrible sight
that this man possessed! He terrified anyone who saw him.
He was feared and roamed among the graves like visions.
Wayfarers were afraid of him and feared [even] looking at him.66

What a horrible situation this wretched man finds himself in! No one
can help him out of this misery; not his friends; not his loved ones; not his
family. Only the Lord is capable of rescuing him and breaking his bonds.
When others feared to look at this miserable man and were even afraid to
pass by the place where he dwelt, the compassionate and loving Lord sought
him out and caught this devastated human being, and freed him from his
fetters and shackles. For this reason, Jesus deliberately journeys to the place
where he can find his lost sheep. “Our Lord then set out compassionately
toward him, to pass through the place where the feeble man lived.”67

In contrast to the evil spirits, Jesus desires to heal people and bring them out of their wretchedness:

The matter of the Son of God occurs [at a place] loftier than a word [could express] and [at a location] where there is no room for a scribe to interpret. He came down like rain on desolate lands [see Ps 72:6], and healing sprouted like flowers in the entire world [see Is 55:20-11]. He revealed himself as a day [breaking] on regions and sicknesses ran away like shadows from his comeliness. By his teaching was enlightened the soul that was in darkness and by his healing he made the wounded body resplendent. He gave life to the soul and healing to the body. He restored, forgave and healed the troubled world. When he saw the body smitten with sores, he cured and strengthened it and then moved on. If he met a soul whom great iniquity had devastated, he made it whole, cured it and then left it. He shored up the paralytic with forgiveness of sins and healing. He justified the publican and reclined with him at his table. He opened the eyes of the blind and forgave the sins of the sinful woman. He allowed the hemorrhaging woman to take the appropriate strength from him [see Mt 9:20-22; Mk 5:25-34; Lk 8:43-48]. With mud, he gave light to the eyes of the blind man, for they were in darkness [see Jn 9]. With his fingers, he opened the closed ears [see Mk 7:31-37]. He cleansed the lepers and gave light to Bartimaeus [see Mk 10:46-52], for he was rich and his door was open to partakers. With his word he drove out evil spirits from souls [see Mt 8:28-34; Mk 5:1-20] and with his commandment, he banished the demons from humanity. As a plowman who uprooted thorns from the fields, he cast out evil spirits from souls, which they belong to him.
The Lord catches human beings for their salvation. The good does not seek to ensnare healthy people but rather the afflicted ones. The ones he wants to capture are those whom the Evil One crushed to the point of death. The Lord catches the possessed man by snatching him from between the talons of the demons and rescues this soul from them.

All these wolves tore to pieces a ewe.
The Shepherd hereupon arose and snatched the weary [ewel] from among them.
Two thousand hawks tore up a weak dove to pieces.
The rose, stretched down his arms, and pick it up to him.
The pure soul is an image of the King, filled with beauties.
The evil spirits abducted it to corrupt it, behold, that it might perish.
The evil spirits abducted this human being and dwell in him while altering and buffeting him a long time. 74

When the true is present, the miscreant, evil runs away. Mercy came down to care for the squashed and wearied souls.

For his sake, the way of the Son of God came down,
that when he would meet him, he would drive the demons and evil spirits out of him.
The good Shepherd remembered the sheep torn to pieces by a group of wolves, and he came to set him free from ravenous [wolves].
The evil spirits saw the Son of God, and the wretched quivered.
The day dawned, and the many shadows disappeared.
A young Stag stood opposite a nest of animals, spoke to them, terrified, petrified and banished them.
Mercy cared for the squashed and wearied soul that it might escape from the abductors who governed it.
The Mighty One shined upon the thieves, and they cried out because of him with a horrendous terror, for he frightened them into leaving.
The hidden power of the Son of God terrified them, and they began to flee like smoke from a whirlwind.

74. Ibid., 689:8-15.
The Lord of creation seized the thieves with their preys. As a judge, he interrogated them to punish them. The howling of the evil spirits that saw the Son seeking after that which belongs to him, and cried in terror saying to him, “What have we to do with you?” 75

The Lord loves and cares for humankind. For this reason, the Word of God became incarnate. Human beings are more precious to God than any worldly goods, including the herd of swines which perished in the sea with the evil spirits.

Our Lord handed the swines over [to the evil spirits] [in exchange for] souls to show that a human being is more precious than worldly goods. He gave up the swines and saved a soul dear to him to teach the world that he seeks out [nothing] except a soul. For the sake of humankind, he did not only offer up worldly goods, but also himself, whom he offered upon the cross, and he redeemed Adam. To condemn the evil spirits, he allowed them to attack the worldly goods, and they entered the swines as they had petitioned him. He clearly showed that he loves [nothing] except for Adam and that he came for him. The worldly goods are not dear to him. He considered the petition which the evil spirits had made to be nothing consented to and granted [their petition]. They entered the swines as they had petitioned him. He exchanged gold for noisome dung without being sorry. Our Lord gave up something worthless and picked up something precious. 76

---


76 Ibid., 695:3-14.
3.2.2 The Sinful Woman

This section provides another example of the Evil One as a cunning fi‘al whose purpose is to destroy humanity. This illustration draws on Jacob’s interpretation of the biblical story of the sinful woman (see Lk 7:36-50). This miserable person is in the grip of the Evil One. Seeing the horrifying state in which the sinful woman finds herself, Jesus, the true fi‘al, comes to liberate her from her captor. This topic is related to the Church in that she should avoid the traps of the Evil One and be an instrument of Salvation following in the footsteps of her Lord.

Just as the Samaritan woman is like a lure to entice the Samaritans to come to Jesus, another woman, a prostitute, is similar to bait the Evil One uses to entrap other human beings. She is the devil’s prisoner and in need of freedom. Therefore, Christ goes to her to release her from her imprisonment. Although the Evil One had caught her, the benevolent Lord sets up his trap and uses mercy as bait to free her from her captivity and bring her to him. Water is the lure Jesus uses to capture the Samaritan woman thirsty for water and mercy is his bait to capture the prostitute thirsty for forgiveness. The bishop of Batnan provides these images in his minro entitled On the Sinful Woman Whose Sins Our Lord Forgave.

The Devil captures the sinful woman and uses her as bait to ensnare men, cause divisions in their homes, and eventually destroy them. Although none of the Gospel accounts of the sinful woman describes her as such, the sinful woman is, according to Jacob of Sarug, a prostitute possessed with seven evil spirits.

Simon invited [Jesus] to supper, and [Jesus] went with him.
The sinful woman desired forgiveness for her sins and received it from him.
This [woman], a snare for men with her manner of walking,
cought them as if with snares to corrupt them.
This [woman], the Slanderer’s preferred bow:

from her he poured down arrows of desires upon lookers-on.
This [woman] captivated human beings with her sensual beauty,
and as if in a pathless desert, the young wandered after her away from their
homes.
This [woman] hated the pure path of sexual intercourse
and broke the law iniquitously through harlotry.
This [woman] spent most of her days in vanity
and with perfidious people misconducted herself due to her depravity.
This [woman], as a thief, ambushed [men] on the streets
and captivated merchants with her beauty to deprive them.
This [woman] caused divisions between husbands and their wives
and through quarrels split the home of spouses.
This [woman] served harlotry since her youth,
established a feast for adultery in [her] region, which she defiled.
This [woman], to whom seven evil spirits,78 lovers of adultery, cleaved,
caught young boys through them, that [these youths] might have relations
with her.
This [woman] was a dwelling for wickedness she committed.
Falsehood indwelled her and rebelled against justice.
This [woman] despised both freedom and chastity
and lived lustfully in her actions.
This [woman] did the Evil One set in Judah as a sign for wickedness.
Toward her turned the lovers of adultery in their dealings.
This [woman] loved both vanity and harlotry
and hated undefiled marriage which should have been honored by her.79

Jacob of Sarug is commenting on the sinful woman in Lk 7:36-50,
whom he calls a prostitute. There is no evidence that this woman is a
prostitute or an adulteress. Luke does not inform his audience of what she

---

78. See Mk 16:9; Lk 8:2.
had done and states that she had sinned. The books of Matthew (see Mt 26:6-13) and Mark (see 14:3-9) record a woman anointing Jesus. However, they do not speak of her sinfulness state. The Gospel of John identifies the woman who anoints Jesus to be Mary the sister of Martha and Lazarus (see Jn 12:1-11). Furthermore, the reference to the seven evil spirits points to Mary Magdalene, from whom Jesus drove out seven evil spirits (see Mk 16:9; Lk 8:1-3). The bishop of Batnan identifies her with the sinful woman in Lk 7:36-50 and a prostitute. This identification is misleading, for not one evangelist speaks of her in such terms. So, Jacob of Sarug conflates different biblical characters into one. Whoever she is, this sinful woman belongs to the Evil One and is his preferred bait to capture the young and old, and the single and married. She traps men everywhere possible with her physical beauty, allure, and seduction.

Like a lion, the Evil One waited to ambush this poor woman. Wickedness attacked and vanquished this woeful person, yet she comes to Jesus, the Physician, that he might heal her.\(^8\) She comes to him, for the Lord had set down crumbs of redemption as bait before her. Jesus meets human beings wherever they are. He is ever present to those who seek his help. Just as he met the Samaritan woman at the well and sought the possessed man among the tombs, Jesus puts himself in the path of this woman hungry for redemption.

For this woman, worthless because of her deeds and desires, our Lord lay the snare of mercies to catch her. The entered and stayed at the house of Simon, who had invited him, and he sent and stirred the dove in her nest to come to him. Mercies went out to capture the rebellious woman, who had run away from the inhabited land into the vast wilderness. The quickly set up snares in the streets [she haunted] and bound her with his love that she no longer wander in vanity.

---

\(^8\) Ibid., 410:4-5.

Wickedness, in the likeness of a lion, lay in ambush for her, attacked and vanquished her [the sinful woman]. She hastened to Jesus, the Physician, that he procure her [a remedy].
He spread before her the great net of repentance, and she crept entering its great womb due to its extensiveness.81 The tidings of redemption were the bait for the wild woman, who, occupied with it, entered the net of the House of God. Jesus’s renown was scattered before and assuaged her, who, feeding off it, was ensnared to become his.82

3.3 The Church, Life-Giving Fishnet

The Lord, the ܝܘܩܬܒܕ “cast his net here and there in the whole world that the entire creation might be gathered in the life-giving net [see Lk 5:10].”83 Jacob of Sarug portrays Jesus as a fisherman, who uses his net to capture the whole world. This net symbolizes the Church, whom the Son casts into the sea of life to catch all human beings.

“The Church is Simon’s net (ܚܫܒܘܥܐ ܗܰܠܰܨܼܐܕܰܘܗܰܪ ܟܒܫܒܘܥܐ).”84 wrote Jacob of Sarug. The New Testament accounts of Peter dragging a net full of 153 fish in Jn 21:1–14 and of his call to be a fisherman in Lk 5:1–11 provide the background for the net as a symbol of the Church. Murray shows that Ephrem, Cyrillona, and Marutha interpret the title ܣܝܬܕܐ (ܡܢܐ) as referring to

---

81. Johnson translated ܟܒܫܒܘܥܐ with in naïveté. “He was spreading out a great net of repentance before her. And she slithered and entered its great womb in naïveté (ܟܒܫܒܘܥܐ).” See Johnson, “Sinful Woman,” 65. Another reading, however, is possible and could better fit the context of the verse. The Syriac feminine noun ܪܘܬܚܙܐ is a derivative of the verb ܪܘܬܚܙ, which in its transitive uses could mean to stretch out, extend, reach out. It is in this sense that one could also understand the noun ܪܘܬܚܙܐ, i.e., extensiveness. One could have the following image in their mind: the net of repentance was so extended, that it was able to catch even this sinful woman. Therefore, the following translation is in order: “He spread before her the great net of repentance, and she crept entering its great womb due to its [the net’s] extensiveness (ܪܘܬܚܙܐ).”


Jesus and his Apostles. Since Jacob of Sarug also applies that same title to them, his interpretation fits this Syriac worldview. However, Jacob goes a step further insofar as he refers to the Church as a net (ةً١). Nowhere in his book does Murray mention such an image and neither implicitly nor explicitly speaks of her as such, which leaves one wondering if one sees here a further development of the Syriac Ecclesiological typology.

In the Johannine as well as in the Lucan narratives, the Apostles spend the entire night fishing and do not make a catch. However, that changes at dawn when the Apostles follow the instructions of Christ by throwing the net once more into the sea in the location he indicates. "The dawning of the morning stirred [the fish] ... They got into the net that represents the Church, who loves the Light." The net in this quote is a clear symbol of the Church, and the fish implicitly denote her members. Also, the expression “dawning of the morning” can refer to time, early in the day, or to Jesus Christ, the true Morning Dawn and Light.

The Church offers repentance and ultimately life to the living and the dead. She uses repentance as bait to entice humans to come to the Lord. “The Church boasts of repentance, her hope, for by it, she catches humankind for God.” By bringing humanity to the Lord is how the Church offers life to human beings, the living and dead. Jacob of Sarug wrote addressing himself to her, “May you, (Church), be a net capable of catching the sea and land, and may the world be taken in your bosom unto life [Lk 5:10] at the hands of your Lord.

---

This quote parallels the one already cited above. Mainly, Jesus Christ “cast his net here and there in the whole world that the entire creation might be gathered in the life-giving net (Lk 5:10).” The frequent reference to world, creation, sea and land is to indicate that the Church, unlike the Jewish Nation, is not for a chosen few, but for all, circumcised and uncircumcised. Jacob sees the image of a net catching the creation as expressing the universality of salvation. As stated before, so it is repeated here, the Lord aims to gather the entire world to give it life. That is what is meant by “may the world be taken in your bosom unto life.” Also, “The Son of God cast a large net in the world, that even if it nets the dead, they will manifestly become alive.” Just as the Son of God grants life to the deceased, so his Church bestows life on the departed. Therefore, one can conclude that a life-giving fishnet symbolizes the Church in the poetry of Jacob of Sarug.

Jacob of Sarug envisions the Church not only as a life-giving fishnet, a passive agent but also as a key actor continuing the Apostles’ mission, thus typifying her as a Fisher of Men, the theme of the following section.

3.4 The Church, Fisher of Men

Since the Church catches and brings people to God, she shares the title with the Lord. She is both the life-giving net and the Fisher of Men—that is to say, she calls people to conversion and repentance, thereby underlying her ever missionary role in the world.

90. Ibid., 670:15-16.

The Church boasts of repentance, her hope, for by it, she catches humankind for God.
Once Christ catches a person, he sends them as his heralds to witness to him and share his Good News with others. In the case of the Magi mentioned earlier, Jacob of Sarug wrote, “The Truth snatched them that they become his heralds.”93 They, who had belonged to the pagans, are now apostles to the unbelieving Nation. “New Apostles (the Magi) from among the nations came to the Nation and manifested the proclamation of the Son’s birth.”94 The Magi could not converted Herod, who tried to eliminate the King of Kings they proclaimed, but the Samaritan Woman was more successful in her proclamation than them. She was able to bring “her net full of fish” to Jesus, so to speak.

She ran in the street unashamed, her voice booming, and her mouth was clearly full of the news of the Son. Our Lord, however, sat, as a ͖ ܳ ͠ ܳ ܨܰ, watching the dove he sent to bring back her brood that it might become his. He sent his Word to the Samaritans as the One who loves all that they too might not be deprived of his teaching.95

Indeed, Jesus Christ commissions the Church to be a Fisher of Men and announce salvation to the entire world. He explicitly calls Peter and the disciples to be Fishers of Men and catches Paul for the service of the Gospel. Their mission as Fishers of Men is the theme of the following two sections.

3.4.1 Peter and the Disciples, Fishers of Men

In his commentary on John 21:1-14, the bishop of Batnan argues that Peter’s decision to return to the sea to cast his net for food was the wrong decision, for Jesus had made of them fishers of men. The resurrected Lord did not ascend immediately to heaven, for he wanted to regather his flock

93. Ibid., 100:1.
94. Ibid., 102:10-11.

119
beforehand and remind his disciples that he had chosen them for a new mission.

Catching fish was no longer their call, but fishing for men to bring them to him was their new responsibility. Peter, a fisherman by trade, was unable to catch a single fish although he spent the whole night netting because he chose the wrong kind of fishing. However, when he heeded the Lord’s instruction to cast his fishing net on the right side of the boat, Peter’s fishing net was filled with numerous fish. The Church is the fishnet of Simon Peter (سَيْسَاكُسُ) and he is the fisher of men. The following unfolds Jacob of Sarug’s thoughts.

Two days the Sun set in the depth of Sheol, and on the third rose to show himself.

He remained in the world to manifest his resurrection to the children of his mystery lest it be rumored that he had not risen from the grave.

On this account, [the Son] did not ascend from the grave [straightaway] to heaven lest his resurrection be hidden from his beloved.

Indeed, the Apostles whom he had chosen were distressed on account of his death that they had become orphans. Therefore, he stayed to console them.

By the passing of the Shepherd, the lambs of his flock were scattered, he, accordingly, had pity on them, and stayed to gather them.

Jesus was in tomb, the crowd dispersed, each went their way, and the disciples were without the Lord. They, who had left everything for him, found themselves poor, with nothing to eat. The richest of all, who had access to the entire riches of the Lord, discovered themselves the poorest of all. How ironic! Peter, therefore, decided to return to fishing, and the disciples followed.

97. Ibid., 690:2-11.
Simon said, “I am going to fish for fish.”
His companions said, “We are with you wherever you go.”
The disciples felt suffocated by the death of the Son,
and poverty surrounded them from all sides.
[They had] no possessions, nor bags, nor pouches.
Besides, the enormous Treasure whom they had accompanied departed.
The good Companion and the immense Riches forsook them,
and the disciples were left with want and privation.
Simon, the head of the Apostles, yearned to return to fishing.
He possessed nothing during the time he accompanied our Lord.98

Peter’s craft of fishing had been taken away from him, for the Lord had
asked of his disciples to leave everything and to follow him. So they did! The
Master perished, however. He was crucified before all and buried. Peter,
consequently, was lost and did not know how to proceed. He found himself
at a junction, for he had to choose one way over another. Thus, he had to
decide between the way of the Lord or that of fishing. Peter’s response was
natural. Since he was hungry, he chose to return to fishing. This resolution
was, of course, the wrong decision.

After they had separated [Peter] from [the Lord] by [the Lord’s] death,
[Peter] became poor,
and the craft of fishing had been far removed from him.
The Master perished. What should [Peter] do? He did not know!
He may not possess the two99 [while] on the Son’s path,
for he had been commanded, “Not even to carry a staff on the way.”
The treasury of life was with [Peter]. After they had taken him away,
the chosen one was despondent and became hungry. What should he do?
He wanted to go back to catching fish, [a trade] he left behind,
and likewise all his companions with him in great pain.100

99. i.e., fishing fish and fishing men
While the Lord was with Peter and the other disciples, all their needs were met and satisfied. Now that he had been taken away from them, they found themselves hungry and needy. The misfortune of the crucifixion was too difficult for the disciples to handle.

They had been accustomed to the plentiful Table. After he had been taken away from them, they wailed like indigents. As long as he was with them, the poor were rich, and they feared neither hunger nor pain.

He could transform water into wine for them when they so desired, and if he would go to a desert place, he could prepare tables. He was the Spring who gushed out daily everything that is good, and as long as they clow to him, they were richer than the rich.

Since they put their trust in him, they loosed their hold on their possessions. It was [no longer] necessary that they possess anything else with him. Since the calamity of the crucifixion was too difficult for them [and] took him away from them, they became poor and heartbroken.\(^{101}\)

To support themselves, Peter chose to return to his old trade of fishing, and the others followed. By doing so, he stopped following Jesus’s commandment to leave everything behind and follow him. Peter, consequently, a master fisherman, fished the whole night and found himself unable to make a single catch. To leave everything also means that the disciples also had to abandon whatever jobs they held. Whereas in John’s account Peter was joined by a few other disciples, in Jacob of Sarug’s mimro all the disciples came along to fish.

The death that took place, poverty, and destitution [so] terrified Simon [that] he desired to return to his trade. Since he intended to find his daily bread by work, he said to his friends, “I am going to fish for fish.”

There is no light. There are no riches. There is no plenty. What could I do when I do not fish for fish?”

The fear of death [so] blinded him and darkened [his mind] that

\(^{101}\) Ibid., 691:11-692:2.

he forgot that he had been made the steward of God’s house. 

[Although] this disciple carried the keys of the heights and depths, he forgot that they belonged to him more than distress. Consequently, he set his face to fish for fish to nourish himself by begging for fish. 

[Although] strength, power, and might were hidden in him, sadness befell [him], he became weak and endured sufferings. Due to his sadness, he forgot that commandment “do not be anxious about your life”\(^{102}\) and began to be anxious about fishing for fish and possessing bread. 

Due to heartfelt sorrow, and since he was distressed, and had lost hope, he said to his friends, “I am going to fish for fish.” All of them went to catch fish then, for there is no poverty comparable to this one. Not [only] nets, fishing rods, and fish-hooks they planned perhaps to borrow and perhaps to beg for [fishing equipment], which they [somehow] collected here and there [eventually]. The disciples went down to the sea with a borrowed boat and toiled to net the whole night, but they were unable to do so.\(^{103}\)

The disciples’ inability to catch any fish was consequent to their abandoning Jesus’s way. Peter and the disciples cannot journey on the path that Jesus had paved before them and remain fishermen. Their careers as such were over, for the Savior had chosen them for another and more important

\(^{102}\) See Mt 6:25;34; Phil 4:6-7. 

\(^{103}\) “HSJS V,” 692:3-693:8.
task. The Lord of the Sea had ordered it to hide its fish, thus depriving the disciples of a catch. Although Jesus had chosen them and made them fishers of men, they left their new call in favor of the mundane trade of fishing. A little hunger drove Peter and the others to forsake the path of apostleship. The disciples were not able to catch any fish the whole night,

for the Lord of the sea had commanded it to hide its fish from the disciples who abandoned the path of the Son of God.
The disciples toiled the whole night in vain,
for there was no gain by the hard work which they undertook.
The net went down empty and went up in vain the whole night, for no fish approached it.
The sea did not wish to admit that there was fish in it lest it be a breathing space to Simon, who had forgotten himself.
It hid all its creatures in the deepest part of its seabed that the path of Simon, the master of fishermen, might be empty.
This disciple was instructed to fish for man.
Since he returned to fish for fish, he sought [fish] and did not find [any].
The sea condemned the one who cleansed lepers a day before.
[Now] since he hungered a little bit, he left the path of apostleship!
The man who drove out evil spirits [while journeying] on the path of the Son yesterday
came to the sea to catch fish if he could find [any].
He, however, could not find [any fish], for the sea would not give him a [helping] hand,
for the sea had been ordered by its Lord to hide its fish.
Simon toiled the whole night and did not know that the fish were running away from him (lacuna) (lacuna)
[The fish] were lying in the deepest part of the see because of him.104

104. Ibid., 693:9-694:5.
Apostleship and being fishers of men are intertwined in the theological understanding of Jacob of Sarug. Peter, the holder of the keys, and the disciples could never go back to their previous trades, for they are no longer fishers, but apostles. Jesus chose and transformed them from fishermen into fishers of men.

Go [back] Peter to the apostleship of the Son of God and abandon fishing, for the sea will not give you its fish. Are you staying here and it is written that you are one of the disciples? The sea will not recognize you as one of the fishermen. An apostle is an apostle, and a fisherman, behold, is a fisherman. You are not a fisherman, but an apostle. Depart from here! You are holding the keys, abandon the net, for it does not belong to you. Go, [instead] fish for men, for if would fish for fish, they would not be given to you.

The Son of God ordered the sea, that belongs to him, not to recognize this disciple as a fisherman. He put to flight the fish from him, and will not find a breathing space in the sea that he might not return to his trade. He called out “children” to show them that they lacked the instruction of the great Teacher.

He said to them, ‘Children, have you [caught] anything [see Jn 21:5]?’ They told him, ‘No [see Jn 21:5],’ and the entire fishing was ashamed. He called them children when they returned to fishing for fish, for this reason, Jesus called them children. The disciples deserved this appellation, for they exchanged apostleship for fishing.

“When the entire night came to an end in that weariness [see Jn 3:21], Christ, the Light [see Jn 8:12], dawned with the light, to care for them. He approached and stood on the shore near the disciples [see Jn 21:4] to reprove them while they did not know who he is. He said to them, ‘Children, have you [caught] anything [see Jn 21:5]?’ They told him, ‘No [see Jn 21:5],’ and the entire fishing was ashamed. He called men “children” to reprove [them] for they erred in their judgment. He called out “children” to show them that they lacked the instruction of the great Teacher. 105

105. Ibid., 694:9-22.
You acted as unwise children, for you exchanged apostleship for fishing. You are children, for you were sent out on a mission, yet you began another mission that does not remain. You are children and missed the path, O my disciples. Go, fish for men, and leave the fish in their paths.”

In the sea, there is neither right side nor a left side. The reason that Jesus instructed his disciples to cast their empty fishing net on the right of the boat was to instruct them about the difference between the world and the Lord’s path. The right side and left side of the vessel are just symbols to highlight the deeds of the world and those of the Lord.

“Do you have anything [to eat]?” They said, “Not even a thing!”

Our Lord said, “Why then are you toiling on the left? The entire toil of this world is on the left!

Cast now the fishnet on the right. On the day of fishing, which they loved, he taught them how much different is the right from the left.

The world is the night, and its entire toil is on the left. No wall that had been built there in the water between the right and left of the boat.

Moreover, there was neither a place where there was fish on its right thousands of times!

They cast the fishing net on all sides the whole night; they were able to make a catch. So, he enriched them who were needy.

Since he said, “Cast the net on the right,” they were able to make a catch. So, he enriched them who were needy. They cast the fishing net on all sides the whole night; on the right and on the left thousands of times!

They did not leave a spot where they did not cast the fishing net. There was no fish on any side the whole night!

No wall that had been built there in the water between the right and left of the boat.

Moreover, there was neither a place where there was fish on its right nor another whose left was devoid [of fish]!

Besides, there was neither a room filled with fish on one side, (lacuna) nor another that had not even a thing!

106. Ibid., 695:1-16.
The water was even and the fish were even in the entire sea, and the boat was even on the right and left.\textsuperscript{107}

Just as it is impossible for a net to cast itself into the sea to catch fish, so it is not possible for the fishing net that catches human beings, i.e., the Church, to throw itself into the sea of this world as well. Casting the net on the right side of the boat and catching the fish is a metaphor for the disciples catching the Nations by their discipleship and teachings.

There is a right and left for the Son God, and he offered his disciples to go to the right. He called them to his kingdom and right that they might toil in the labor of righteousness, and they might bring the Nations by their discipleship and teaching, that all of them might enter his kingdom from the right.\textsuperscript{108}

Furthermore,

Since the toil of the world is on the left [side], and since the Apostle Simon returned to the toil of the world, lead his companions, and toiled in the world the whole night, as it has [already] been mentioned that there is no gain on the left [side], our Lord, who is also Light, appeared in the morning, and called them Children, and asked about [their] gain.

"Do you have anything [to eat]?” They said to him, “No.” He condemned them then,

\textsuperscript{107} \textit{Ibid.}, 695:19-696:22.

and showed them that the entire toil of the world is empty.

“...and there is nothing for the one who works on the left [side]."

“Do you have anything [to eat]?” They said, “No, Lord.” They became witnesses to show that the busyness of the world is empty in its entirety.

“We have nothing because the world is despicable to the one who labors in it.”

After the entire deception of this world was despised, and the toil of the whole night in vain, our Lord said, “Cast the fishing net on the right [side].” and taught them that they should not labor on the left [side], nor by night and nor in the extremely darkened world, nor on the left [side], since there is nothing [there] for the one who labors on it.109

Once the disciples listened to the Lord by casting their net on the right side of the Lord, fish, doing the will of Jesus, swam to fill the net.110 If they could by nature, they would have jumped into the boat and ran to the shore. Following Jacob of Sarug’s argument, one could adduce that the fish refer to the Nations as stated above.

They cast the fishing net [on the right side] just as the Son of God had told [them].

The sea listened and, immediately, it was full of fish (lit. it had fish in its entirety)

he uttered a word, “Cast the fishing net on the right [side],” and the fish glided from the right and left [sides].

If nature had allowed the creatures (lit. children) of the water, they would have climbed into the boat without a fishing net!


110. The fish doing the Lord’s will will echoes Aphrahat’s interpretation. See “ASPD 11,” 672:13-16..
If a fish had power ashore, it would have walked on it [to the Lord], since it would have remained neither in the fishing net nor on the fishing hook!

Since their nature requires this, they hurried to the fishing net and they hastened [in such way] that [the one fish tries] to get into [the fishing net] before its companion.

The big fish drove away the small fish, made them flee, get into and filled [the fishing net], and did not allow the small fish to get into [it].

Any [fish] [the fishing net] did not catch made its head bigger and inserted it [into it], that it might be caught by it because of the word of the Son of God.

The Son of God signaled secretly to the fish, which hastened from all sides, got into the fishing net full of mysteries.

As soon as it fell on the right [side], the catch abounded in it at dawn to meet the Sun of Righteousness.\textsuperscript{111}

Reflecting on the stream that Ezekiel saw (\textit{ HSJS V.}, 698:5-22), Jacob of Sarug envisions Peter’s fishing net so large that it captured the sea and land, the whole the world. Furthermore, The chief fisherman brings the entire catch to the Church. “The fishing net of Simon enclosed the whole sea and land, and he brought the catch that could not be counted to the Church of the Son.”\textsuperscript{113} It is in this exact context that the reader of the bishop of Batnan could better understand the image of the Church as Peter’s fishing net. It is the Church’s call to leave the anxiety of the world behind and to concentrate on being the Apostle to all Nations. To follow her Lord’s commandment that is to say to leave everything behind and to follow him is of utmost important. By toiling in the world, the Church becomes the

\textsuperscript{111} \textit{HSJS V.}, 698:5-22.

\textsuperscript{112} \textit{Ibid.}, 430-447.

\textsuperscript{113} \textit{Ibid.}, 444:11-12.
poorest of the poor. It is by trusting the Lord that the Church becomes richest of the rich. The ultimate paradox! By dying to the world, the Church lives in her Lord and becomes the fisher of man for his sake.

The Son of God taught the children of his mystery to labor by day and on the right.
Our Lord is light, and his way is set up with light, whereas the world is an utterly darkened night, along with its affairs.
The fishing net on the left at night is the anxiety of the world.
The Light came and filled it with the catch of the one on the right.
The fish of the sea were wise in comparison with the disciples, for the Lord of the seas enabled them to be wise.
The dawning of the morning stirred them up (Lacuna)
They got into the fishing net depicted by the Church, that loves the Light.
The catch of Simon, the head of the disciples, is not that of an evil doer.
He captured in the morning the one who loves the Light (Lacuna)
The apostle cast the fishing net by night and it did not make a catch, for the whole fishing of apostleship is a child of the day.
However, the fish that became new mysteries were the children of the light, hastened to the fishing net as soon as it fell on the right.
When the disciples felt the fishing net, they recognized him immediately, for they [already] knew how the sea had obeyed the Son.\(^\text{114}\)

Finally, the disciples fully accepted their role as fishers for men. Peter’s actions make this outcome clear. When the beloved disciple recognized Jesus and told Peter that that is the Lord, Peter left behind forever the fishing boat, the fishing net, and even his friends to hasten to the Jesus.

Immediately, Simon, as the foundation, as the steward of the house, and as the first among his companions, hastened to our Savior.
He immediately renounced fishing and fishnets, and as the first among his companions, hastened to our Savior.
He loved him, and upon seeing him, treated everything else with contempt.
He launched himself toward him to rejoice in him, for he loved him.

His love did not wait for his friends to come with him
nor for the boat to approach and reach the shore.
Simon swam [ashore], whereas all of his brothers came by boat.
The sheep surrounded the good Shepherd, who cared for them.\textsuperscript{115}

### 3.4.2 Paul, Caught for the Service of the Gospel

To bring this section to completion, the following expounds on the
Lord using Paul’s zeal not only to catch him but to put him at the service of
his Gospel as well. It is not to insinuate that the Lord forced Paul into his
service, but that Paul freely accepted the Gospel message and willingly
followed Jesus Christ even unto death. Let the reader now turn their attention
to Jacob of Sarug’s first \textit{mimro} entitled \textit{on the Apostle Paul} (allel \textit{مَحَّبَةَ مَحَّبَة}}\textsuperscript{,116} a

At the beginning of the \textit{mimro}, Jacob of Sarug states that the Lord does
not force human beings to come to him. He gently and kindly attracts them to
him. With humility, he conquers the world to the extent that those he attracts
are willing to offer even their lives for his sake. Paul is a case in point.

Jesus’s humility caught the entire earth
and without compulsion, drew the world [to him] by his Gospel.
By the crucifixion, a shameful sign, he triumphed.
As much as he was not honored, he bestowed honor on the needy.
By the sufferings he endured, the world was moved to believe in him,
and by his afflictions, he stripped the mighty of their power.
By his weakness, his deeds happened swiftly.
Humanity did not see his glory yet bent down to him.
While being reviled, he snatched the crown of lordship,
and by his buffeting, his glory shone brightly upon creation.
By the thing which causes others to suffer humiliation, he obtains honor.
Death is the humiliation of the mighty, yet by it, he acted mightily.
The crucified one carried a lame mount (the cross) full of suffering
and left behind him the lightning [chariots] of kings and their swiftness.
By the crucifixion, he stripped the gods of worship.

\textsuperscript{115.} \textit{Ibid.}, 700-9-18.

\textsuperscript{116.} See “HSJS II,” 717-747.
Slain, yet he exposes the idols of the earth as [nothing more than] images.

By his humility, he brought low the proud, who were mighty,

and the crowns of the sovereigns became footstools for his feet.

By his being persecuted, he even subdued the persecutors

that they might accept sufferings without compulsion for his sake.

By his weakness, he instructed his enemies
to become [his] friends and even die for his sake.

Behold! He turned the persecutor (Paul) into the persecuted by his teaching

and the insolent person (Paul) into a choice vessel for his Gospel.117

Paul’s strong adherence to the Pharisaic tradition and his zeal for

Yahweh are no secrets. For a new sect to emerge in his stronghold and to

claim a Lord other than Adonai was for Paul the catalyst that compelled him
to persecute the disciples of Jesus and his young fledgling emerging Church.

Unbeknownst to him, Paul was also persecuting Adonai’s Son.

Saul was menacing the disciples, furious at them,

and made them endure every distress for the sake of Jesus.

He assumed the lawful zeal for the house of Adonai
to banish his Son unknowingly from his power.

In the vineyard of the Lord, he mightily prevailed

and did not know while persecuting him that Jesus was the Heir.

He set up a watchtower to guard the Nation against the profane,

saw the King, and went out after him because he was confused.118

117. Ibid., 717:4-718:10.

118. Ibid., 719:5-12.
Paul’s confusion stems from the way the Son of the King, who did not look as such, was dressed. Instead of wearing the majestic clothes of a sovereign ruler, the Son had put on the garment of disdain. Ironically, by persecuting the Church Paul had proved his wholehearted allegiance to Yahweh.

He was watchful of the camp of the Lord of Sabaoth daily, and since he spied him in a different attire, he showed that he was ready. The Son of the King put on the garment of disdain and went to check on the warrior, who should be watching the wall lest he sleep. When the watchman saw him in a weak and despised attire, he pursued him, for he was not sleeping at his post.\(^{119}\)

At this juncture, the Lord catches Paul, who bit the bait placed before him. Jesus Christ “wisely caught the hawk and turned him into a dove to show that he was able to subdue wild ones.”\(^ {120}\) Pursuing the Lord made Paul weary. It was then when the Lord made his move to catch his prey.

Since [Paul] was overcome with weariness and did not apprehend him, [the Lord] spared [him] from his toil, and the splendor of his glory shone, appeared to and thrust him on the ground. The light of the King’s crown beamed down on the persecutor and threw him down upon earth, and terror gripped the persecutor.\(^ {121}\)

The Lord catching Paul put an end to Paul persecuting the Church. “The zealot of the house of Adonai went out by the fury of killing, and light and a voice bound him that he may no longer persecute [the Church].”\(^ {122}\) It also placed him at the service of the Gospel of the resurrected Lord. His

---

persecution days are behind him, and Paul is now a full member of the Church and a disciple. “He (Paul) was caught wisely for [the sake of] the Gospel to be a fellow of the inexperienced company of discipleship.” That does not mean, however, that his zeal for God abated. On the contrary, it increased, and the persecutor ended up being one of the persecuted. “By the apparition that happened to Saul as he was persecuting [the Church], he learned to become persecuted for the sake of Jesus.”

The Truth wisely subdued and then caught him (Paul).
When he has become a hater, he would then bring him in [for the sake of] the Gospel.
Everyone was aware that he was an enemy of Jesus.
Thereafter, he called him to witness to his coming.
He set him out, for he had become renowned by persecutors.
He then showed him his glory and called him to belong to him.
He left him be, that the entire world might know that he was his hater that when he would be his witness, he would stand firm in the Truth.

3.5 Conclusion

The image of a šayādā (شايد) referring to either the Lord or the Evil One entered the Syriac theological tradition which Jacob of Sarug inherited. Jacob of Sarug compares Jesus Christ to a šayādā (شايد), for the Lord went from one place to another to catch people. The Son of God is the šayādā par excellence, for he adjusted his techniques based on the needs of the human beings he drew to him. His aim is to give life to all. To capture humanity also means to save it from the grip of the Evil One, who is a different kind of šayādā insofar as he wills to destroy humanity just as he had done in the Garden of Eden. He had tricked Adam and Eve into submission, and he continues to scheme against...
their progenies. Moreover, the stratagems he employs to capture human beings are diverse. Once caught, he uses them as bait to catch others. The sinful woman is a case in point. The annihilation of humankind is his goal. That is to say, that sin abounds in the world and destroys humankind. The Word of God is the savior of all. He became incarnate to redeem humanity, free it from is, and bring it back to its proper abode, the Garden of Eden. He frees the woeful captors from the firm grip of sin with his words and deeds.

After his return to the Father, Jesus continues to catch people as if with a net. This net cast by him is a symbol of the Church, whom he established and entrusted with his Gospel. Although he is physically no longer on earth, he remains the Fisher of Men, and as such, he made the Church the life-giving fishnet. She continues to be the Lord’s instrument of catching people. She is not a mere tool in Christ’s hand but also an active agent, a co-fisher of men. The fishnet and fisherman imageries highlight the Church’s redemptive and missionary responsibility.

The image of the Church as a life-giving net shows that she plays an integral role in redemption. As the Lord’s life-giving net, the Church is the instrument by which the Lord continues to execute his plan of salvation. Indeed, she is the Son of God’s choicest instrument of conversion. Through her, human beings become free from their sins and find everlasting life.

The Church also shares the title with Christ Jesus. In his physical absence, she follows her Lord’s footsteps and employs every tool available at her disposal to offer human beings salvation, yet it is important to keep in mind that Jesus never forced anyone to follow him. The Son of God employs different tactics to achieve his goal of bringing people to him. He takes the initiative in meeting them, goes to them wherever they are in life, and engages them in conversation. The Son of God draws the Magi to him with their love of the cosmos, uses water to bring the Samaritan woman, and though her, leads the Samaritans to him. Also, he employs Paul’s zeal as bait to make him a believer. Consequently, Paul, the Lord’s persecutor, willingly
accepted the Gospel message. The Church should emulate the Lord and go out into the world and meet human beings where they are on their life journeys. She should never be afraid to engage individuals at their intellectual or and spiritual levels nor enter into ecumenical and inter-religious dialogues. Would the Son of God be lying hidden in their spiritual cognizance and religious books as he concealed himself in the skies waiting to reveal himself to the Magi?

The Church is made up of her members, whose types are the Magi, the Samaritan woman, the man possessed with Legion, Peter, the disciples, and Paul. These personalities also represent the pagans in the East, the Samaritans in Samaria, the Jews in the Holy land and everywhere else, and the Greeks, in brief, the whole human race. Once Jesus brings them into his fold, they proclaim him to be the giver of life in their communities. They immediately become both the life-giving fishnet the Lord casts into the sea of the world and fishers of men.

The call to become fishers of men epitomize the missionary role of the Church. The Lord puts the Gospel message in her care, calls her to leave behind all worldly worries and put her entire trust in him, and go into the world to proclaim to all nations and races, to all human beings regardless of their social standing. This vocation is not reserved for the few but is intertwined with baptism, thus making all believers in Christ fishers of men led by the bishops of the Church. Evangelization is an indispensable role of the Church and her faithful. How does one go about it? Jacob of Sarug is silent on this subject.
The fruit of the Tree of Life, that is the middle of the Garden of Eden (see Gn 2:9), grants its partaker everlasting life (see Gn 3:22). By disobeying God’s commandment (see Gn 3:6), Adam denied himself access to this life-giving tree and, thereby, condemned himself to death. Redemption, according to Jacob of Sarug, occurs when Adam returns to the Garden of Eden to eat from the Tree of Life. Since fallen Adam cannot accomplish this on his own, for the gate to Paradise is locked, and the cherubim with a fiery revolving sword guard the way to the Tree of Life to prevent Adam from coming back, the Tree of Life descended to him to bring back to his original inheritance. Accordingly, the Tree of Life symbolizes the Son of God, its descent depicts his incarnation, and its fruit the Eucharist, that makes the Church the Garden of Eden as will be shown below.

The objective of this chapter is to explore the notion of the Church as the Garden of Eden and expound on plantation symbolism which depict Christ, and the Church.

4.1 The Vineyard, Fig Tree, and Olive Tree

Vine-imagery symbolizing and signifying both the call and rejection of Israel captivated the mind of the Syriac Fathers such as Aphrahat, Ephrem,

---
and Isaac of Antioch. Daniélou shows that this vine-symbolism already belongs to an earlier Christian period, is built on Old Testament imagery (see, for example, Gn 49:11) and finds its parallel in Jewish literature. Vine-imagery is also present and multivalent in the poetry of Jacob of Sarug. It is typologically rich and holds different meanings one of which is the Church replacing Israel. Along with the vine-symbolism, the fig and olive trees symbolize alike the Church. The fig and olive trees as symbols of the Church seem to be an innovation on the part of Jacob of Sarug. Neither Daniélou nor Murray discussed this symbol in the writing of Church Fathers predating Jacob of Sarug. The bishop of Batnan does interpret the olive inline with his predecessors. The olive refers to Christ, to him as a source of the sacraments, and to the Church’s union with him. However, the bishop of Batnan seems to be the first Syriac theologian who also applies this imagery to the Church. The following sections unfold these symbolisms.

4.1.1 The Church, Vineyard

First of all, Adam is the first grapevine planted by God in Paradise (see Gn 1-2), and his children, Cain and Abel (see Gn 4:1-7), are its fruits, shoots, grapes and small clusters. A small cluster of grapes trampling on its like depicts the first murder committed by a human being (see Gn 4:8).

A vine-shoot sprung from the vine-plant of our father Adam, and jealousy nipped it off from its stem that it never again grow. It is painful to say that first-ripe grapes quarreled, and a little grape cluster trampled on another in anger.

---

5. Ibid., 116.
6. Ibid., 69.
7. See “HSJS V,” 1:4-5.
8. Ibid., 2:21-3:3.
By his fall and consequent expulsion from the Garden of Eden (see Gn 3), Adam brought about the destruction of this vine-plant. This devastation, however, was not complete. Despite this unfortunate event, the vine still bore pleasing grape clusters such as Elijah. Adam’s destruction of the vine-plant also points to human beings choosing Baal over Yahweh at the time of the prophet (see 1 Kgs 18).

The multitudes on high shall remember me because of you (Elijah):
“The earth grew and sent this fruit to our place.”
This grape cluster is from the vine-plant which Adam laid to waste.
It collected sweet wine from among thorns to delight us.”

Before Elijah, Adam’s descendants include Noah, the “One small grape cluster found among wild grapes (see Is 5:2), and their bitterness did not diffuse into its sweetness.” The wild grapes depict those who did not belong to Noah’s household. As will become clearer later, wild grapes and their bitterness correspond to wickedness and disbelief, whereas harvested grapes and their sweetness to righteousness and faith. These are the fruits produced by Israel and the Church respectively, and the flood account in Gn hints at their fates.

The vine-plant, Adam, bore copious grape clusters, his offsprings, by Noah’s time. Alas, since it yielded wild grapes (see Gn 6:5-7) instead of harvested ones, a deluge destroyed it except for a small bunch of grapes (see Gn 7:6-24). This little grape cluster, Noah, survived this cataclysmic event (see Gn 8) because of its sweet taste—that is to say, Noah was a righteous man, blameless in his generation (see Gn 6:8-9) and remained faithful to God.

Jacob of Sarug switches imageries to depict Noah as the sucker of the vine, Adam, that replenishes the entire earth. What started with Adam as a

---

10. Ibid., 18:16-17.
grapevine became a vineyard, humanity, which the flood destroyed, apart from a scion. “The sucker remaining in the entire vineyard and which anger destroyed, innumerable vines sprouted from it everywhere.”

This surviving sucker regenerated the vineyard which spread again throughout the whole world.

Israel is one of these grapevines, and Abraham, God’s chosen one, its trunk. Initially, God’s chosen Nation found favor with him but later fell from grace because of its unfaithfulness. One can find such a depiction of Israel in Jacob’s mimro The Parable of the Vineyard, a commentary on Isaiah’s Song of the Vineyard (Isa 5:1-7) and the New Testament pericope of the Parable of the Tenants (Mt 21:22-41). The bishop of Batnan establishes a connection between these biblical texts by stating, “Our Lord took out of the treasury of prophecy the parable [...] of the tenants. “In [the book of] Isaiah this parable was narrated just as the story of the vineyard was narrated by our Savior, who repeated these prophetical words before them (his listeners).”

Linking the two biblical texts and identifying the parable told by Jesus with the story uttered by Isaiah allows Jacob to use one to illuminate the other. He starts by expounding the Isaiah account and finishes by interpreting the story in Matthew. The Son of God, the Lord, owns the vineyard he

---

11. Ibid., 3:3-4.
12. Ibid., 740-766.
13. Ibid., 750:5-6.
15. Ibid., 750:19-20.

Listen now to the praise of prophecy and the parable of the vineyard and recognize that they are one story.
planted. He is both the “beloved/friend” (شَجَدَ) in Is 5:17 and the heir to the vineyard in Mt 21:38.

What is the vineyard and who is the owner of the vineyard? The tower, fence, and winepress: what are they? The vineyard is the chosen plant of the house of Abraham, and its shoots are the Israelite tribes. The owner of the vineyard is God, to whom everything belongs, and the corner of the fertile region is the land of Canaan. The high tower is the law and the city of the fortress [see 2 Sm 5:7-9], which protects human beings from harm. The vineyard’s fence is all the commandments and rites, which God gave to the entire Nation at the hands of Moses. Also, the winepress is all the sacrifices, drink-offerings and washing [rituals], which cleansed the Nation. God thus took care of the children of Jacob and planted them in the land of blessedness and promises. He gave [them] the law, commandments, rites, priests and sacrifices that they be for the pardon of the Nation. He elected them to be his Nation from among all the nations and took care of them as a small vineyard. Then, through the prophets, like by imposing clouds, he poured rain on the Vineyard and let it grow. He poured forth his teaching in the likeness of rain on souls and sent down his discourse, [which is] better than dew, on the chosen Vineyard.

The prophets of the Spirit were to it clouds, and every divine sprinkling was growing the Vineyard that it take root [see Is 45:8].

---


Jacob of Sarug reveals that the Vineyard is a symbol of the Nation, Israel. The common images in Is 5 and the Parable of the Tenants in Matthew lent him the springboard for an interwoven interpretation of both narratives. Israel is the Vineyard that began as a single Vine-Plant, a reference to Abraham’s call (see Gn 12:1). This Vine sprouted twelve shoots, i.e., the twelve Israelite tribes, in due course. The bishop of Batnan also identifies the Vineyard with the Vine God brought out of Egypt (see Ps 80:9), an allusion to Moses leading the children of the patriarch Jacob out of the land of slavery (see Ex 14). This Vineyard belongs to God, who had chosen it from among all the nations of the earth. He planted it in the corner of the fertile region, in Canaan, the blessed, promised land (see, for example, Dt 1:1-8), not unlike his planting Adam in the Garden of Eden. The planting imagery speaks of God settling the chosen house of Abraham and its twelve stems in the Promised Land. God diligently looked after them as a vinedresser caring for his precious vineyard by putting a fence around it, building a tower for its protection, watering and growing it, and establishing a winepress. These agricultural images refer to the commandments, law, religious observances, sacrifices, drink-offerings, and washing rituals, which God gave the chosen Nation at the hands of his prophets and priests. They are meant to allow the Israelites to be faithful to him. Indeed, he provided for the children of the patriarch Jacob by raising up for them judges and prophets, whose words are better than dew on plants (Is 45:8). Their uttering of God’s commandments and laws guiding God’s chosen people is analogous to dew which helps the

Even if the Vine that came out of Egypt was flourishing, it renounced her Lord. Since it crucified him, behold it is devastated!

20. For similarly interpreted images in the writings of Aphrahat and Ephrem, see Murray, “Symbols,” 99-100.
growth of plants. Using this vine-symbolism, Jacob of Sarug summarizes the history of Israel and its relationship to God.

In another mimro, Jacob of Sarug quotes Ps 80:9-20 to describe how this Vine, Israel, whose roots are in Sion, Jerusalem, greatly flourished to the point that it overshadowed mountains! The illustration of a majestic vine emphasizes and shows how numerous the chosen Nation had become due to the favors God bestowed upon it.

The Father brought the chosen Vine-Plant out of Egypt, destroyed nations and planted it that it lay hold of their territories. He planted its root in the blessed land, and it grew and throve. It flourished and climbed up, and its shadow covers mountains. Its root dug the depths, climbed down, and seized them. It hurled its fibers as far as the seas and laid hold of them. Its canes stretch out on pillars of great renown. Its cordons seize the majestic cedars of the house of God. Its root dug the depths, climbed down, and seized them. Its branches spread out and reached Lebanon with their grape clusters.

Any gardener hopes for a choice produce of his garden especially after having toiled to look after it. When applied to God, this image means that he expects faithfulness of his people. However, what kind of fruit did Israel produce? The word “fruit” is unmistakably meant in a rhetorical sense. The

---

The intermingling between the pericopes of Isaiah and Matthew becomes here evident. The children of Abraham are both the vineyard portrayed in Isaiah, that does not bear good fruit, and the tenants in Matthew, who kill the heir to the vineyard. Accordingly, the vineyard and its workers are one and the same. The son of the vineyard’s owner is identified as the

The Lord expected them to give fruits of faith,
but the children of Abraham offered blasphemy instead of praise.
Instead of thanksgiving, for they were indebted [to him], they budded dishonor
according to what it had been said, “instead of grapes they yielded wild grapes” [see Is 5:2,4].
They led the owner of the vineyard to Golgotha and crucified him,
and gave him vinegar from their bitter grapes [see Dt 32:32; Mt 27:34].
As it was decreed against it in prophecy, he uprooted the vineyard
and no longer maintained it, nor pruned it, nor took care of it.
He tore asunder the vineyard, scattered the Nation over the whole earth.
Behold! All nations and their governments trample on it!
He denied the vineyard prophets that they not prophesy,
and that they not bring down to it prophecy which is rain [see Is 5:6].

No seers, nor teachers, nor even priests
he left for the Nation that they serve it spiritually.
Behold he denied it blessed rain he had poured on it,
the teaching of prophecy which had irrigated it.
Behold its winepress is destroyed so as to say
that its sacrifices, drink-offerings, and pardons came to naught.23

The intermingling between the pericopes of Isaiah and Matthew becomes here evident. The children of Abraham are both the vineyard portrayed in Isaiah, that does not bear good fruit, and the tenants in Matthew, who kill the heir to the vineyard. Accordingly, the vineyard and its workers are one and the same. The son of the vineyard’s owner is identified as the

crucified Son of God. (Jacob had already established that God is the owner of the vineyard) Although the pericope in Matthew does not state how the tenants killed the heir to the vineyard, Jacob claims by crucifixion.24 Abraham’s progenies led Jesus Christ, their Lord, God’s Son, to be lifted up on Golgotha. He came to his own (Jn 1:11a), yet the servants of his Father (Mt 21:38-39) did not only reject him (Jn 1:11b) but also prepared for him a mixture of bitterness and vinegar (Dt 32:32; Mt 27:34).25 By crucifying the Son of God, the Nation blasphemed against God. Wild bitter grapes, the fruit of the vineyard symbolizes blasphemy. Bitter grapes are the vinegar given to Jesus on the cross. Rather than accepting Christ in thanksgiving for what God had done for them, the chosen Nation killed him. Consequently, the Lord uproots the vineyard, an image of God rejecting Israel. Perhaps Jacob of Sarug hints here at the destruction of Jerusalem (see Lk 19:41-44), occurred at the hands of the Romans in A.D. 70. Represented by all the nations, the soldiers devastated the Holy City and ruined the temple. They destroyed the winepress means that all priestly services came to an end, including sacrifices and cleansing rituals used for the pardon of the people. Rain stopped to water the vineyard is an allusion that Israel lost its prophetical privileges. In fact, at the time of Jesus, Israel had not had a prophet for a long time, and Malachi (B.C. 5th c.) was its last. God completely stopped his care for this thankless vineyard. God spurned the ungrateful Nation, for it repaid him by rejecting his Only-Begotten. “The Vineyard of the Beloved [see Is 5:1] crucified the Beloved [...]”26 “denied its Lord and was uprooted because it crucified him.”27


The heir came to seek fruits in the vineyard of his father. The laborers of iniquity took him outside and crucified him that he not inherit.

25. Ibid., 745:16-17.

He came to his own, and his Father’s servants did not accept him, but the children of Abraham prepared for him a mixture of bitterness and vinegar.


27. Ibid., 756:18.
The destruction of God’s beloved Vineyard because it denied him fruits illustrates his rejection of Israel, who killed his Son.

So after [it was gifted with] all its spiritual beauties, the heir came and tasted its grapes, but behold they were bitter! He sought wine in it, but instead of wine, he found vinegar. He drank vinegar and uprooted the chosen Vine-Plant he planted. Its grape clusters are bitter, its grapes thorns, and its wine vinegar.

He sought wine in it, but instead of wine, he found vinegar. Its Lord uprooted it because his beloved Son was killed in it. The vineyard was laid to waste. the Nation perished and was scattered. Its Lord uprooted it because his beloved Son was killed in it.

The bishop of Batnan introduces the theme of a new vineyard, a symbol of the Church when the king in Matthew’s pericope takes the vineyard away from the tenants and gives it to other vinedressers (see Mt 21:41).

By the fact that they said, “This is the heir” [see Mt 21:38], you should understand that they had known that the Son was Christ when they crucified him. They both recognized and crucified him. The Father was angry, dispersed them, took the vineyard away [from them] and gave it to other vinedressers. Behold all the Nations give the Father fruits instead of the vinedressers who killed the heir as they were raging. The Nations, who laid hold of your vineyard, beloved, cultivated it from the time you took it from the Jews and bore you fruits. The Nations of the earth laid hold of the spear, nails and your cross, and they cultivated the vineyard using them. The vineyard was sound and bore you fruits.

Your name is myrrh oil. Behold it perfumes the congregations.

28. Ibid., 756:15-16.

[It was] a new plant, beloved by its planter, but, since it denied him fruits, he left it to destruction.

29. Ibid., 756:5-6.

The vineyard was laid to waste. the Nation perished and was scattered. Its Lord uprooted it because his beloved Son was killed in it.

The young love your sweet scent and adore it.
Behold the congregations! Their offerings [are uttered] with their tongues
that they offer you every thanksgiving dear to you.
Your sweet wine moves the lips (lit. the teeth) of the virgins [see Ps 51:17],
and all your churches in the regions sing your glory. 31

... Behold the other vinedressers who received the vineyard from you.
All of them bear the sweet fruits of your faith.
The Cross cultivated the Church of the Nations, the vine of the Son.
Behold she offers you sweet wine with a new praise.
She surpassed in fruits the Vine that went out of Egypt [see Ps 80:9]
and was uprooted because of its bitter grapes [see Dt 32:32].
All of them give praise to your Father and thanksgiving to you. 32

The vineyard’s owner reclaims his vineyard and gives it to new
vinedressers. These vinedressers are the Nations, who completely constitute
the Church. Just as the Jews were the vineyard and vinedressers, so the
Nations are the new vineyard and vinedressers. “They bore fruits” refers to
their faith. The spear, nails, and the cross are the tools they used to maintain
the vineyard. Jacob of Sarug does not explain how these tools were used.
However, one could surmise they are a reference to the mysteries of the
Church and its missionary activities. The spear that opened up the side of
Christ (see Jn 19:34) pertains to baptism and the Eucharist in particular,
and the sacramental mysteries of the Church in general. The nails and cross could
be in line with Paul’s saying, “For Jews demand signs and Greeks look for


32. Ibid., 766:5-12.
wisdom, but we proclaim Christ crucified, a stumbling block to Jews and foolishness to Gentiles” (1 Cor 1:22-23). Still, one finds explicit references to the Divine Liturgy: the sweet scent of myrrh, praise and worship of the congregations, and wine. The Church of the Nations is the new Vine the Son planted and maintains. Whereas blasphemy was the fruit of the Jewish Nation, faith is that of the Church. By “your wine” Jacob of Sarug introduces a new element from Jn 15, thus indicating that Jesus Christ is the vine. The constant references to vineyard and fruit in the above quotes hints at this Johannine passage and would have brought it into the consciousness of Jacob’s audience.

The bishop of Batnan, however, brings explicitly the image of the vine and branches of Jn 15:1-17 to the fore and interprets it in reference to the Church replacing Israel in another mimro entitled On the Crucifixion - Part Five for Friday Night (ܟܕܢܲܐ ܕܘܲܪܥܐ ܚܬܝܐ ܐܕܡܟܢܲܐ ܒܡܫܟܒܒܐ ܗܿ).33

Come, Moses, go to the land of the Nations and let grow there a new vineyard which Simon plants when I have sent him. Behold I am sending apostles, my friends, as vinedressers, take the company of prophets and follow them. I am the shoot that sprouted and rose from the house of David,34 and in me, the vineyard is renewed that it give fruits to the Father. I am the vine [see Jn 15:1], and from me, one presses choice wine which open mouths (lit. lips and teeth) by its sweetness [see Ps 51:17]. Behold I am sending apostles, my branches [see Jn 15:5], to the land of the nations, and there they will yield sweet fruits instead of bitter ones. Take, henceforward, the fruits of your vine, son of the Levites, leave the barren [one], come and be comforted among the Aramaeans. A new plant from Golgotha, whose wine is sweet, issues forth to the world, and the nations of the earth take delight in it. Come thither, go, Moses, and rejoice with my heralds. Instead of the Nation take the Nations which meditate on you.35

33. See “HSJS II,” 522-554.
34. See Is 4:2, 11:1, 53:2; Jer 23:5-6, 33:14-16; Zec 3:8, 6:12.
The context of this citation is Jesus speaking to Moses about the Vine, the chosen Israel the Lord and Moses lead out of Egypt,36 the land of slavery. As stated above, the bitter grapes that it produced—in connection with Israel rejecting and crucifying Jesus—led to the Nation being spurned. Jesus invites Moses and his company of prophets to follow Simon and the Apostles he is sending to the nations. Simon planting a new vineyard and the Apostles being new workers in the vineyard who replace the old vinedressers mentioned in the Parable of the Tenants (see Mt 21:22-41) refer to their preaching among the nations, which accept the Word of God and become the Church. Moses and the prophets migrating to the Nations’ side and bringing their fruits with them ties in with preaching, for their prophecies are from God. These prophecies rejected by the Nation are accepted by the Nations, which meditate upon them. One sees here Jacob of Sarug’s emphasis on the unicity of the Word of God found in the Old and New Testaments. Jesus, the true Vine, which sprouts from the house of David (see Is 11:1; Jer 23:5; 33:15) renewed the vineyard. The new Vineyard, planted in the side of Christ, which the lance transfixed (see Jn 19:34), is rooted in and issues forth from Golgotha. The Eucharistic insinuation is not to be missed, for Golgotha produces a sweet wine. The Apostles, representatives of the Church, are the branches of the Vine, Jesus Christ (see Jn 15:5). They will not yield the bitter grapes of unbelief but the sweet fruits of faith. Moses left the Nation to follow Simon and the apostles, and to be comforted among the Aramaeans, who make up the Church. This abandonment also alludes to Israel’s repudiation by its prophets.

36. Ibid., 578:10-11.

The chosen Vine that came out with us out of Egypt bore grapes. Come, taste and see how bitter [they are].
The vine as an image of the Church can be likewise found in Jacob’s mimro entitled On Hosannas, on the Donkey, on Sending the Disciples, and on the City That Is in Opposition, and on the Rest, a commentary on Jesus entering Jerusalem (see Mt 21:1-11; Mk 11:1-11; Lk 19:28-38; Jn 12:12-15). Reading Mt 21:2, Jacob of Sarug states that two animals a colt and a donkey were tied up to a vine. The image of the two tied animals is the fulfillment of Gn 49:11, “He tethers his vine is the synagogue and the foal kingship. Whereas Ephrem does not interpret this verse in relation to the Church, Isaac of Antioch interprets the image of the colt tied to the vine in Gn 49:11 as Jesus leaving Israel to stay with the Gentiles. The bishop of Batnan sees here an image of the Church.

38. Ibid., 619:16.
40. See “In Genesim II,” 97 (Latin); “In Genesim I,” 114 (Syriac).

The colt bound next to the donkey: unbound it and bring it to me.
A colt escaping his master is a symbol of Adam, who left Eden because he sinned, thus becoming enslaved by other masters. God freed him from his slavery to idolatry and yoked him to the law. The vine to which God’s prophets tethered Adam represented the law. Jesus instructs the two disciples to untie and bring him the colt bound to the vine. The prophets caught the colt that went wild, and the disciples brought him back to Christ that he return Adam to Eden. That shows that the way back to Eden is not through the Law but Jesus Christ.

Not only does the vine symbolize the law, but also Christ and his Church.

Lovely mysteries are one the vine to those who gaze at it, and it clearly depicts a type of Christ.

From it he let Adam go, untied, and freed him, and from it, he mixed his precious blood and gave it to his Church. The vine is the Church, in which all parables are depicted, and the Bridegroom came to renew for her the good things (אֵין חֶסֶד). The donkey is the synagogue of the Nation, O discerners.

Since it was not worthy of the Lord of the prophets, he left it standing [alone].

He untied the colt and left it standing by itself, for it was laid bare by the glory of the house of God.


Adam’s Lord likens Adam to a colt while saving him, for he, in the likeness of a wild colt, escaped his master.

43. Ibid., 619:5-6.

Adam ate the fruit in Eden and tasted death, and they expelled and removed him from Paradise, the Garden of Delights.

44. Ibid., 619:9-10.

45. Ibid., 621:2.

46. Ibid., 621:13-14.

47. Ibid., 619:11-12.

48. Ibid., 621:15-16.
The Son of God lamented over it from the beginning, and it was laid bare by his goodness at the end. It came to an end there because the Lord of the heights said to her, “Behold your house shall henceforth remain desolate [see Jer 12:7; Mt 23:38].” The Church, who loved him dearly, clung to him, and got ready to sing his praise at the entrance [to the city].

The vine is clearly a type of Christ. Here this image is sacramentally related to the Church. The Lord prepares his precious blood from this vine and gives it to his Church. The vine is also a symbol of the Church, who has loved and cleaved to Jesus. This symbolism refers to the vine and branches of Jn 15:5, and the relationship of Christ to his Church. The abandonment, rejection, and destruction of Israel are repeated and signified in the images of the vine that was laid bare and came to an end, and the desolate house. Nevertheless, Israel, in this quotation, is not depicted as the vine but as the donkey that remained bound to the law, and the two apostles Jesus sent did not untie.

To bring this section to a close, it is worth mentioning that the vine is also an image of prayers such as in the case of Jonah praying inside the big fish (see Jon 2). Jacob depicts this prayer as a grape cluster at whose taste the angels marvel. “A grape cluster of praise Jonah picked from inside the fish and sent it [upwards]. The angels on high marveled at its sweet taste.”

4.1.2 The Church, Fig Tree

In the realm of plantation symbolism discovered in the writings of the Jacob of Sarug, the fig tree is likewise a symbol of Israel rejected by God and the Church replacing it. This imagery find its roots already in the Old Testament. It symbolizes not only Israel (see Hos 9:10) and its prosperity and peace (1Kgs 5:5; Mi 4:4; Zec 3:10) but also its destruction like a withered fig tree (Jer 8:13). By all accounts, such an image is found neither in Aphrahat nor Ephrem.52 In the mimro On the Fig Tree Our Lord Cursed and It Withered (καὶ ἦ γὰρ τοῦτο ἡ ἡμέρα ἵνα ἀφεθήναι ἄσποντες ἡμῖν ἐκ τὰς ἡμέρας ἑαυτῶν οὗτος ἦν ἀόσπιος σφόν ἀσκέται ἕως ἐκτὸς τῆς ἀσκήσεως)53 (see Mt 21:18-22; Mk 11:12-14; Mk 11:20-25), Jacob of Sarug presents the symbols of a vineyard and a fig tree in parallel, and both signify Israel. The worthless, vain, fruitless fig tree, according to him, is a type of the Nation,54 i.e., Israel, and a depiction of Sion.55 The Lord made the fig tree into an example for Israel.56 Moreover, the bishop of Batnan interprets the cursing words as addressed to Jerusalem,57 with which Jesus was angry for not listening to him.58

52. See Murray, “Symbols,” 256, especially footnote 2.
53. See “HSJS IV,” 724-739.
54. Ibid., 734:21-735:1.
55. Ibid., 731:13-16.
57. Ibid., 732:17-18.
He (Jesus) imitated his Father, who also cursed the vineyard he planted in the corner of the fertile earth of the house of Abraham, for he expected it to produce grapes, but it yielded wild grapes [see Is 5:2]. Since it did not bear him fruit, he uprooted it and made it into a ruination. He pulled down the fence by prophecy, and broke down its tower, and even denied it clouds and their copious showers. In accordance with the word of his Father our Savior acted: he cursed the fig that fruits never be on it. It is the vineyard of the beloved [see Is 5:1], which the prophecy pulled out, cursed and uprooted. Consequently, it became fruitless. The synagogue is the vine that the Father brought out of Egypt [see Ps 80:9]. On account of its bitter grapes, he cursed it, and it was destroyed. Behold it withered!

So is the fig tree, which represented [the vine], [and] which our Lord cursed that fruits never be on it because it rejected him. Just as his Father cursed the vineyard which denied him fruits, so the Son cursed the fig tree, and it immediately withered. Jerusalem is the vine and the fig tree. The Father cursed it, and the Son like his Begetter cursed it. Behold it is destroyed! Since the Son does not make anything less than the Father, he cursed like him the [tree] which withheld the fruit of faith. 

The son rejects Israel just as his Father did in the desert. Along with the image of the vineyard the symbol of a fig tree appears. Some of the symbols discussed above are repeated here such as the fertile land and wild grapes. Jacob of Sarug reiterates the symbolism of God’s uprooting the vine he led out of Egypt (see Ps 80:9) as an image for rejecting Israel and adds that the Son similarly acted when he cursed the fig tree. Both the vine and the fig tree refer to Israel, or the synagogue or Jerusalem. Whereas the vine yielded wild
and bitter grapes, the fig tree did not bear any fruit. Both denied their owner the appropriate fruit, which is a symbol of faith. Both crucified him. Accordingly, they were destroyed: the vineyard uprooted, and the fig tree cursed and dried out. Just as the Father rejected the vine he brought out of Egypt, so the Son spurns the fig tree as well. Therefore, both Father and Son reject Israel.

The fig tree as an image of the Church can be implicitly drawn from Jacob’s mimro On Zacchaeus, the Tax-Collector (ياة חותמא), a commentary on Lk 19:1-10. Following the reading in the Peshitta, the bishop of Batnan presumes that Zacchaeus climbs a fig tree to be able to see Jesus. Both Zacchaeus and the tree bore fruits. The fruit of the former is repentance, and that of the latter is Zacchaeus.

The fruit of this insipid fig tree looked appetizing (lit. was pleasing), and Jesus, passing by, plucked it from its branches. He saw Zacchaeus as a first-ripe on the [fig] tree, and quickly plucked it to use its sweet taste. Not even in Eden did he ever happen on such a fruit which he, passing by [on his way] to Jericho, plucked from this fig tree.

By climbing the fig tree to see Jesus, Zacchaeus demonstrated his faith in Christ. Therefore, Jacob of Sarug likens him to a delicious fruit which the Son of God plucks. Zacchaeus became the first-ripe of the fig tree. This fig tree will bear many more sweet fruits, which makes it a symbol of the Church. Moreover, an orchard of fig trees could symbolize the Church. Jacob of Sarug exhorts his audience not to be like fruitless fig trees, lest their fate be similar.

---

60. Ibid., 733:7.
62. In the Greek text, Zacchaeus climbs a sycamore tree (συκομομόχη), see Novum Testament Graece et Latine (Stuttgart: Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft, 1999), 222.
to that of the cursed fig tree. Every tree not bearing fruit will be cut down, turned into wood, and flames will devour it (see Lk 13:6-13). A person such as Zacchaeus is both the fig tree and its fruit. Moreover, collectively these individuals make up the Church.

4.1.3 The Church, Olive Tree

In Jacob’s plantation imagery, the olive tree is a symbol of both the spurned Israel and the Church. The source of this imagery is Rom 11:13-24, in which Paul addresses the Gentiles as a wild olive shoot grafted in the place of pruned branches, i.e., the Jews. Jacob of Sarug makes use of the Pauline language in his *mimro* on *Edessa and Jerusalem* and applies it to the Gentiles of Edessa. The wild olive tree is a symbol of the Church of Edessa in particular, the Universal Church in general.

The wild olive tree grafted itself onto that trunk of the house of Abraham when the tree was destroyed and laid bare.

Faith gave these foreign branches the best of the olive tree from its trunk. Since impiety destroyed that tree of life, the Nations renewed it by the faith of the house of God.

That blessed, sweet trunk of the forefathers possessed long branches from among the Nations. The Nations renewed the blessed plant of the house of Abraham by faith because of which Abraham was declared righteous [see Rom 4:2-3].

---

64. See “*HSJS IV,*” 737:1.


68. This translation differs from Bruns’s reading, “Der Ölbaum des Sohnes ließ sich verkosten in jenem Baume.” *Ibid.,* 549.
Therefore, the wild olive tree entered and stood instead of the cultivated olive tree. Behold it is grafted onto and is comely on the trunk of the house of Abraham. It bears daily sweet fruits of a new praise instead of the tree which removed itself from its trunk. The Nations recognized the faith of the house of God. Behold they abide by it that they become the scions of the children of the promise. It is not the law that brought them to God, but [they came] through the gate of faith without the law.69

The trunk of the olive tree is Abraham declared righteous on account of his faith and Israel’s ancestors, yet the cultivated olive tree, stemming from this trunk, i.e. Israel, was destroyed, for it bore the fruit of impiety rather than the fruit of Abraham, faith. Paul speaks of this destruction using the language of his faith and Israel’s ancestors, yet the cultivated olive tree, stemming from the olive tree, a supposition already existing in the Syriac literature that pre-dates Jacob’s time. St. Ephrem, for example, interprets the olive as a symbol of Christ. This olive gave water, blood, and oil in his death.71 Thus, he associates the olive tree with the Tree of Life.

In contrast to Jerusalem, Edessa, representing the Church of the Nations, believed without the advantage of having the law. Edessa is the wild


70. Since the fig tree discussed in the previous section does not symbolize Jesus Christ, it cannot be an image of the Tree of Life.

olive tree that grafted itself in the trunk of the house of Abraham. Its faith is not new, but that of Abraham and the ancestors of Israel. It is not a new olive tree, but a wild tree - that is to say, idolater, that was grafted onto the unshakable trunk of Abraham. Moreover, it believes that Jesus Christ, whom Israel rejected and crucified, is the Son of God. For this reason, it longed for his visit. Therefore, the wild tree replacing the cultivated tree is a clear indication that the Church replaces Israel.

Jacob of Sarug also uses an olive tree as the image of the Church in his commentary on Jesus entering Jerusalem (see Mt 21:1-11; Mk 11:1–11; Lk 19:28–38; Jn 12:12–15). In this context, however, this tree does not symbolize Israel. The priests, leaders, and scribes of the Nation instructed the children to stone Jesus, while he enters Jerusalem. The bishop of Batnan claims that the Church went out with the children. Rather than implementing the orders they received, the children threw away their stones and hurried to cut branches of palm (see Jn 12:13) and olive trees. The action of throwing the stones away is a symbol for rejecting the synagogue of the Nation, that left its Lord. Whereas one would expect the children to be an image of the Church (perhaps they do implicitly), Jacob construes the branches of the olive tree as a symbol of the Holy Church.

Two trees came out to meet the Only-Begotten, and both interwove a crown of praise for the King who came. The olive tree is meek, depicted mercy, and offered praise to the merciful One, who came to us. The olive tree is merciful and filled with healing to the one who approaches it.

---

72. See “HSJS V,” 613-631.
73. Ibid., 625:18-19.
74. Ibid., 625:20-21.
75. Ibid., 626:11-12.
76. Ibid., 626:5-6.
77. Ibid., 626:7-8.
like its Lord who is all among all that all should have profit.

[It is] a lovely sight: oil glorified the chrism, who blots out the debts of human beings with oil. He cleanses with oil, purges away with oil, purifies with oil the one who comes to baptism to be pardoned by it.78

The palm and the olive trees are the two trees that came out to meet Jesus. The former is a symbol of the Son of God and his exaltedness, and the latter praising him represents the Church. This image of the Church carries a sacred symbolism linked to the Chrism oil used in the celebration of the Mystery of Chrismation. Christ, the true Chrism, gives this religious rite its power of purification and forgiveness of sins to the mundane olive oil and water used for baptism, thus making the Church merciful just as he is.

4.2 Christ, Grape Cluster, Olive Tree, and Tree of Life

Jacob of Sarug uses plantation-imagery to refer not only to the Church but also to Christ. This symbolism is related to the Church, inasmuch as it presents Christ as the source of the Church’s life. From the vine Israel a grape cluster sprouts and becomes the source of the Church’s life. In this context, this section presents the themes of a grape cluster and the tree of life as symbols of Christ.

4.2.1 Christ, Grape Cluster

On account of eating a bitter fruit, God bans Adam and Eve (see Gn 3:23-24). Their return to Paradise, nonetheless, takes place when they partake of the sweet fruit.

The fruit that came to redeem Adam is sublime and lofty, and the fruit that gave praise to his Lord is greatly splendid.

The Lord of the fruits came to sweeten Adam’s palate:

the sweet palm tree came out to meet him and eagerly waited to receive him.99

The coming down of the fruit to redeem Adam points to the Incarnation of the Word of God. In contrast to the bitter, poisonous and lethal fruit that Adam consumed in the Garden of Delights, the fruit coming down from heaven is sweet-tasting and life-giving. It is the ultimate source of Adam’s life and, by extension, the Church’s. Jesus Christ is this fruit.

A grape cluster (쌀), the fruit of a vine-plant, as an image of Christ is abundant in the poetry of Jacob, whose intellectual ancestors had an affinity to the Christological symbol of a single “grape” (السيله).80 Before applying the icon of a grape cluster to Christ, the bishop of Batnan employs it to represent different personalities in the Old Testament whom he considers as types of Christ. Isaac, Abraham’s son, is such an instance.

To the centenarian, he appeared as a grape cluster (쌀) on his vine-plant. He plucked it with love that it be consecrated to the Lord of the vineyard. His tree grew old, and then this fruit appeared on it. He presented and offered it as first fruits to the one who sustains all. A sucker sprang from the root of the centenarian, yet he was not sad while breaking it off by faith.81

The context of this quotation is the Old Testament account of the testing of Abraham (Gn 22:1-19). The vine-plant alludes to Abraham, the

79. Ibid., 627:7-10.

80. “Grape” ( sqlSession) is a rare word and is used by Aphrahat and Ephrem to refer to Christ. See Murray, “Symbols,” 113-118. Jacob of Sarug, however, does not employ it as a symbol of Christ. He prefers “grape cluster” (쌀). Besides a grape, the word “ sqlSession” can mean a small grape cluster. See “TS I,” 1441; “CSD,” 169. With this latter meaning, Jacob of Sarug tends to use sqlSession. For example, Jacob refers to the three youths who survived the furnace in Dn 3:1-32 as “three grapes in a small cluster” ( sqlSession). See “HSJS II,” 133:11. When referring to a single grape, Jacob employs the Syriac word “ sqlSession.”

centenarian, the grape cluster to Isaac, and the Lord of the vineyard to God. Abraham’s sacrifice, the plucking of the grape cluster, foreshadows the offering of the heavenly Father. Jacob of Sarug re-illustrates this biblical text using his imagination to show the cooperation between the Father and the Son. He achieves his goal by painting Isaac assisting Abraham in building the altar. “A sweet grape cluster built a winepress that it be trodden down in it, and it stomped to trample on its grapes, along with the one pressing it.”

The winepress is the altar of sacrifice, and the sweet grape cluster, Isaac the sacrifice. The grape cluster being pressed helps with the stomping.

Beloved grape (كنيسة), I shall squeeze you in the King’s cup. It is right that you should exult because of the mouth that your wine shall reach.

O little grape cluster (کیسته), behold, first fruits, I shall sacrifice you. Do not mourn for the vintager who offers you.

Beloved fruit, I present you a gift to the Most Holy that you enter the treasury rejoicing.

Although the beloved grape, small grape cluster, and first-fruits point to Isaac, they refer ultimately to Christ. The wine produced by the fruit of this grapevine has Eucharistic connotations, which will become more prominent as this presentation proceeds.

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, thrown into a white-hot furnace for refusing to worship the idols of King Nebuchadnezzar (see Dn 3:1-23), survived unharmed this horrible, cruel punishment. Depicted as a small grape cluster with three first-ripe grapes, they are also a type of Christ.

As a small grape cluster (کیسته) of three first-ripe grapes (کخته): this one was handing them to that one to kiss [them].

The Babylonians saw and embraced the first-fruits which the king picked from the blazing vine-plant.

---

82. Ibid., 91:4-5.

83. Ibid., 98:1-6.
Sweet fruits from the furnace full of fire
the king carried and showed to the crowds as he was speaking.\textsuperscript{84}

The New Testament also contains characters whom Jacob depicts as grape clusters. A sweet grape cluster symbolizes, for instance, John the Baptist. “A sweet grape cluster (םִּילַּת) which was squeezed on the king’s platter [see Mt 14:9-11; Mk 6:27-28; Lk 9:9]: behold the entire creation is enjoying its sweet taste.”\textsuperscript{85} John’s parents are the barren vine-plant, and John “is the grape cluster (םִּילַּת) which the barren vine-plant bore after a long time, was picked, squeezed on the king’s platter, and entered the [wedding] banquet.”\textsuperscript{86} Small clusters of grapes also represent the innocent infants whom Herod brutally butchered, and grapevines symbolize their mothers. These children also a typify Christ. “The vine-plants lamented over their small clusters of grapes (םִּילַּת), first fruits, for the pig entered and trampled on them [while] on their branches.”\textsuperscript{87} Finally, much as the dead son of the widow (see Lk 7:11-17) does not symbolize Christ, the image of a small grape cluster still applies to him and the vine-plant to his mother. Here Jacob of Sarug uses these images in a more general sense, just as he employed them to refer to Adam (see above). “A humble vine-plant on which hung a small grape cluster (םִּילַּת): death plucked it, and it was not allowed to enjoy its fruit.”\textsuperscript{88}

All of these types prepare the way for the true grape cluster, Jesus Christ, whose sweet wine is medicine to the world.

The virgin Vine-Plant bore a grape cluster (םִּילַּת) whose sweet wine

\textsuperscript{84} HSJS II,” 133:11-16.

\textsuperscript{85} Ibid.

\textsuperscript{86} Ibid., 691:19-20.

\textsuperscript{87} HSJS I,” 143:4-5.

\textsuperscript{88} “HSJS III,” 547:20-548:1.
the four quarters [of the earth] is absorbed like medicine. The vine never maintained by a farmer: its wine flowed down to the land of the dead and awakened them. From the new wine that poured forth on Golgotha the world drank and by it were comforted every mourner.91

In this citation, the images of the Virgin Vine-Plant and the Vine never maintained by a farmer stands for Mary and her state of being ever-virgin.90 That the Son of Mary is the source of the world and, by extension, the Church, could be drawn from the Eucharistic insinuation of the terms medicine and new wine that poured forth on Golgotha (see Jn 19:34). The effect of this wine is life-giving: it awakens the dead. Jacob of Sarug employs similar images elsewhere in his writings, “The Virgin Vine-Plant, though they did not prune it, bore a grape cluster. Behold creation, which had perished, is gladdened by its wine.”91 The lack of pruning signifies the virginity of Mary, whom the Virgin Vine-Plant symbolizes. Once more the wine intimates Jesus Christ, who gladdens Creation.

The Tree of Life, which came from the high place of Eden [Gn 2:9, 3:22, 24], and behold it scatters its fruits on the dead in the cave. The sweet fruit Mary bore in her virginity: human beings, who were bitter, ate it and were made sweet. The beloved grape cluster (سعیدا) the virgin vine gave to the world: its irrigation consoles the mourning nations of the earth.92

Bitterness and mourning indicate the state in which human beings were: they worshiped man-made gods. These idols have no powers and cannot revive the dead, whereas the Tree of Life, Jesus Christ, does. He is the

---

90. Ephrem also employed vine-imageries to refer to Mary. See Murray, “Symbols,” 120, footnote 3.

91. "HSJS IV,” 900:11-16.

92. Ibid., 804:7-12.
cluster born of the Virgin Vine. This symbol also insinuates that the Tree of Life is a grapevine. The irrigation of the nations by the beloved grape cluster connotes once more the transfixing of the side of Jesus. Jacob of Sarug presents this image as a grape cluster pressed on Golgotha.

Sweet grape cluster ( snapchat symbol), they squeezed you with a spear [see Jn 19:34], and behold the world absorbs your blood like a medicine of life. Your Church knelt on your wounds to drink your blood, and behold it is painted on her lips like a scarlet thread [see Sg 4:3].

The reference to the Johannine scene of the crucifixion with the soldier transfixing the side of Jesus is unmistakable. Just as the rock struck by Moses gushed out waters to satiate the thirst of the Hebrews (see Nm 20:11), so the pierced side of Jesus, the sweet grape cluster, burst water and blood, the medicine of life, to irrigate the entire world. Consequently, the Church bent down and drank from the wounds of Jesus, the source of her sacramental life. Jacob’s poetic prowess provides his audience with the image of a scarlet thread on the lips of the Church. This illustration is an account of her drinking his Eucharistic blood, the medicine of life, a favorite image for the Eucharist in the Syriac tradition.

The guests are waiting to drink life from your wine vessel [see Jn 2:1-12]. Your life-giving cup quenches the multitude longing for you. Your good wine showered down over Creation at the end of time for your Father preserved you that you be the consolation of the world. Your taste is sweet. Behold my tongue is moved! I shall shout praise to the Father, who sent you, that all the bitter ones become sweetened by you.

Jesus, the honey from the skeleton of the dead lion [see Jgs 14:18], came out to sweeten the taste of the world, which was bitter.

---

94. See Murray, “Symbols,” 120.
Jesus changing water into wine in Cana (Jn 2:1-12) occasioned another reference to the Eucharistic wine that quenches the thirst of the Church. His life-giving cup is also an image of the Church’s consecrated wine. This sweet wine is the Father’s gifts to humanity that its taste be changed from bitterness to sweetness. Humanity’s fate is no longer to die but to inherit eternal life due to Jesus’s martyrdom on the cross. This road of self-denial traveled by the Lord becomes the way of the Church’s martyrs. Once more the transfixed side of the Jesus provides the martyred Church with life.

Life-giving grape cluster (جرىود), whom the Jews pressed with a spear [Jn 19:34], intoxicated with its wine the martyrs, and they forgot their tribulations. They drank so much from the new wine (lit. must) of the crucifixion that they did not even feel the fire to complain. The seething of the wine that rushed forth on Golgotha overwhelmed the branding-irons lest they be numbered among branding-irons. They were drunk on its drinking and forgot the pain of their members, for the drunk does not know to complain of his affliction. The wine they drank urged them on until they held the burning coals of fire while they were laughing at the flame. Since their heart[s] were captivated by the drinking, they were not terrified while their members were burning up by the flame. The blood of the Crucified, which they quaffed from that life-giving cup, provided them with a brave (lit. proud, exalted) heart before the judges. The new wine whose seething was great made them so hot [with zeal] that they ran to the sword and the flame. They unclothed in the tribunal. Since they were drunk, they were not disturbed, for the drunk is unaware of having been stripped naked on account of their

wine. The chaste ones stood stripped naked before the licentious ones and were unaware of [their] nakedness, that was by reason of the wine. In the midst of a struggle, the one who is naked is not bare, for the one fighting for victory is unashamed. They waged war against the ruler guarding the air [see Eph 2:2] and fought undressed with evil doers. They anointed themselves with the blood of the side of the Son of God in the struggle, and the hand of their adversaries slid away from them.96

The courage to face martyrdom is the example of the Crucified. These men and women suffering at the hands of unjust rulers become intoxicated by the wine of the grape cluster pressed on Golgotha. This wine is once more the source of the Church’s life. The martyrs had already partaken of the life-giving cup, i.e., the consecrated bread and wine. These Eucharistic species are so potent that their partakers no longer feel pain much as they are torched. They can laugh in the face of the flame and pick up burning coals with their hands. This image brings to mind the three youths in Daniel 3. The mentioning of the spear pressing the grape cluster and the wine gushing out due to this squeezing are images inspired by Jn 19:34. All of these images point to the importance of the event of Golgotha in the theological outlook of Jacob of Sarug. The piercing of the side of Jesus is, consequently, the source of the Church’s sacramental life: Christ is Ursakrament, i.e., the primordial sacrament. The tree of life in Gn 2-3 provides the bishop of Batnan with an Old Testament image to indicate further that Jesus Christ is the fountainhead of the sacramental life of the Church.

4.2.2 Christ, Olive Tree

Along with being an image of the Church, the olive tree holds another important symbol: Christ. The title “Christ” (مَسَدِی) means the Anointed One. Thus, the meaning of the title itself is directly related to the olive tree, for olive oil was used for anointing, including baptismal anointing. The olive tree

and oil,\textsuperscript{98} nevertheless, draw their importance and meaning exactly from this title, and not the other way around, for “Christ (مَعَـشَـٰـةٌ) is the cause of all types of anointing.”\textsuperscript{99} For that reason, the olive tree and, by extension, oil, is related to the Church insofar as it is an image of the Son of God, the source of the Church’s sacramental life.

The rare image of oil as a Eucharistic symbol in the \textit{mimre} of the bishop of Batnan is depicted in Elisha’s miracle. Elijah’s successor transforms water into oil for a prophet’s widow that she and her children be able to survive (see 2 Kgs 4:1-7).

She (the widow) depicted certainly the image of the Church, for she entered, along with her children, and closed the door on them. The Father sent to her the [Holy] Spirit instead of Elisha. By his descent, he sanctifies the bread, and it becomes the body [of Christ]. He dwells in the wine and also makes it the innocent blood [of Christ]. He fills her children life as the empty vessels.\textsuperscript{100}

The widow signifies the Church, her children the Christian faithful, and the oil the body and blood of Jesus Christ. Just as the change of the water into oil was due not to Elisha’s action, but to divine intervention, so the transformation of the bread and wine at a liturgical service is caused by the Holy Spirit as well. The body and blood of Christ grant life to those who partake of them. In this Eucharistic sense, the Oil, an image of Christ, can be understood as a source of the Church’s Eucharistic mystery.

Baptism, more than the Eucharist, however, finds its roots in the olive tree and oil symbolism. For example, the olive leaf the dove carried back to Noah (see Gn 8:11) already represents Christ.

\textsuperscript{98} Since the oil in question is a product of the olive fruit, both the olive tree and its oil are examined together in this section.

\textsuperscript{99} “HSJS IV,” 801:12.

\textsuperscript{100} \textit{Ibid.}, 279:9-14.
(The dove) hastened to the olive tree, which carries mysteries, to receive from it riches in plenty and to bring them back with it. The mystery seethed in the leaves of the olive tree of anointing, cut a leaf and gave it to the dove that it carry it back to Noah. Christ (مَعْيَشَة) and oil (مَعْيَشَة) were depicted there symbolically, and the Holy Spirit and baptism by an unambiguous type. Was there no other leaf except an olive, and no other bird to bring it back other than a dove?101

The dove is an obvious allusion to the Holy Spirit (see Mt 3:16; Mk 1:10; Lk 3:22; Jn 1:32). The olive leaf as a symbol of baptism can be understood through oil, thus identifying the baptismal anointing with baptism. This close interrelation between baptism and oil becomes more apparent when one considers the following citation, “He instructed them, ‘Go, teach and baptize [all] the nations in the name of the Father, and in the name of the Son, and in the name of the [Holy] Spirit’ (see Mt 28:19)... He gave them the Trinity and oil (مَعْيَشَة) from the Mount of Olives: the oil for signing and the Trinity for salvation.”102 Although the emphasis seems to be placed on the act of anointing, water is not absent from the baptismal service. The deed of the sinful woman in Lk 7:36-50, for example, depicts baptism. “By the oil and tears which she poured there on our Savior (see Lk 7:37-38), she symbolically depicted the baptism of the world forever.”103 The mystery seething in the leaves points to Christ (مَعْيَشَة). Moreover, using a vocabulary reminiscent of the angels singing on the day Jesus was born (see Lk 2:14), Jacob reveals that

the Olive Tree and Oil are symbols of Christ. “The sign of the oil showed the peace of the world and the leaf of the olive tree carried back good hope.”

The fact that Jesus in connection to the olive tree is the source of baptism can also be deduced from Jacob’s recount of the Visitation (see Lk 1:39-45). During the encounter between the two infants while still in their respective mothers’ wombs, Jesus hands the faculty of baptism to John. “He anointed the infant [John] in his mother’s womb by the Holy Spirit, and gave him baptism in the womb before being born.” Anointing refers to oil and therefore to the olive tree. The mystery of anointing is effected by Christ, the Anointed One, through the Holy Spirit.

The mysteries hidden in the olive leaf the dove brought back to Noah (see above), mainly Christ (ṢḤMA) and oil (ṢḤMA), are now revealed on the Mount of Olives, which is also a symbol of anointing.

He gathered the Children of his Mystery on the Mount of Olives [see Acts 1:12], for the Mount of Olives (kūnṭaḥa) is a symbol of anointing, that oil (Ṣḥ)m for baptism be from the Mount of Olives and Christ (ṢḤMA) be raised up to his Father’s place from it.
The treasure of oil (Ṣḥ)m on the Mount of Olives is for anointing, for Christ (ṢḤMA) ascended to his Father from it.
Therefore, he gathered them to that mountain to provided them with oil for the signing of the whole earth.

On Mount of Olives, the Anointed One (ṢḤMA) gives the Apostles oil (Ṣḥ)m to anoint the entire world. He commissions them to baptize all the nations (see Mt 28:19) with his oil. The Mount of Olives, like the olive tree, finds its roots and draws its significance from the true Olive Tree and the true

---

106. Ibid., 816:9-16.
Oil, Christ. This true Olive Tree gladdens the Church and provides her with his oil.

4.2.3 Christ, Tree of Life

The book of Revelation (2:7, 22:2) presented the Christians of the west with the springboard to contemplate the topic of the Tree of Life, whereas Genesis (2-3) was the impetus for the same subject on which the early Syriac Fathers\(^\text{107}\) including Jacob of Sarug mused. One must also keep in mind that the book of Revelation was unknown to the bishop of Batnan. Even if the Tree of Life symbolizes Christ but not the Church, it is closely intertwined with the subject of the Church, for just as the grape cluster and the Olive Tree are sources of the Church’s sacramental life so too is the Tree of Life. Before proceeding, it is interesting to state that Jacob of Sarug uses the symbolism of a tree to describe how God is three persons, and yet one. “The Father is the root, the Son is the fruit, and the Holy Spirit is the branches: one Tree who is life in its entirety to the one who approaches it.”\(^\text{108}\) Just like the Tree of life, this Tree, a symbol of the Trinity, is completely life and life-giving to the one who comes near it.

The Tree of life stood in the midst of the Garden of Eden (see Gn 2:9). After the Fall, God expelled Adam from Paradise and placed an angel with a fiery revolving sword to protect the Tree of life (Gn 3), thus making it impossible for Adam and his children to partake of it. However, the soteriological implication of the Incarnation is that the Tree of life uprooted the tree of knowledge once and for all,\(^\text{109}\) and made possible Adam’s return to

---


The Good One had pity on our humanity and sent his Son that he cut the roots of that tree that devastated the earth.
the Garden of Eden, where the Tree of Life presents its fruits to his delight and that of his progenies. In line with Aphrahat and Ephrem, Jacob of Sarug identifies the Tree of life and its fruits with the Lord Jesus.

“I am life, and the one who receives me finds life” [see Jn 11:25, 14:6], the blessed Tree, our Lord, says.

“I am life, and the one who eats my fruits lives forever [see Jn 11:25, 14:6], departs from the place filled with death and climbs over its wall.”

Righteousness, holiness, and justice, mercy, gladness, and serenity [see Gal 5:22-23], peace, tranquility, love of all virtues: these are the good fruits of the tree of life.

When a person plants it in their minds, they become paradises and bear the fruits that are life to those who partake of them. When they possess it, it is well established in them, and they absorb its taste, they become springs gushing out water of life.¹¹⁰

Christ is the Fruit of Life sent down to human beings by the Father,¹¹¹ and the sweet fruit to be enjoyed.¹¹² In the language of Jn 6:35 and Jn 11:25, the blessed Tree,¹¹³ i.e. the Tree of life, declares itself to be life, offers its fruits for consumption, and promises life to those who partake of it. The fruits of the...

He ordered and warned Adam in Eden, “Do not eat from the tree, for it imposes death upon him who tastes it.” Our Lord taught his hearers at the end of times, “Do not even fix the eye on the desire of the tree.”

The Father is one, his Begotten, the faithful Son, is one, and one is the commandment, “Do not eat from the tree.”

¹¹⁰ Ibid., 818:5-14.


¹¹² [...] the Fruit of life sent down to us by the Exalted One.

¹¹³ Ibid., 353:13.

¹¹⁴ [...] that he [Zacchaeus] alone take delight in the sweet fruit.


171
Tree of life bestow life on those consuming them, and their sharers inherit eternal life. Moreover, they become themselves both paradises and trees of life. These are the followers of Jesus, the Christians embodying the Church. Accordingly, one can already conclude that the Church is, according to Jacob of Sarug, paradise on earth in whose midst is the Tree of life, a theme further explored below.

The crucifixion scene plays a central role in this tree-symbolism, for it is precisely on Golgotha where the Tree of Life sprouted. “Where Sion set the wood to crucify the Son is where the Tree bearing the mysteries sprung.”\(^{114}\) Moreover, the soldier’s lance piercing the side of the Crucified opened the door back to Paradise. Jesus sends away the angel with the fiery revolving sword and makes Eden once again fully accessible to Adam.

He dismissed the Cherub guarding the Tree of Life, and received the spear into his side that the heirs who had left might enter. He opened Paradise, that was inaccessible (lit. closed) before those entering and brought back those who had been expelled to their inheritance and domain.\(^ {115}\)

On the cross, the Son of God calls everyone to his vineyard. “Behold his hands are extended. He is on Golgotha and calls everyone to come to the vineyard of righteousness.”\(^ {116}\) Accordingly, Golgotha becomes Eden in the view of Jacob of Sarug, for the Tree of Life stands in its midst. From Golgotha the teaching of the Son of God issues forth and irrigates the whole Creation, thereby making the earth like Paradise. Once again the reference to the side of Christ split open is explicit with the irrigation imagery, which refers to both the Eucharist and baptism.

You (Jesus) are living water. Everyone who desired and drank from you

---

delighted in you and was satiated from the all-merciful fountainhead [see Jn 4:14].

Your teaching sprung from Golgotha, God’s Eden, and issued out to irrigate the entire Creation, which was desolate. The dry, vexed earth was satiated from you, flourished and became like Paradise full of choice produce. Your accounts flowed (lit. entered) like streams of rivers, and behold the whole Creation meditates on your teaching.

Pishon, Gilgon, Tigris, and the Euphrates [see Gn 2:10-14] ceased irrigation, for [living water] flowed from your disciples that the entire world drink. The Cross opened one fountainhead from Golgotha117 [instead of the four] and distributed himself to the four corners [of the world] and behold he gives us to drink.

He stood on the [mountain] top and dug a well towards the depths that it overwhelm the whole earth through its irrigation.118

The reference to baptism is apparent, for the main topic revolves around Jesus the fountainhead on Golgotha. There is no mention of wine or blood to indicate the Eucharist, yet one cannot exclude it. The four rivers mentioned in Gn:2-14 become dry. They are no longer needed for the true Water now issues forth. One stream flowing from Golgotha overflows not only the entire earth but also the abode of the dead. This river of living water also issues from the Church, who is represented by the disciples.

The image of the one stream brings to mind the stream in the vision of Ezekiel. The connection between it and the mystery of baptism becomes evident when taking into consideration Jacob of Sarug’s commentary on the wonderful stream in the book of Ezekiel (see Ez 47:1-12) in his minro aptly entitled On the Torrent Which the Prophet Ezekiel Saw (be ḫa ʾnīḥāḏa bāḏēš ʾmahāna).

117. See Nm 20:11; Ps 78:15-16; Wis 11:4; Jn 19:34; 1 Cor 10:4; 1 Jn 5:6.
The stream in this vision is foremost an image of Christ, sent by the Father that the dead world might live, connects directly to Church. This interpretation of the torrent is intelligible only in reference to Jn 4:13-14 (Jesus’s dialogue with the Samaritan woman) and Jn 19:34 (the lance piercing the side of Jesus).

Christ is the water flowing out from the temple, and every tree irrigated by it lives

...]
The Father sent Living Waters to a dead world, and the world lived by the Waters which flowed from his temple.120

Being and flowing out of Christ, the torrent is a symbol of the Gospel. The Good News, Christ, gathers and brings God all nations under the sun and peoples from all walks of life and makes of them one great Nation, i.e., the Church.

The Gospel (مَصِبَّةٍ) went out throughout the regions and to the ends of the earth and gathered together human beings before God. From every region, every jurisdiction, every government, every land beyond, every border, every place, every generation, every nation, [and] every race it (the Gospel) assembled and made [them] a large congregation for the Godhead

[...]
It gathered them like raindrops from every mountain and made of them one immense deluge of glory like the prophet saw: A torrent that cannot be waded across and cannot be measured because of a high amount of water in it [Ez 47:5]. The nations became one great people singing glory, a large congregation, a torrent beyond measurements [see Jn 11:52].121

120. Ibid., 444:21-445:1, 8-9.

The torrent and the Gospel can also typify the Church, whose priests baptize people and bring them to God. The vision of Ezekiel speaks of many trees along the bank of the river (Ez 47:7) bearing every kind of fruit (Ez 47:12). This “revelation represented human beings as trees.”122 The kind of these trees is not clear. Nevertheless, one finds a reference to John the Baptist depicted as an olive tree planted along the torrent of baptism. John is a “Glorious olive tree which sprung along the stream of baptism.”123 These trees depict those who accepted the Gospel, i.e. Jesus Christ, including John the Baptist. However, those who rejected the Good News are spoken of as ingresses ( الصحيح (سُجِّيَّة) and egresses ( الصحيح (سُجِّيَّة) that were left salty (Ez 47:11), and identified with the Nation—that is to say, Israel. According to Jacob of Sarug, Ezekiel “names the Nation ingress and egress,”125 for the Son of God entered and exited the house of the Jews, who remained as they were. Therefore, Jacob concludes that “The Nation is those waters that did not become fresh [Ez 47:11],”126 and the trees the baptized. Jesus Christ plants the baptized along this stream like the Creator planted Adam, the Vine, in the Garden of Delights.

Behold the trees full of spiritual beauties
sprung on this and on that side through the baptismal font.
Behold the Creation is full of fishers and castings of nets,
and the catch is abundant inside the churches.
The net of Simon caught the sea and the entire land,
and he brought the innumerable catch to the Church of the Son.127

122. Ibid., 442:9.
124. Following the Peshitta, which differs from the Hebrew text.
126. Ibid., 443:17-18.
The torrent flowing out the Son of God becomes the font of Baptism, thus underlying that Christ is the source of the mystery of baptism administered by the Church’s ministers. These ministers are portrayed as fishers with fishing nets at whose head is Simon Peter and the Apostles. To emphasize the universal message of salvation, Jacob of Sarug portrays Simon’s fishing net catching the entire earth. The catch refers to whose who hear the Gospel’s message and accept baptism, thus becoming members of the Church.

Every Tree absorbing water from the torrent is glorious and filled with fruits of life daily [see Ez 47:12], and human beings who are at the stream of baptism exist spiritually in a new life daily.128

Just as the waters of the torrent freshens the polluted waters of the sea (Ez 47:8), the waters of baptism bestow a new life on human beings likened to the stinking waters. “The sea is the world, and the stinking water is Adam’s race [...] the Son of God, the water that flowed from the temple, his Father mixed him with the stinking water and freshened them.”129 Moreover, “The Torrent of Life, baptism, poured forth in the world, and human beings like trees bore through it fruits.”130 Accordingly, the baptismal water draws their effectiveness from Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who is the source of the Church’s sacramental life.

Ezekiel portrayed a magnificent beauty for baptism in that glorious vision he saw in Chaldea (lit. the house of Chaldeans). The Tree of Life made for himself siblings through baptism,
and behold they are planted in it here and there like luminaries.
Behold they are many! Behold they shine! Behold they are beautiful!
Behold all the trees of baptism are bright!
Behold their beauties! Behold their leaves! Behold their fruits!
Behold the sweetness and pleasantness of their produce!
There is neither winter to strip them from their leaves
nor time to deprive them of their fruits.
Behold fruits of the children of light are their faith,
and their sayings are full of life like their leaves.
The Church eats life from their fruits daily,
she rejoices in their leaves and exults in their sayings.
Her life exists in faith as in a dream,
and she causes her congregations to rejoice spiritually in her teaching.
Behold the heavenly food for the hungry!
It is full of life like medicine for the sick.
The trees of baptism have leaves and fruits:
behold the teaching and faith of the house of God!
They offer the fruits of praise to the Godhead daily:
the children of the Church sing their hymns daily.
They both bound up and heal with a word the sick,
and place before them the bread of life through faith.
Behold their fruits became food as it is written,
and also their leaves became truly medicine.
Behold their beauties! Behold their leaves! Behold their fruits!
Behold they are many! Behold they shine! Behold they are beautiful!
and behold they are planted in it here and there like luminaries.

This rather lengthy citation is rather rich in sacramental imagery. The Tree of Life making siblings for himself through baptism indicates that those who accept the Church’s baptism become Jesus Christ’s siblings, symbolically become trees of life, and bear life-giving, healing fruits and leaves. Neither the fruits nor the leaves ever wither. The Church partaking of their fruits brings to mind that those who are working in the vineyard also from the vineyard as discussed above. The faithful, therefore, are identified with the Church, and the symbols applied to them also refer to the Church. The Eucharistic connotations are clear with the expressions of the divine food and medicine of life. One can also infer the mystery of the priesthood in this text. The expression “all the trees of baptism” implies that Jacob is referring to all the baptized. They are the children of light who like trees bear “fruits” and have “leaves.” The fruits are symbols of faith, worship, and the Eucharist. Phrases such as praise and sing symbolize worship. Food- and healing-imageries denote the Eucharist, that is life, heavenly food, the medicine of life and bread of life for the Church. The leaves represent the Word of God in the midst of the Church, for they are the Church’s teachings and sayings, i.e., scriptures and preaching. The Church can confer the mysteries on human beings and preach in the world, for she drinks from the Torrent’s waters. Consequently, she can offer life to those who come to her. Her preaching and food are life-giving medicine to those who seek them. The source of it all is Jesus Christ, the water flowing down from the temple of the Godhead. Along with baptism and the Eucharist, this passage also highlights the preaching of the Word of God, thus providing a segue to the topic of Scriptures.

The Scriptures, which also contain the fruits of life, are another source of the life of the Church. This theme connects appropriately with the previous section.
The Good News is that spiritual Paradise, 
in which the prophets and the apostles are like trees. 
Pick and eat the fruits of life, their sayings, 
for your mouth will become sweet\(^{132}\) by meditating on and studying them.\(^{133}\)

The Holy Bible is Paradise in a spiritual sense, in which there are many trees, each of which is a tree of life. These are the prophets and the apostles, whose fruits are their sayings, the pronouncements of God. Adam and Eve should have rejected the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil and should have fed on his fruit, the Word of God, i.e., his commandment. Accordingly, the Church feasts on the fruits, the Word of God, provided by the prophets and apostles.

The Gospel of the Son is the ax to that tree [of knowledge]. 
It cuts and discards it that no one eat from its fruit. 
Behold the commandments are portrayed in it in the likeness of a sickle, 
by which all the poison producing fruits are cut down. 
The Envious One holds out daily the fruits of death. 
Observe the commandments, and the evil fruits will not hurt you. 
When it holds out to you the fruit of death, the desire of adultery, 
respond to it with the commandment, “Do not commit adultery.”\(^{134}\) 
When it lets creep into and introduces [you] to the habit of loving money, 
- this is the origin of all wickedness - [see 1 Tim 6:10] 
offer it the teaching full of life, 
“I have heard I should not possess anything in the world” [see Mt 6:19, 19:21]. 
When it wheedles, making come the sweetness of gluttony, 
mock it while reproving its boldness, 
“The Son of Man does not live by bread alone 
but by the Word of God, whose mouth lets out” [see Dt 8:3; Mt 4:4; Lk 4:4]. 
When the soul seethes with fury, that begets wrath, 
invoke the commandment that is mentioned and indicated by “Do not be angry” [see Mt 5:22]. 
When it sows in you the evil passions of haughtiness, 
imagine that everyone is better than you. 
When it is persuading you to hate or kill someone,

\(^{132}\) Reading \(דנא\) instead of \(הנא\) as shown in Bedjan. 
\(^{133}\) "HSJS II," 825:12-15. 
\(^{134}\) See Ex 20:14; Lv 18:20; Mt 5:27-28. The fruit of committing adultery is stoning. See Lv 20:10; Dt 22:22. Adultery is meant in the wider sense of the word, and does not pertain only to married people.
you ought to love God and your neighbor, and confound its wife. There is no time that it does not throw at you enkindled arrows take up the buckler of faith and extinguish them [see Ep 6:16]. Take hold of the sword of the Spirit, the Word of life, shatter, and shoot down the slingstones of the slanderer. Fence yourself with the cherub’s spear of fire [see Gn 3:24], a watchful guardian, the perfection of every commandment. You were brought inside the door of Paradise, anchor your feet in the land of life lest you fall.

Scriptures provide the Church, represented by her members collectively, with the needed ax (see Mt 3:10) to cut down the tree of knowledge and reject its fruits. The tree of knowledge is a resilient poisonous tree, whose antidote are the scriptures. They are the expanded version of God’s commandment in Eden and provide the Church with the necessary tools to uproot the tree of knowledge from its midst. The individuals in the Church will be able to overcome their sins with the Fruit of life, the Word of God in the Bible. If their weakness is fornication or adultery, a fruit of the tree of knowledge, they should remember the passage in the scriptures that speaks against it. Is it the love of money? “Sell all your possessions and follow me.” Could it be gluttony? “The Son of Man does not live by bread alone.” What is also interesting is that Jacob of Sarug calls on his hearers to imitate

135. See Lv 19:18; Dt 6:5, 4:29, 10:12, 11:13, 13:4, 26:16, 30:2, 10; 1 Sm 7:3; 2 Kgs 23:3, 25; Mt 22:37-40; Mk 12:30-31; Lk 10:27; Jas 2:8.
the way Christ responded when he was tempted in the desert. Jesus used relevant scriptural passages to reject the evil lures of his tempter (see Mt 4:1-11). Consequently, the Church imitates her Lord by arming herself with his Word that the Scriptures she proclaims preserves.

4.3 The Church, Garden of Eden on Earth

Murray’s statement, “Paradise is the type, as well as the eschatological goal, of the Church,”137 rings true in the poetry of Jacob of Sarug. Jesus’s redeeming deeds achieve this eschatological dimension, which Adam’s return to the Garden of Delights implies. Jacob’s development of this paradisiacal return is independent of the book of Revelation, for it was not part of the Peshitta canon at the time of the bishop of Batnan. Moreover, it was not until the sixth century that it were translated into Syriac.138 Through his death and resurrection, the Son of God “opens the doors to the Garden [of Eden] for those expelled that they might return”139 to their inheritance. “He (Peter) perceived that the road to Eden is opened to her (the Church), and is restored that Adam might return to his inheritance.”140

The cherub fled and is no [longer] assigned to guard the Garden. The Garden is open. Come, mortals, enter the resurrection. Behold there are neither gates nor guardians of the Tree of Life. The thief had entered. Who would not be beautiful like the killer? The good and the bad, come, enter and eat from the Tree which scatters its fruits on those who are far and those who are near.141

The fiery angel guarding the gate and protecting the Tree of Life is no longer there, for the Lord restored and reopened the road back to Paradise,

---

whose gate is now wide open. The Garden points to the resurrection, and all
have now access to the Tree of Life. That is to say, all are called to the Church,
for the Tree of Life and its fruits are now within her.

The Son of God founds the Church on earth instead of Paradise and
reveals himself to be the true Tree of Life in her midst, thus making her the
Garden of Eden on Earth.

He established on earth the holy Church instead of Paradise.
and appointed priests to his service without [animal] sacrifices.
He revealed himself to be the Tree of Life that was hidden
and let his fruits drop on those who are near and those who are far.
Behold! Priests surround him, pick fruits from him
and give life to human beings from him daily.142

All those who are far and those who are near are invited to eat of the
fruits of the Tree of Life and live. As shown above, the Tree of Life is Jesus
Christ. The fact that the fruits refer his body and blood becomes obvious in
this citation. The priests surround the Tree of Life, pick its fruits, and gives
them to human beings.

Come, let us delight in the Word of the Son, which is full of life,
for its taste is better than honey in the comb.
The Tree of Life is our Lord, and it is bearing fruit.
Let us pick and eat from it a choice fruit.
We have eaten more than enough from the tree of knowledge.
The Tree of Life came to us, so let us eat of it.
Behold the sacred Paradise is the Church,
and the Tree full of life is the Holy Altar.143

The sacerdotal service can only be the Eucharistic celebration because
the Altar is the Tree of Life, and the Divine Liturgy takes place on it. This

Altar is also the good soil of Paradise, which sprouts the Tree of Life. Jesus commissions his Apostles and, accordingly, the priests coming after his first followers to serve the altar, celebrate on it the holy, angelic service, and distribute the fruits of the Tree for the salvation of humanity.

Christ, the benevolent Heir, who is altogether light, came and restored what was corrupted from the beginning. He granted the priesthood to his Twelve with the laying of his hands and appointed priests to the service of the tree of life. In splendor, with the gentle waving of the hands, and in holiness, behold, they (the priests) surround the tree of life at the Holy Altar. Priests were appointed to the office of the spiritual Seraphim, to which it had been proper to appoint Adam.

The Church learned this mystery neither from Melchizedek, who was the first and only one in the Old Testament to offer bread and wine as a sacrifice nor from anyone else but the Lord himself during the Last Supper. She was present at the table with him the night before his life-giving offering. Accordingly, she imitates him daily in the celebration of the Divine Liturgy.

The Daughter of the King did not receive types from the ancients, and it is [not because of them] that she breaks the bread of mysteries daily. In the upper room, she saw her Lord, who broke his body, and learned from him to do so daily as he showed her. Melchizedek did not teach the Church what to do, for she gazed at his Lord and daily does what he did. She did not receive the type from Moses, who was a man, but Jesus, who was God, taught her the mystery. Behold she is watchful over, carries it and glorifies in it, for it is the great sacrifice, which perfects the living and the dead.

---

144. The heavenly, angelic service of the angels is an image of the Eucharistic service in the Church.
The Son of God brings Adam and Eve to the Church, back to Paradise, and makes her priests responsible for their welfare and providing them the fruits of life. Jacob of Sarug supplies this image in his mimro on *The One Who Was Coming down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and Thieves Attacked Him* (مَجْرَةُ عَمْرَةُ ٌ وَجَرَبٍ ۡوَۡسَدٍ), a commentary on the parable of the Good Samaritan (see Lk 10:25-37). Jacob interprets the man falling victim to robbers as Adam, i.e., humankind, and the robbers as Satan and death. Furthermore, the priest and the Levite in the parable represent Moses and the prophets who could not help Adam out of his demise. Only the good One was able to heal humanity and bandage its wounds through oil and wine. Oil, a symbol of baptism, and wine, a symbol of blood, are applied by Christ.

147. See “HSJS II,” 312-333.
148. Ibid., 325:13-16.
149. Ibid., 325:21-326:3.
150. Ibid., 326:6-13.
the Good Samaritan,\footnote{Ibid., 326:14, 327:15-16.} to the wounds of humanity. Jacob of Sarug’s answer to “who is my neighbor?” is clear. My neighbor is Jesus Christ. Loving God means to love God the Father, and loving your neighbor denotes loving Jesus.\footnote{Ibid., 325:7-10.} Finally, the Good Samaritan takes the smitten man to the inn, i.e., the Church, that the innkeeper, the Church’s priests, continue caring for fallen Adam. Accordingly, Jesus Christ leads Adam and Eve to the Church, back to Paradise, that they might partake of the fruit of the Tree of Life.

The benevolent Physician made him a remedy of oil and wine, bandaged him with anointing and his blood, and the weak one got up. He carried the cast out, brought and placed him in the holy Church, the house of the community, in which every wounded is bandaged up. He gave the priest [his] body and blood that he would place [them] on his injuries, would provide for him who belongs to him, and he will heal him.\footnote{Ibid., 327:21-328:3.}

Baptism and the Eucharist are the means by which God makes present the deeds Christ accomplished on the cross. Furthermore, he heals humanity.

\begin{center}
\textit{He bandaged him up with ointment, an image of baptism, and poured wine, the chalice of his blood, on his wounds. The good physician prepared a remedy of ointment and wine for him, bandaged him with chrism and his blood, and the weak [Adam] arose.}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\textit{He came down from his place on high to Adam who had been severely wounded, had mercy [on him], and attended to his many injuries.}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\textit{Let us love the Father, who willed to send his Only-Begotten, and the Son, who endured suffering for our sake. Thus it was written, “Love God and your neighbor.” Your virtues comprise [the love of] the Father and the Son.}
\end{center}
through them, for Christ himself is their source. The Good Samaritan prepared the ointment on Golgotha symbolized here by baptism (oil/water) and blood. Jesus makes them available in the Church to smitten humanity. The priests are God’s stewards whose task is to continue the healing actions of Christ by providing God’s children with baptism and the Eucharist.

One leaving the Church is akin to Adam leaving Paradise. Jacob of Sarug exhorts his audience to run away from the tree of knowledge, and to eat from the Tree of Life, the Lord, thereby cautioning them against committing the error of Adam, who shunned Eden and enjoining them to stay within the walls of Paradise, the Church. The Son of God is the source of the mysteries of the Church.

Christ is the blessed fountainhead of Eden, along which all the teachers of the mysteries of the Church are planted [see Ez 47:12].

Take and eat the desired fruits from their branches.
Nourish yourself with their sayings and leaves.
The spear opened the well of life on Golgotha, and rivers flowed out of it to the whole world.
Blessed streams which flowed out irrigated the entire earth that it yield fruits, for it had been laid waste for a long time.
Be a planted tree standing along their streams and drink life and produce spiritual fruits.
You are inside the gate of that Paradise.
Do not go out outside, for death is waiting for you.
The snake that killed Adam outside of the gate [of Paradise] is holding the desire of this world in the likeness of fruits.

Let everyone flee the tree of knowledge and eat from the Tree of Life, our Lord.

---


Where the Tree of Life is, there is Paradise. The tree of knowledge and its fruit, the poison of the snake, are outside the Church, while the Tree of Life and its life-giving choice produce, the body and blood of the Son of God, are within the sanctuary of the Church. Jesus is the Tree of Life, his body and his blood are its fruits, and these are made available to all those within the Church. Therefore, the Church is the Garden of Eden, in whose midst the Tree of Life.

Behold our Lord, the Tree of Life carrying fruits. Come, let us pluck and eat from it the choice yield. More than enough have we eaten from the tree of knowledge. The tree of life came to us that we might eat from it. Behold the sacred Paradise is the Church, and the tree filled with life is the holy altar. The tree of knowledge is outside its gate, and the lovers of the world are daily plucking fruits from it.

4.4 The Chariot in Ezekiel's Vision

In the mimro On the Chariot That the Prophet Isaiah Saw (גנブא הַקְּרִיתֶה תַּקְּלִיתוֹ), Jacob of Sarug interprets the chariot in Ezekiel’s vision (see Ez 1, 10), upon which the Son of the Creator reigns, to be the place where Adam was and from which he fell. Furthermore, the event taking place around and inside the chariot is an image of the Divine Liturgy the Church celebrates, the burning coals refer to the Eucharistic species on the altar, the fruits of the

---


160. Ibid., 559:7-8.

The mind does not seek to contain but to marvel at the place on high, whose beauty Adam abandoned.
Tree of Life, and the angels represent the priests and the congregation. All these reasons connect to the Church the chariot in Ezekiel’s vision.

God does not turn his back on and abandon Adam after he fell, but brings him and his children back to Eden by the sacrifice of his Only-Begotten on Golgotha.\(^{161}\) This Eden, this spiritual Paradise, is located according to the bishop of Batnan where the chariot is. It is precisely there where the King’s table is already set up with good things.

The mind ponders that spiritual Paradise, the vision of the invisible Godhead.
Would that the mind remain there in great astonishment, for unless it comes down, it will not leave Paradise.
The One with powers over the universe, who, for his honor, yoked the cherubim:
the mind that was in Eden could have seen him, but it fell.
If it considers the chariot with the fearful visions, [it would realize that] it is the table of the King, full of choice produce for those reclining at it.\(^{162}\)

Ezekiel’s vision also speaks of a man dressed in linen, who goes within the wheelwork under the cherubim, fills both hands with burning coals from the place among the cherubim, and scatters them over the city (see Ez 10). Jacob asks why it was necessary for the man to fill his two hands with burning coal when he was altogether fire\(^{163}\) and the entire chariot was ablaze

\(^{161}\) Ibid., 578:11-12.
Both the captives of the Hebrews return to the land of Judah, and the captives of the family of Adam returns to Eden through the Son of God.

\(^{162}\) Ibid., 559:9-16.

\(^{163}\) Ibid., 594:1-6.
Ezekiel saw a man of fire wearing linen, for the linen itself was also out of that angel’s fire.
The spirit in the vision was called the man wearing linen in the fire. It (the linen) did not burn, for it was not [truly] linen.
and engulfed in flames. The burning coals could not just mean what the name implies. Hence, they must carry a hidden meaning.

That chariot was altogether fire, along with its components. Therefore, why were they known as burning coals of a different fire? Furthermore, when the fiery angel was able to drop burning coals from his fingers, how was it necessary that he would stretch out [his hands], take burning coals with the fiery palms, go out and scatter [them] as the Majesty commanded him?\(^{164}\)

This manifestation to the prophet would have been incomprehensible and devoid of meaning\(^{165}\) unless one interprets it in view of the Son of God.\(^{166}\) Accordingly, Jacob of Sarug proclaims that the entire scene of the chariot is a reflection of the divine liturgy celebrated by the Church on earth. The chariot is a representation of the sanctuary, in which the altar stands. Further, upon

---

He (Ezekiel) saw there the appearance of linen in the form of a man because he (the man) and his clothes entirely were of hot-burning coal by nature.\(^{164}\) \(^{165}\) \(^{166}\)

However, if God had not appeared as a man, Ezekiel would not have been renowned for these riches. They would not have said he had been allowed [access] to hidden [realities], nations would not have comprehended the scroll of his prophecy, his account would not have been spoken to the peoples of the world, and his vision would not have been praised in all ends [of the world]. Now, since the Son of God came into the world, behold Ezekiel is also praised because he had seen his mystery.

---

\(^{164}\) \textit{Ibid.}, 595:3-8.

\(^{165}\) \textit{Ibid.}, 584:7-14.

\(^{166}\) \textit{Ibid.}, 596:2-3.
this altar is the body of the Son, also called pearls, depicted as burning coals used for both retribution and forgiveness.

The pearls of his body are depicted as the burning coals of fire, the Godhead’s sanctuary, as the chariot.

[...]
The burning coals in the chariot depict his body and were set for retribution and forgiveness.167

The unique mystery of the Son brings heaven and earth together and allows for the interpretation of the chariot as the Church’s sanctuary and the events taking place in it as the Church’s liturgy.

[There are] holy burning coals of fire inside the chariot, and priceless pearls in the sanctuary. The body is on the altar, and a fire dwells on the chariot, for the mystery of the Only-Begotten is one above and below.168

Furthermore, the angel wearing linen entering the chariot is a type of the priest of the Church wearing the image of the Son of God accessing the altar area. The cherub giving the burning coal to the man in linen (see Ez 10:7) depicts the Holy Spirit, who, sent by God the Father, plays the intermediary between his sender and the priest. It is not the priest, but the Holy Spirit who sacrifices the Son on the altar, who breaks the body of the Son, and who distributes it to the whole world for the forgiveness of sins. Thus, the priest is the Holy Spirit’s hands on earth. Through the priest, the minister of the Church, God continues to offer this most precious fruit to the world. That speaks directly to the role of the second person of the Trinity in the Divine Liturgy. He is the one who transforms the bread and wine into the body and blood of Jesus Christ and gives them to the priest. Moreover, just as the

167. Ibid., 596:4-5, 8-9.

burning coal purified Isaiah\textsuperscript{169} (see Is 6:7), the burning coals extracted from the chariot, i.e., the body of the Son, and distributed by the priest remove the wickedness of the entire world. In the following quote, Jacob of Sarug expounds his interpretation on the interaction between the cherub and the angel in linen and on the meaning of the burning coals.

The angel wearing linen in the vision is a type of a priest putting on the image of the Son of God.
“He entered inside the chariot among the wheels,”
that is [an image] of a priest entering and singing the Trisagion in the Holy of Holies.
“The cherub handing out burning coals to the one outside:”
[that is meant] to let the priest know he is not in charge of the mercy-seat but the Holy Spirit. He exists between him and the Father, breaks, and gives the body of the Son to the priest that he go out and scatter it in the assembly on the righteous and sinners [see Mt 5:45] to judge and forgive the iniquity of the whole world.
The cherub inside of the chariot extended his hand and gave burning coals to the one there wearing linen.
Hence, he taught there that the Spirit is the one standing in the Holy of Holies, handing out the body to the priest that he distribute it.
The priest does not have the power to sacrifice the Only-Begotten and raise him, a sacrifice for sinners, before his (the Only-Begotten) Father.
However, the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father, descends, overshadows, and dwells in the bread, makes it the body [of the Only-Begotten], makes out of it precious pearls and dresses the souls betrothed to him (the Only-Begotten) in riches.
He (the Holy Spirit) allows the priest to break, then he (the priest) breaks it (the body) and goes out sprinkling them (the precious pearls) upon the sinners to justify them.
It is the Spirit inside who extends them (the precious pearls) to the priest outside like the cherub who extended them (the burning coals) to the man in his linen.
He takes from him the forgiving fire in the palms and goes out giving riches that set free the whole world.
These burning coals in the core of the chariot are the fire that was kindled to set on fire the briar of the earth.
For this reason, the angel was dressed in linen to depict one of our priests in his functions.

\begin{footnotes}
\footnotetext{169. \textit{Ibid.}, 596:10.}
\end{footnotes}
The angel had put a garment that does not belong among the angels to manifest a type that he depicted to terrestrial.
Also, the High Priest, whenever he entered the Holy of Holies, was commanded by the law to wear a linen garment.
For this reason, in the appearance of a great priest, the angel approached the chariot engulfed in fire and picked up burning coals that the cherub extended and gave to him.
Hence, the images of an altar, a priest, and the mercy-seat were depicted. The earth learned from the affair of the chariot all the mysteries of the Virgin Church and its ministers.
The angel dressed in linen and receiving the burning coals depicted a priest bringing to her (Church) pearls.
It is the Holy Spirit, secretly present in the treasury, who offers holiness to the priest to forgive the world, who breaks and places the body of the Son into the hands of the priest and distributes it among the crowds to the whole world.
The priests of the Nation wear linen in the Holy of Holies like the angel wearing linen in the chariot.
It is not the angel who took the type from the priest and dressed
[accordingly],
but it is the priest who imitated the angel.270

170. Ibid., 596:16-599:2.
Moses, before Ezekiel, saw and depicted these same mysteries of the Church manifested in the vision of the chariot. They predate both prophets because they are eternal. The reference in the case of the Moses is to the descent of the Almighty on Mount Sinai (see Ex 19), the altar of sacrifice (see Ex 20:24-26), and the tabernacle set up in the middle of the Israelites (see Ex 25:8, 26:1-30, 36:8-38). These are also reflected in the scene of the chariot. The chariot represents the altar of sacrifice, which is the main point of contact between the heavenly and terrestrial beings. The chariot on high is the meeting-place where the angels contemplate the ever invisible God, and the altar in the Church’s sanctuary is where humanity finds refuge and access to the heavenly mysteries through the slain lamb. The body of the Son of God found on the altar in the form of the burning coals above or in the bread and wine on the altar below gives life to both heavenly and earthly beings. It is the principle of life of all rational beings.

The chariot in which there are burning coals depicted the altar, and these burning coals are the forgiving body of the Son of God. The mysteries of the Lord were administered among the heavenly beings, and they descended through grace to be offered to earthly beings.

---

171. Ibid., 599:3-12.

Moses saw the complete image of these mysteries, descended, and depicted it as the tabernacle and its furnishings. Just as Moses saw them, so too Ezekiel saw these mysteries signified through the companions of the angels. The mystery of the Church precedes both Moses and Ezekiel, and the angels yearned to gaze at it. This deed which our Lord brought down to and performed on earth had been forever administered among the heavenly beings. They desired to gaze at these mysteries like the prophets who yearned to see the day of the Only-Begotten.

Neither the heavenly beings find life without it, nor the earthly beings can exist except by it. It is the breath of both the heavenly and earthly beings, and both angels and humans live by it. He offers his body to human beings to sanctify them, and the splendor of his glory to the angels to make them shine. They suck breath, life, and sweetness from it (the body of the Son): the angels above and humans below according to their limitations. He set up visible abodes in the heights and depths to dwell in them with heavenly and earthly beings that the heavenly beings have a meeting-place at the chariot and earthly beings a resting-place at the holy altar. The altar is the harbor in a turbulent, sea-like world that, when sinners are weary in this world, they rest in the harbor. From the roads, regions, and tempests the wearied come to him to rest at his table. The heavenly beings have the chariot as a meeting-place, and appear according to how they can gaze at him. The heavenly beings have the chariot as a meeting-place, and the breath that gives life to their legions comes out of it. He manifests himself to all the [angelic] orders in their realm and appears according to how they can gaze at him.

Hence, God established the chariot and the altar for the sake of the angels and human beings respectively. Without this meeting-place, the chariot, and this resting-place, the altar, neither the heavenly nor earthly beings could have had access to God. Since he did not wish to leave the dead behind, he also descended to them that they see his glory. God meets everyone exactly where they are and reveals himself to them the way they are capable of doing so that no one may be deprived of his grace.

---


He (the Son) established an altar on earth for corporeal beings and became flesh that they eat from it in their dwelling place. He went down in the flesh to another place under the earth, where not even a word could reach there to be spoken. The dead saw his Shekinah there in the manner they saw that not even they might be deprived of his grace.175

Ezekiel wakes up from his trance. Although the vision is no longer, it remains vivid in his mind. What he saw is certainly unreal and pales in comparison to the real place.176 If this event does not take place on the Chariot, then where?177 The chariot and the activities happening on it are a depiction of a real place where the ever-hidden God178 reveals himself in such a way suitable for human beings. Stupefied,179 Ezekiel wonders where to find this majestic place of the Godhead,180 which must be more impressive than that of his vision.181 Jacob of Sarug gives the answer to the question he put on Ezekiel’s lips, “In the mysteries of the Bride, betrothed to sufferings, behold those heavenly hymns are sung!”182
The Church is the place that is more majestic than the chariot Ezekiel saw. According to the bishop of Batnan, Ezekiel does not have to wonder any longer, for the place he was searching for is the Church adorned by her altar and the body and blood of the Son of God set on it. It is not an illusionary spot located somewhere up in the skies and accessed by a few such as Ezekiel but a real location on Earth to which all have access. In fact, all are invited to come to the feast of the Lamb.

Do not seek him above, sinner, whenssoever you search for him.
He has come to you. Gaze at him in your place, for, behold, he is with you.
He invited you to the altar that you see him, for he rests upon the table, and from the crumbs of his body the whole creation is sated.\footnote{Ibid., 606:3-6.}

The real presence of Jesus Christ in the Eucharistic species is what makes the Church the actual meeting place between God and human beings. The angels in Ezekiel’s vision are a reflection of the earthly angels, i.e., God’s people on earth. The body and blood of the Son contain the entire wealth of heaven, for Jesus Christ dwells in the bread and wine offered at the altar.

During the celebration of the Divine Liturgy, the chariot’s scene in Ezekiel’s vision plays out on the altar. Jacob of Sarug connects the event taking place in the sanctuary back to the four rivers of Paradise (see Gn

\footnote{Ibid., 607:13-20.}
2:10-14). However, instead of the dried out rivers of Pishon, Gihon, Tigris, and the Euphrates, the body of the Son and his blood become now the only and main fountainhead from which gushes out living waters to irrigate the whole world.

Behold the body of the Son of God is placed on the [altar] table, and spiritual hosts surround it. Splendiferously, they stand, trembling, and serve it with those below lest it may not be honored. The altar is set up instead of the heavenly chariot, and on it (the altar), the One, of whose glory heaven is full, is exalted. These burning coals in the core of the chariot are divided on the [altar] table for the whole world. The priest stands instead of the man wearing linen, comes out and scatters Pearls on the needy. One of the heads of the hosts stands by him and extends, through the Holy Spirit, bread for the priest to break. He brings out from the house of the Father incomprehensible riches that the whole needy, destitute world be enriched. Rivers of living waters pour forth on earth from the Fountainhead which the spear opened on Golgotha.185

Consequently, the whole earth - if not the entire universe - is, in the theological worldview of Jacob of Sarug, God’s Eden.

A new well sprung up from you on Golgotha, and the entire earth became God’s Eden due to its irrigation. They bore into you as if into a mountain and issued out from you one fountainhead which gave life to the whole world.186

185. Ibid., 608:6-21.

4.5 The Key to the Garden of Eden

The keys in question are the ones Jesus gave to Peter (see Mt 16:19) and carry the power of "loosing and binding." The Syriac Fathers see the apostolic authority connected to the meaning of the keys in general terms and apply it not only to Peter and the Apostles (see Mt 18:18) but all Catholic bishops as well. They are also key-bearers. Aphrahat and Cyrillona understand these keys as a sign of pastoral responsibility and episcopal authority, while Ephrem interprets them as a symbol of transmission of that authority. Furthermore, the expression of "loosing and binding" refers more to baptism and less to forgiveness of sins (see Mt 18:19; Jn 20:23). The bishop of Batnan subscribes to these interpretations and expands on them. The keys in Mt 16:19 are the pivot which he used in showing the unicity and continuity of the Old and New Testament message. Moreover, They have both sacramental and eschatological implications.

4.5.1 Transferral of the Key

Jacob of Sarug’s exegesis of the Transfiguration (see Mt 17:1-9; Mk 9:2-10; Lk 9:28-36) presents itself as an appropriate starting point to unfold his

---

187. See “ASPD I.1,” 965:14-17 (Syriac), 966 (Latin).
understanding of the keys. In the mimro on *The Transfiguration of Our Lord on Mount Tabor and on Moses and Elijah, Who Were Conversing with Him* (ܒܟܢܡܐ ܡܠܟܐ ܳܐܬܒܚܬܐ ܕܒܚܬܐ ܬܒܚܬܐ) the bishop of Batnan portrays the prophets, Moses and Elijah, as key-bearers passing the keys to the apostles, John and Peter, respectively.

Now, why was it necessary for these servants of the King to come to talk to him? How and why did they come? He (Jesus) wanted to join to the first the second to make them equal that the Gospel mingle with the Torah and prevail on earth. He wanted to assign the keys of Moses to John to allow him (John) to write “in the beginning” [see Gn 1:1; Jn 1:1] spiritually. The son of Zebedee substituted the son of Amram that he too become a great scribe for the hidden mysteries of the Godhead. He gave the power that Elijah had to Simon that he “loose and bind” [see Mt 16:19] in a solemn manner as a steward. He wanted to join the followers of Moses those of Simon to make the latter together with the former worthy of his message. He wanted to change stewards. Therefore, he summoned them that the old [stewards] give the keys to the young [stewards]. He wanted to honor those who properly labored with him and give the others an exalted position and work of righteousness. He relieved Mose, put John to work, set free Elijah and summoned Simon to “loose and bind” [see Mt 16:19]. He wanted to confirm his New Testament. Thus, he summoned his Father’s old servants that they subscribe [it]. He called the apostles and summoned the prophets, [thus] making them equal to manifest the one teaching of truth to the whole world. He mingled the latter with the former that the earth might be aware that he is the Lord of both the last and first [stewards]. He summoned the wisest, choicest, and most exalted [figures] from the Old Testament that they witness to the teaching of the New Testament. He wanted to retire the law that was in the hand of Moses, so he called him that he entrust the truth to Simon and then leave.194

192. Zebedee was the father of James and John (see Mt 20:20; Mk 10:35).
193. Amram was the father of Aaron, Moses and Miriam (see Ex 6:20; Nm 26:59; 1 Chr 23:13).
The key is the message handed over by the old stewards, the prophets, to the new stewards, the apostles. Even if the biblical scene of the Transfiguration portrays no transferral of keys between the prophets and the apostles, Jacob of Sarug retells the scriptural account as if such an account had taken place, thereby emphasizing the continuity between the Old and New Testaments and stressing the unicity of the transmitted message. For this reason, he presents the prophets on equal footing with the apostles. Moses and Elijah sign the New Testament to confirm its trustful message. A new era has begun with this handing over. Jesus changed stewards to retire the law. The apostles replacing the worthy and exalted prophets is a clear allusion that has begun with this handing over. Jesus changed stewards to retire the law. And the Synagogue. Needless to say, the key, the message, remains unchanged. The keys are also a symbol of authority and transmission of that authority. The keys in Moses’s possession authorized him to write down the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Hebrew Bible. Moses passing down his keys to John is Jacob of Sarug’s way of showing the transmission of the scribal authority from Moses to John. Owing to the keys he received from Moses, John becomes a scribe for the house of God and writes in the manner of Moses, i.e., authoritatively. The phrase “In the beginning” found at the start of both Genesis (see Gn 1:1), ascribed to Moses, and the Gospel according to John (see Jn 1:1), ascribed to John, allowed the bishop of Batnan to make this
connection between Moses and John. The keys, therefore, are a symbol of authority and its transmission. The image of Elijah transferring his keys to Peter leads to the same interpretation. Elijah passes down his power to “loose and bind” to Peter. The meaning of the expression “loosing and binding” in this context is connected to dominion over the Creation: the keys made Elijah master over created things and authorize Peter to be the same. Jesus “called Elijah and associated him with Simon, the head of the disciples, that the keys he (Simon) received establish him over the Creation.” Nevertheless, the meaning of “loosing and binding” remains veiled. Having recourse to Jacob’s other mimre, one can get a better sense of this phrase, whose meaning will be explored shortly.

That the keys stand for the message, its continuity and unicity, and for authority and its transfer can also be drawn from Jacob’s exegesis of the Biblical account of the Visitation (see Lk 1:39-45). He presents an old, feeble Elisabeth transferring her keys to a young, vibrant Mary.

The old woman put down the keys of the course of time she was holding that the girl might take them and be honored by her actions. The Good News approached and relieved the Torah of a burden, to bring riches to the poor, destitute earth. Hitherto, the prophets handed down and brought the great treasure, and they rested that it enter the world at the hands of the apostles. The wearied ship of prophecy, carrying the mysteries, reached our Lord like [arriving] at a peace-laden harbor. The merchants of apostleship entered, took from there the riches to the nations, came out and distributed [them] throughout the regions. The New Testament approached the Old Testament literally that one be attached to the other like plants. Lest his teaching be considered another beginning, the Son of God tied it to the heel of prophecy that one true teaching might exist in prophecy and apostleship without change.

---


196. On the role of Scriptures in the writing of Jacob of Sarug, see Bou Mansour, “Théologie I,” 197-201.

The Good News approaching the Torah makes Mary and Elizabeth representatives of the New and Old Testaments respectively, and the wife of the priest Zechariah symbolizes the prophets, while the mother of Jesus the apostles, the Church. Luke does not mention a key in his account of the Visitation (see Lk 1:39-45), yet Jacob of Sarug imagines a transfer of a key to highlight also the end of the old and beginning of the new. This handing down is shown by the Gospel relieving the Torah of its burden. The Good News replaces the Law. That is to say that the Law does not save, but the Good News does. The trustworthy, exalted prophets transfer a great treasure, i.e., the veiled mystery of the Lord, to the apostles, who, in turn, share the Gospel of Jesus Christ with the nations. Prophecy and apostleship preach the one and same truth: the Son of God, Jesus Christ, shines in and enlightens the world. The transfer of the keys also means the transmission of authority from the prophets to the apostles, both of whom are key-holders and have the power to preach the message entrusted to them.

As pointed out above, Elijah passed his authority to “loose and bind” to Peter, which means that both are masters over the Creation. Before Elijah, however, Moses had the keys in his possession and was, accordingly, endowed with the authority enjoyed by Elijah. Moses used it to control nature for the benefit of God’s people. He parted the waters of the sea (see Ex 14:10-22), provided the hungry Israelites with manna and quails (see Ex 16), and the thirsty Nation with water gushing out of the rock (see Ex 17:1-7), “for
the great key to the entire Creation (مَكَالُ‌ّا نَّا مَكَالُ‌ّا) was placed in his hands." 198

In the sense of “loosing (أُهْمِعُ) and binding (أُهْمِعُ)” Jacob also uses the expression “opening (مَكَالُ‌ّا) and closing (مَكَالُ‌ّا).” The latter expression is synonymous with the former. The key-holder has the authority to control the Creation as in the case of Elijah and Elisha. The master passes his key to his apprentice.

He (Elisha) was shining on account of the Lord who dwelt in him and did not stumble because he was journeying as if during the day. The man was exalted in the sacred riches from the treasure which his master (Elijah) gave him while he was ascending. The great key (مَكَالُ‌ّا) that opens (مَكَالُ‌ّا) and closes (مَكَالُ‌ّا) the Creation he (Elisha) took to be a steward of the house of God. 199

While ascending into heaven, Elijah drops his mantel, which Elisha picks up as a symbol of transfer and reception of authority from the teacher to the disciple. Using this mantel, both Elijah and Elisha were able to strike and divide water (see 2 Kgs 2:1-14) just as Moses did before them (see Ex 14:10-22). The key symbolizes the mantel transferred from Elijah to Elisha. It grants its holders power over the Creation and makes them stewards of the house of God. Elisha’s oil miracle (see 2 Kgs 4:1-7) is a case in point. The key does not make its holder a supreme sovereign over the Creation but its steward. Created things obey the key-holder according to its nature.

Elisha received the great key (مَكَالُ‌ّا) of Elijah to open (مَكَالُ‌ّا) and close (مَكَالُ‌ّا) the Creation as a steward, By that power by which the horn welled up in the house of the widow, 200

199. Ibid., 271:22-272:5.
200. According to the biblical story of 1 Kgs 2:8-14, Elijah does not give a key to Elisha. The latter picked up the mantle which had fallen as Elijah was taken up to heaven. The mantle, to which Jacob of Sarug refers as the great key of Elijah, gave Elisha power to divide the water, which is an example of what the bishop of Batnan calls to open and close the Creation.
the jug of oil was blessed that its oil increase [see 2 Kgs 4:1-7].
His master taught him, and the Lord granted him to command
the Creation, which obeys him according to its nature.201

The saying “to loose and to bind” also refers to having access to God’s
treasury of blessings, which Jacob of Sarug’s interpretation of the account of
Isaac blessing Jacob and Esau (see Gn 27) shows. Again, the biblical account
lacks the mentioning of keys.

The old man (Isaac) was contented and began blessing fervently.
He opened his treasury to distribute out of it all treasures.
He laid hold of God, the great key of the entire Creation,
to open with it the height and depth to give the blessing.202

Esau, cheated of his rightful inheritance, recognizes the meaning of the
key in his father’s possession and begs his father to give him the same share
of blessings he granted his brother, Jacob. Unable to do so, Isaac uses the key
to open the treasury of mercy through which Esau entered.

He (Esau) cried before his father while saying to him “Bless me, father,
for you do not just have one blessing. Father, if you wish,
your word contains great riches. Wish and bless me.
There is [enough] in your treasury to give me also just like [you gave] Jacob.
The key of [the treasury of] all blessings (مَكْنَى [مَا حَّةَةٌ]) is in your
possession. If you desire,
open it, bring me out riches found in you.”
Isaac saw that Esau was painfully supplicating.
Therefore, he opened the door of mercy that he (Esau) might enter through
it.203
In summary, God’s chosen people had in its possessions these keys. The bishop of Batnan accuses the Israelites of not grasping what they had even though they were the “Interpreters of the Truth, writers of verses, hearers of the prophets, holders of scriptures, receivers of the keys (مَحْفُوظٌ ﻟَا ﻳَدَخُلُوا ﻣَهْدَا ﻟَوْلا ﺝُيَدَا), and openers of treasuries.”

4.5.2 Peter, the Apostles, and the Key

It is true that Jesus “gave him (Peter) the keys of the height and depth [see Mt 16:19] because of his (Peter’s) love [see Jn 21:15-19].” Thereby Christ made him the foundation and steward of the house, he grants him power “to loose and to bind.”

“To you, I shall give the keys to my kingdom,” he (Jesus) promised him (Simon)
that he be both the foundation and the steward of the house.
“If you bind on Earth, it will also be bound in heaven,
and if you loose on Earth, it will be loose in heaven.”

This author could not find a reference in the writings’ of the bishop of Batnan that substantiates the association of the key to a papal privilege or synodal authority. Therefore, he disagrees with Krüger, who seems to have understood the key as a symbol of papal primacy in today’s Catholic understanding,

Only [emphasis added] Peter has the keys of the heights and the depths to the house which represents the Church. The one with the keys is lord. Therefore, Peter is the master of the earthly and heavenly Church; the members of the struggling, suffering, and victorious Church are bound to the Petrine authority of the keys” (Translation mine).


206. Ibid., 479:14-482:2.


Krüger’s claim that only Peter had the keys to the heights and the depths to the house which represents the Church could be argued against, for Moses, Elijah, and John possessed a key. Moreover, Christ also gave, for example, the good thief a key which allowed him access into the Garden of Eden.209

The previous section showed that Peter does not have a monopoly on the keys, for, long before him, Isaac, Moses, Elijah and Elisha also had them in their possessions. These keys are associated with their gift of prophecy God granted them. These prophets too had the power to “loose and bind,” or “open and close.” Moreover, Peter, whose keys were in Elijah’s possession, was not the only apostle with a key. For instance, John received his keys from Moses (see above). Without exception, all the apostles received in fact keys. Jesus “enjoined them as faithful [disciples] to say who he is, for the key of the treasury of the house of God was in their [emphasis added] possession.”210 The Apostles also have authority above and below. Just in the case of the prophets, the Lord Jesus is the source of this privilege. Jesus “gave power to apostleship in the height and depth that it be authoritatively commanding above and below.”211 Since this power is closely connected to the keys, it was logical for the Syriac Fathers, including Jacob of Sarug, to interpret the giving of the keys in general terms. Therefore, Peter and the Apostles are holders of keys, and, by extension, their successors, all catholic bishops. Moreover, they are the stewards of the house that represents the Church. Jacob of Sarug imagines Jesus addressing them saying.

Zu dem Hause, das die Kirche darstellt, hat Petrus allein die Schlüssel der Höhe und der Tiefe. Wer die Schlüssel hat, ist der Herr. So ist Petrus der Herr der irdischen und der himmlischen Kirche, die Mitglieder der streitenden, leidenden und der triumphierenden Kirche sind an die Schlüsselgewalt Petri gebunden.

209. See below The Good Thief and the Key, 215.
211. Ibid., 480:2-3.
Stewards, open the treasury which you administer, bring [treasures] out of it, and give to the needy who came to you. O disciples, you possess the keys, so bring out riches and distribute gratis to the poor place and its inhabitants. It is not necessary for the crowds to leave your presence [see Mt 14:16]. Give them from that treasure which you administer.212

As stewards, the Apostles, headed by Peter, have the responsibilities of taking care of the Church. Jacob of Sarug is less interested in addressing the issue of governance of the institutional Church and more concerned about her sacramental mysteries which find their symbol in the keys. The Apostles are tasked with sharing Christ with the world by baptizing and distributing the Eucharist. This quotation provides the springboard for addressing the Eucharistic theme first. It is taken from Jacob’s minro on The Five Loaves of Bread and the Two Fish (213) (see Mt 14:13–21; Mk 6:30–44; Lk 9:10-17 and their parallels Mt 15:32-39; Jn 6:1–14). The poor place concerns the one where Jesus received and fed the crowd who followed him (see Lk 9:11). The treasury and its content mean Christ himself.

You, Lord, are the great riches and the full treasury [...] Yours are all the hidden riches of the Father [...] All that the heavenly Father has is yours, Lord [...] From the incomprehensible riches of your hidden Father give to the needy who affectionately keep close to you. Your riches are in you. How much you give, you remain the same.214

The Apostles, the stewards, administer this treasury and are called to distribute gratis the riches it contains. They misunderstood Jesus when he

213. Ibid., 425:4,6,8, 16-18.
214. Ibid., 425:4,6,8, 16-18.
said to them, “There is no need for them (the crowds) to go away. Give them some food yourselves” (Mt 14:16), for “Our Lord spoke to his disciples according to the spirit, yet they heard according to the flesh because they were weak.” Christ was not referring to earthly bread but the heavenly bread, the Eucharist.

He said to them to give bread to the crowds, and they responded like the destitute, “We do not have [bread]” [see Jn 6:7]. Although they had him, they did not know whom they had because they were like infants. They were not aware of whom they had. The heir from whom the riches of his Father is hidden is an infant (Jesus). Although his treasury was theirs, they did not know where it is. The disciples were like children to our Savior, for he put in their possession all riches, but they were unaware [of it]. He made them carry the keys of his treasury as trustworthy [stewards], but they did not enter to explore his treasures and [find out] how rich he is.

One of the responsibilities of the key-bearers is to administer the Eucharist and all the other mysteries of the Church, that is the meaning behind “the entire treasury of his Father dwelt in their hands.” At that time the Apostles did not comprehend the extent of Christ’s request to give bread to the crowds. After Pentecost, however, they understood that the entire riches of the Father’s treasury was in their possession and at their disposal.

After he ascended and the [Holy] Spirit came to the disciples, then they became aware of how much riches there was in their hands. They had incomprehensible hidden riches, and the entire treasury of his Father dwelt in their hands. If the Apostles had not possessed a lot, he would not have said to them to give to the hungry.

---

215. Ibid., 440:10-11.
216. Ibid., 440:12-21.
218. See Acts 2:1-13
Since they possessed [riches], the Omniscient enjoined them to give bread to the hungry who had come to them.  

One can conclude that the hungry crowds who came to them are a symbol of hungry humanity in need to nourished by the body and blood of Christ at the hands of the key-bearers, including priests. In another mimro Jacob of Sarug refers to priests as carriers of the keys of the Godhead and as such are also authorized to “loose and bind.” Here is what Jacob had to say at a priest’s funeral.

The one who carried the keys of the Godhead (مَكِنْتُمَا مَكِنَّتُوْهَا) with his hand, and the thief, the tyrant death, entered, stole him and got out.
The one who bound and loosed heaven and earth with his word, his corpse is thrown among the departed in the place of death.

The keys and its associated meaning of “loosing and binding” also refer to the privilege of administering the mystery of baptism. Jacob of Sarug criticizes the priests or bishops who love money and associate them with another thief and money-lover (see Jn 12:6), Judas Iscariot, the betrayer of Jesus (see, for example, Lk 6:16; Mk 3:19; 14:10). Jacob speaks of them as key-holders with authority to open and close the gate of baptism and sacrifice the Son before his Father on the Altar. The bishop of Batnan insinuates that they also hold Peter’s key, which aligns itself with the foregoing: the Apostles, bishops, and priests carry keys just like Peter.

[The clergy] opens and closes the door of baptism but does not want another treasure except this one [i.e., money].
He looses and binds above and below divinely.
[...]
The disciple [Judas] carries the keys of Simon, along with mammon [see Jn 12:6],

---


although he had been instructed to hold not even a staff [see Mt 10:10].
He sacrifices the Son before his Begetter on the altar-table [...] 221

To baptism is attached the missionary activities of the key-holder. They
are called to be fishers of men like Peter. “You, [Peter], are holding the keys.
Throw the net aside, for it is not for you. Go and fish for men [...]” 222

Those entrusted with the keys could lose them. A contrite heart is the
way to regain them. Judas Iscariot, for example, lost his keys when he
betrayed Jesus and did not regain them because he did not repent. Contrary
to Judas, Peter, although he too denied the Lord, won the keys he lost back,
for he was filled with remorse. Jesus “gave him (Peter) back his keys, which
he lost when he denied him (see Lk 22:54-62; Jn 15:18-27),” 223 for Peter “shed
tears [see Lk 22:62]. Therefore, he remained unaltered in his office, carrying
the keys, the name, and the superintendence.” 224

4.5.3 The Church and the Key

In Peter’s receiving the keys (see Mt 16:18-19), Jacob of Sarug sees the
Church holding the keys and given the authority to loose and bind. She
recognizes her Lord to be Christ, the Son of the living God (see Mt 16:16), for
the Father had revealed him to her (see Mt 16:17). These keys, which open all
the dwelling places in the Father’s heavenly adobe, made her the mistress of
all that is in heaven and earth.

The rich One betrothed the daughter of the poor, wrote her under his name,
and gave her the keys that she might be the mistress of all his possessions.
He entrusted her with the riches of the depth and treasure of the height

224. Ibid., 529:8-9.
that she be mistress who is not commanded above and below.
He despised her kind. That she do not think that he despises her,
he left all his keys in her hands because he loved her tremendously.
He allowed her to open all the doors which his Father possesses [see Jn 14:2]
that she see and rejoice, and her heart rejoice how rich she is.
He made her the mistress of the heavenly and mortal beings
that the height and depth obey her according to their kinds.
The good heir saw that she loves him [see Jn 21:15-19] and does not turn
aside.
He immediately gave her his treasures and their keys.
Even if her race is poor and wretched, and her lineage indigent,
he gave her his keys because he saw her fidelity
[...]
The high gates of the heavenly Holy of Holies
he authorized her to open because he saw her loved by his Father.
He saw the father granting [her] a revelation as a necklace,
so he gave [her] a ring full of keys to concur with the Father.
He saw that his begetter loves the glorious one. Thereby, he brought out and
gave her the keys and goods of the entire house.
There was a secret between him and his Father, and since he saw that
the Father revealed it to the Church, he immediately made her the mistress of
his house.
The Bridegroom saw that the Father gave the bride his name,
and wanted to do the will of the Father, who loved her tremendously.
He saw that she received it (his name) from the house of the Father by that
revelation.
For this reason, he gave her the keys of the great riches and the entire
treasury.
The Father loved her because she loved his Only-Begotten,
and his First-born accepted her, for he saw that his Father loves her dearly.  

225. Ibid., 480:4-17, 481:1-14.
Jacob identifies the key with the mystery of the Lord, which opened a road in the sea, brought forth torrents of rivers out of the rock, and sent down food to feed the multitudes.

Your mystery, [O] Lord, split open opaque things and demands praise from the mute creation.

It is the key that split open a road in the sea for the multitudes and made a pass through the raging sea for the great Nation.226

It (the key) split the rock, brought forth torrents of rivers,227 and sent down food from the clouds to the crowds [see Ex 16:4-36].228

Furthermore, the bishop of Batnan identifies the Lord as the Key that satisfied the thirst of the Nation in the wilderness, provided Samson with a drink out of dried up bones, fed the widow at the time of famine. The same Key granted sight to the blind, hearing to the deaf and speech to the mute, for he is the Lord of the Creation and it obeys him.

Who, [O] Lord, made an opening in the rock in the wastes, and from it gushed out rivers to the great Nation [see Ex 17:1-7]? Who [broke] open the dried bone which Samson held, and brought out of it fresh drink for the thirsty [see Jgs 15:19]? Who opened the jug and the horn in the widow’s house, and they gave miraculously aplenty at a time of famine [see 1 Kgs 17]? You open all closed doors: they eyes of the blind, the ears of the deaf, and the mouth of the mute. The blind that he see, the deaf that he hear, and the mute that he speaks [...] because you are the Key which opens the whole Creation.229

227. See Ex 17:1-7; Nm 20:11; Ps 78:15–16; Wis 11:4; 1 Cor 10:4.
The Lord, who made Paul temporary blind, gave the key to Ananias to open Paul’s eyes. Jesus “imprisoned his (Paul’s) vision, placed a lock on the face of his eyes [see Acts 9:1-9], and gave Ananias the key that he should open it (the lock) [see Acts 9:10-19].”230 In Jesus’s name, Peter healed the lame (see Acts 3:6), who did not see the keys that the head of the Apostles carried and that “open and close” the Creation divinely.”231 Nothing lacks the Son, for he is the heir. As such, all belongs to him, and the key of the Father’s treasury is in his possession. He is free to distribute his riches to all who asks.

The poor took the gratuitous treasure from the rich One, who rejoices tremendously in giving daily to those who ask of him. The key to the entire treasure that the Father has is with him. Enter and knock, for he is the one who seeks and responds to those who call upon him. His door is open, and he grants daily all petitions. Consequently, the Son of God is the Key of Creation, who gave himself to his Church and granted her power on earth and in heaven. He is the keys she received. The keys that “loose and bind” and that “open and close” the Creation are none other than Jesus Christ himself! His people possessed him since the beginning, and he continues to be among them. Accordingly, the keys represent the Lord in the midst of the Church.

The Key is a symbol of Jesus Christ, the Church’s most valuable treasure. His being in her midst grants her power to rule authoritatively above and below. Here on earth, she has the authority placed in the hands of the apostles. Their authority to lay on hands ensures that the Key will be

---

232. Ibid., 689:2-7.
handed over to future generations. Furthermore, priests are established for distributing the riches of God’s treasury, i.e., the Eucharist.

Since the Son of God gave his Apostles the laying on of hand[s], the Bride was enriched, and behold she held her head up over the entire earth. The Daughter of Lights carries the keys of above and below, and binds and looses authoritatively both above and below. She subjugated the Evil One and also ran on the billows of the sea. With Simon’s hands, she held the ends and limits [of the world].

The Son of God appointed priests to the service of the Bride, which he betrothed, as stewards of his treasures, and riches issued forth from his treasury at their hands that the entire Creation might be enriched. Glory to him!

Jesus makes the Church God’s Eden on earth, for he is the Tree of Life standing in her midst, the fountainhead of Eden, that waters her, the keys received by Peter and transferred to the priests that opened the doors of life to the entire world.

They glorify him in the Church, God’s Eden, and give the fruits of the Tree of Life to the whole world. The priests stand at the blessed fountainhead of Eden and irrigate from it the entire creation that thirsts for him. They hold the keys (مكتبة) which the head of the disciples received and open the doors of life that the whole world enter. They take up plain bread to the altar while reciting [prayers] and bring down from it an Immolated Body that the Church eat from it. They pour wine of vines in chalices in the Holy of Holies,

233. The above translation differs from Albert’s, “(Toute) vêtue, elle soumit la mer, courut même sur (ses) flots; Grâce à Simon, elle prit possession des rivages et de leurs domaines.” See Albert, “Minimro Inédit,” 65:169.

234. By exchanging حسبا for حسبا, Albert translates, “... un homme puissant ...” See Ibid., 65:171. This substitution is not necessary, for the word steward (بائع) refers to priests although it is in the singular. The Son of Man appoints the priests as stewards of his treasures.

235. Ibid., 65 (French), 76:165-77:174 (Syriac).

236. Reading. The copy of the Syriac text provided by Albert reads حسبا, presented Albert with difficulties. She states that the verse lacks one syllable-count. To resolve the issue, she altered the problematic word.
and it becomes blood to pardon the entire world.237

Christ’s presence is not wishful thinking but a reality. He is fully present in the bread that becomes the Immolated Body and in the wine that becomes blood. By giving her his Eucharistic body, he gives her his entire self. His Eucharistic blood means that he is alive in her midst although she saw him hung on a tree. They satiate the Church and quench her thirst for life, since Jesus Christ, the crucified Son of God, is wholly in the midst of the Church and fully alive.

4.5.4 The Good Thief and the Key

With God’s banishment of Adam and Eve from his garden the gate to Eden was permanently closed (see Gn 3:23-24) — or at least it seemed so. Adam transgressed God’s commandment, left Paradise and locked the gate behind him. The cherubim and the fiery revolving sword were placed to guard the Tree of Life and to hinder Adam’s return if he tries. Unless the Son of God opens the gate to Eden, no power on earth or in heaven could even come near it. For this reason, the Cherub was surprised to see the repentant thief attempting to enter Paradise, a theme found in Jacob’s mimro on The Cherub and the Thief (חפץ חפץ חפץ חפץ).238

and suggested that it should be read as either וָ֔חֲפָ֔ז (absolute state) or מָ֔חֲפָ֔ז (emphatic state), which mean: price, hire, or ransom. See “TS II,” 915-916; “CSD,” 94. Accordingly, she translates the verse as follows, “Au temple, le vin des vignes, dans des coupes de prix (חפץ בְּצֵן בְּצֵן) OR [emphasis mine] Deviendra du sang, pour que par lui, soit purifié le monde entier.” See Albert, “Mimro Inédit,” 63:133 and footnote 81. There is, however, another more fitting reading. By changing הָחֲפָ֔ז for חוֹחֲפָ֔ז the syllable count is preserved and a verb, which the first hemistich seems to lack and need, provides an appropriate context. Therefore, the suggested alteration reads, “They pour wine of vines in chalices in the Holy of Holies and it becomes blood that the entire world be pardoned by it.”

237. Ibid., 62-63 (French), 74:125-134 (Syriac).

238. See “HSJS V,” 658-687.
The angel said, “Until he comes, you shall not enter, and the road of life shall not be trodden unless I see him. Adam left, and the lock he fastened cannot be opened until the Lord of Adam comes, for he can open it. You, a man of blood, are not able to enter Eden, for the place is pure and shall not be defiled by your footsteps. How is it that the angels do not see him, for is hidden from all, yet he sends you, a man, to a pure place?”

Jacob of Sarug imagines a fiery fortification built around the garden of Eden. The fiery guard at the gate is fearful looking and warns the thief from attempting to enter. Unaware of the conversation between Jesus and the thief crucified at his right, the angel further instructs the intruder that the gate is locked and no one except the king can get the key which is inside and without which it is impossible to get in.

Eden’s wall is of fire [see Gn 3:24] and cannot be broken through. The King sealed the strong lock, so it cannot be opened. Behold the key is inside of the kingdom, and who can bring it out? Moreover, the fortification is of fire, and you cannot make an opening through the wall. The tooth of fire is blazing and dreadful. If you dare [to break through], a weak chip [this tooth] will consume your feebleness.

The Evangelist Luke narrates of a thief crucified on the right of Jesus who repents. In contrast to Jesus’s disciples who abandoned their master at the cross, the robber clung to him and professed his belief in Christ. “And when the disciples avoided the Master, and he remained by himself, this one

239. Ibid., 676:20-677:5.

240. Ibid., 674:1-6.

241. See Ibid., 677:10-680:17. Jacob of Sarug portrays the repentant thief as the only person who professed his faith in Christ on the cross, whereas everyone else, including all his disciples and all the angels, abandoned him. No one dared to come near him, not even Mary, his mother. Trembling and afraid, they all watched from afar this horrible event.
(the good thief) adhered to him while supplicating mournfully,” saying, “Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom” (see Lk 23:33-43). This petition the criminal uttered before breathing his last opened the gate of mercy when Jesus assured a dying Adam that he would rejoice with him in his kingdom today. Jacob of Sarug imagines a longer conversation between the innocent, pure, unblemished Son of Man on the cross and the guilty, defiled, blemished man.

Amen, Amen, I say to you, be assured that you will rejoice with me in [my] kingdom today.
Since your tongue sang a hymn of praise among the faithless, you shall take delight in the banquet of life with Abraham.243
Since your lamp glared out of the thick darkness [see Mt 25:1-13], you shall shine brightly in the bridal chamber of life with the heavenly beings.
Since your ears have heard the troubling voices of scoffers, I shall comfort you with shouts of joy of the children of light.
Since you rejected the company of Caiaphas’s people, the defiled priests, I shall put on you the Robe of Light in the exalted wedding chamber.
Take the key of light (مَكْحَيْلاً مَكْحَيْلاً), reach the Garden of delights, and prepare the way for the King of light, whom the Nation rejected.
Ride on fire, travel on the blazing road, step on the abyss filled with fire, and do not be terrified.
Proceed without delay, reach the orders of the heavenly beings, make level the paths, and greet the angels with the peace that came to pass.
Pour into Eden the peace of your beautiful words and say to those who perished that it (Eden) has been returned to the heir, Adam.
If the fiery ranks come upon you, do not be terrified, for they will rejoice in your imperial rescript, receive you on their wings.244


243. See Mt 8:11; Lk 13:28-29. For feasting at the banquet of the Lord, see Lk 22:30

Not only does Jesus welcome the thief into his kingdom but also sends him on a mission. He instructs him to deliver the Good News, greet the angels with peace, and announce the return of Adam to Eden. Once counted among the evil doers, this criminal was transformed by Jesus into an apostle.

The evil ones numbered him (the thief) Among wicked men.
He (Jesus) captured one [of them],
gave him the keys, and made him an apostle inside of Paradise.
Where it was necessary, he transformed water into wine,
and where he desired, [he made of] a thief an heir of Eden.245

Jesus gives the thief the key of light (مِكَّـٰٓ~which he will need to open the lock of fire of the gate to Eden. "He received the key, the word of the Son, to the lock of fire, and an imperial rescript which he wrote in his (the Son's) life-giving blood was in his right hand."246 Armed with this key and an imperial rescript, the criminal heads to heaven. Blocked by the cherub, the penitent robber shows the angel what Jesus gave him on the cross, his pass into Paradise.

Behold, O angel, the key of fire (مِكَّـٰٓـٰٓـٰٓـٰٓ~) to the lock of fire,
which the King sent from the top of the cross (lit. wood). See if it opens [the lock].
He gave me the key, the imperial rescript, and life. Then I came to Eden.
Since I am armed with the mysteries of the Lord, I am not afraid.247

It is only when the repentant thief presents to the angel "... the key, the imperial rescript of life, which the King gave me and the garments which baptism in his life-giving blood weaved,"248 does the fiery cherub welcome
him in Eden. The thief becomes an heir of the kingdom, the murderer takes
delight in life, and Adam finally returns to Eden.

The child of fire saw the imperial rescript of his Lord, bowed down before it,
and received it with the blazing wing while marveling.

Come, enter Eden, the place of light, which Adam deserted.
Enter and join the glorious company of the children of light.
Come, thief, be comforted in the place of light,
and desirable waves shall wash away dust and weariness from you.
A splendid sun befits you that you might be comforted by it,
for behold heaven and earth are stupefied at your courage.
There, [you were] a thief, but here, [you are] an heir of the Kingdom.
There, [you were] a murderer, but here, you take delight in life.249

4.6 Conclusion

Jacob of Sarug usage of plantation imagery in connection with the
Church is in line with the Christian Syriac tradition he inherited. The symbols
of a vineyard, a fig tree, and an olive tree represent both Israel and the
Church.

Jacob of Sarug uses the image of a vine-plant to represent humanity,
whose representative is Adam. His use of this symbolism is in line with Old
Testament vineyard imagery and the Johannine Vine. He likens God to a
gardener and Adam to a vine-plant planted in the Eden. This grapevine grew
and became a vineyard with many vine-plants. That presents an image of the
true Vine, Jesus Christ, whose vineyard is the Church, and whose branches
are her members.

Jesus Christ is the source of the sacramental life of the Church. For
Jacob of Sarug, both an olive tree and a grape cluster represent Christ. Just as
the olive tree and the grape cluster are the sources of oil used in baptisms and
wine needed for the celebration of the Eucharist respectively, so the Lord is

the sources of all the mysteries of the Church. Golgotha plays a major role in imagery. On the cross, Jesus revealed himself to be the fountainhead of these mysteries when water and blood gushed out of his side. The Crucified is the Tree of Life planted in the middle of paradise. By his crucifixion, the Tree of Life uprooted the tree of knowledge and presented its fruits for the salvation of humanity.

The Tree of Life plants itself in the sanctuary of the Church, and grants priests its fruits to distribute to the congregation. The fruits are a symbol of the Eucharistic species, which means that Jesus Christ, the Lord, is wholly in the midst of the Church, which makes her Eden on earth.

Ezekiel’s vision of the fiery Chariot mimics the Church’s celebration of the Divine Liturgy. The Chariot symbolizes the sanctuary in which the altar stands. The burning coals point to the Eucharistic species. It is not the priest, but the Holy Spirit who transforms the bread and wine into the body and blood of Jesus Christ. The Chariot reflects the Church, the Garden of Eden on earth in whose midst is the Son of God.

The keys Peter received from Christ present the continuity of God’s message and redemptive plan through sacred history. They accompanied humanity since the beginning. They were in Israel’s possession, and Israel handed them to the Church. The keys are Jesus Christ himself. He accompanied Israel on its journey out of slavery to freedom. It lost its privilege when it crucified him and passed the torch to the younger Church who accepted him on the cross.

Jacob of Sarug does not understand the key in a juridical sense. He understands them as a symbol of authority and of transferring this power. Peter does not have exclusive control of the keys, for all the Apostles have them in their possessions, and priests also hold the keys of Peter to celebrate the mysteries of the Church. The key is a symbol of Jesus Christ. Moreover, the key-holder uses them for the benefit of God’s people. Surprisingly, the key makes an apostle of a thief and grant him entrance into paradise.
CHAPTER 5

THE CHURCH, VIRGIN BRIDE OF CHRIST

The personification of the Church as the Bride of Christ ubiquitous in the writing of Jacob of Sarug is not an innovation of the Syriac exegete, for it finds its roots already in the Scriptures. In the Old Testament, for example, the prophet Hosea prophesies in nuptial language the covenant between God and Israel, his People (see Hos 2:21-22). The New Testament records Jesus Christ referring to himself as the Bridegroom (see Mk 2:19-20), an image also found in the Gospel of John (see Jn 3:29) and further developed by Paul (see Eph 5:25-27; 2 Cor 11:2). Furthermore, Syriac Church Fathers predating Jacob of Sarug, such as Aphrahat and Ephrem, sought out typologies in the Old Testament and New Testament pericopes to betoken Christ’s betrothal to the Church.\(^1\) The success of such contemplations has had a significant effect on the East and West Syriac liturgical traditions alike.\(^2\) An heir of this ecclesiological mode of expression, Jacob of Sarug asserts that “the fact that he (the Son) has desired to betroth the Church of the Nations has been shown in allegories time and again.”\(^3\)

5.1 Israel, Repudiated Bride

God’s betrothal to Israel, the daughter of Abraham, in the wilderness is related to the theme at hand insofar as it foreshadows Christ’s espousal of the Church. Ephrem already presented the nucleus of this motif which goes as follows. God delivers his Bride from Egypt and guides her to Sinai for the

---

wedding ceremony. Notwithstanding her betrothal to her Liberator, she commits adultery with a golden calf on her wedding night. In consequence of this abominable act, God repudiates her and ultimately chooses the Church in her stead.\(^4\) This espousal scenario Ephrem envisioned could have been the source of Jacob’s mimro entitled \textit{On the Descent of the Most High on Mt. Sinai and the Mystery of the Church} (ة\textit{ݰܬܶܗΕܰͲሚܪܬܶܗܬܶܗܪܐ;}).\(^5\)

The biblical event of God coming down on Mt. Sinai (see Ex 19) begs the question why the Almighty chose to descend. Jacob of Sarug explains that the Mighty One intends to marry humanity.

Consider the Mighty One, who contains the uttermost edges [of the universe].
What reason called him to come down on Mt. Sinai?
His compassion attracted him to humanity that he be allied to it in marriage.
He came in his love to betroth and take [in marriage] the daughter of earthly beings.
He desired the synagogue, the Daughter of the Just, because of her race that he wed the stock of the house of Abraham.
He saw the little girl when the Egyptians were mocking her—the Holy One has not abhorred the harlot [yet].
He sent after the abused one to return her to him that, by his intimacy [with her], the Daughter of the Righteous be sanctified.
He appointed Moses as a marriage broker and sent him to her that he, as a mediator, descend [to and] make a covenant with her.
He gave him strength and might [see Sir 45:2] when he (Moses) descended that he (Moses) entice her with wondrous deeds to ascend with him.
The Levite descended, performed stupendous feats,\(^6\) led her away and ascended.\(^7\)
He placed on her finger\(^8\) the ring he received from the [burning] bush.\(^9\)
He betrothed her to the Name of the Holy One and left Egypt.
Entrusted with the household of God, he guarded her.
He placed on her head the crown of salvation, left [Egypt] with her, and called on the creatures to extol her with their harps.\(^10\)

\(^5\) See \textit{“HSJS I,”} 3-38.
\(^6\) See Ex 7-11; 14:10-31.
\(^7\) See Ex 12:31-42.
\(^8\) \textit{Lit.} hand.
\(^9\) See Ex 3:2-3.
Of all the nations on earth, God Almighty chooses for himself the synagogue because of her Abrahamic stock. The title daughter of Abraham illustrates that Abraham is her ancestor. The bishop of Batnan also designates her the Daughter of the Just and the Daughter of the Righteous. Both just and righteous are estimates of Abraham. This high regard for Abraham is due to his faith in God and being faithful to him (see Gn 15:6). Furthermore, he passed down these faith-filled traits to his daughter, his descendants the Israelites, through Isaac and Jacob.

Famine in the land of Canaan causes the children of Jacob to emigrate to Egypt, where, at first, they find favor with the rulers of the land on account of Joseph, the dream interpreter (see Gn 42-50). Following his death, however, they find themselves in a dire situation. Pharaoh commits atrocities against and enslaves them (see Ex 1ff). God, consequently, sends Moses to rescue Abraham’s daughter from the ironclad grip of tyranny (see Ex 2:23-3). Moses liberates the Israelites from their enslavement to Pharaoh and leads them out of Egypt to the Promised Land. Jacob of Sarug describes this salvific act of God with bridal imagery: God is the bridegroom (شَحَّدُ، دَخَلَتْ، دَخَلَتْ، دَخَلَتْ، شَحَّدُ، شَحَّدُ), Moses his marriage broker or ‘betrother’ (حَبَّة, حَبَّة, حَبَّة), and the Synagogue his betrothed (حَبَّة) and bride (حَبَّة). Whereas the Syriac word for groom, شَحَّدُ, reflects a circumcision ritual in relation to nuptials, the Syriac word of betrothed or bride, حَبَّة, finds its root in buying and bartering (حَبَّة). The father of the bride would promise his daughter in marriage to a man in exchange for an amount of money.11 Thus,

the woman is the one who is bought or ﷴ in Syriac. However, by the time of the Jacob of Sarug, the Syriac noun ﷴ was used exclusively in the sense of betrothing and marrying. The betrothed or bride was also called ﷴ in reference to the crowning or marriage ceremony. The marriage broker ( ﷴ) is the matchmaker, the one who introduces the bridegroom to the bride and her family.

The marriage broker’s mission is to guide God’s people, the Betrothed, to him, her Fiancé - the offensive title harlot or adulteress (ت) anticipates the Bride’s rejection of her Bridegroom and the kind of the revolting transgression she will have committed. Moses, additionally, presents her with a ring from the burning bush (see Ex 3) and places on her head a crown of salvation, an image reflecting the wedding ceremony. Despite the fact that the biblical event of the burning bush does not refer to a ring nor a crown, they are, according to the reckoning of Jacob of Sarug, God’s gifts to his Bride, and symbolize betrothal, marriage, fidelity and the promise of salvation. The bishop of Batnan further employs these nuptial tropes to speak of Christ and his Church, the Daughter of the Nations, thus describing Christ Jesus’s redemptive deeds for the sake of the entire human race.

The Bridegroom sends Moses down to the land of the Pharaohs to betroth and bring the Bride, the Hebrew Nation, to him to Sinai, the place where the wedding shall occur. Jacob of Sarug envisions the Israelites’ journey to Sinai as a grand bridal procession, during which creation as a whole ministers and joyously and joyfully accompanies the Bride to her Beloved, the Holy One.

Horeb [see Ex 3:1] received her (the Bride) and brought forth unusual gifts. The desert bowed down to her, along with its offerings, when she entered it. The entire creation was aware of [the One] to whom she was betrothed. Also, creatures of every kind came to join it in celebrating. Every element bore wedding gifts and came before her.

12. It is the passive participle of the verb ﷴ.
13. On the different Syriac terms referring to bridal imagery and employed by the Syriac Fathers, see Ibid., 7-8, 11-12; Murray, “Symbols,” 132.

224
All the while they were crowding together to go with her to the Holy One. A formidable column of light\textsuperscript{14} hastened to shine brightly before her, and, like a lamp for a bride, accompanied and traveled with her. Gifts from creatures accompanied her daily. Meanwhile, she boasted the finest provisions. The height assuaged her with manna it sent to her, and the depth fed her quail it offered to her [see Ex 16]. Blessed water flowed out a rock for her [see Ex 17:1-7], and creatures of every kind nourished the pretentious one. Every creature assembled to go with her that the world see the great wedding banquet held for her. She was led by her fellow-servants to Sinai and arrived at the place where her Lord has revealed to her.\textsuperscript{15}

As invitees to this glorious wedding feast, God’s creatures bring their peculiar wedding-presents to honor the Bride on account of their Creator, the Bridegroom. These bridal gifts, referring to the wonders that took place during the Israelites’ wandering in the desert, are unusual, since they occur miraculously. They allude to the column of fire, and by extension, to the column of cloud which shows the Bride the way through the desert (see Ex 13:21). Furthermore, they insinuate the manna and quail which feed the hungry Nation (see Ex 16) and the water which flowed out the rock in the wasteland and satiated the thirst of God’s Fiancée (see Ex 17:1-7). The Bride and her retinue finally arrive at Sinai, the place her heavenly Spouse reveals.

Moses leaves Israel encamped in front of Mt. Sinai, and he goes up the mountain of God (see Ex 19:2-3). Once Moses reaches its summit, the Almighty addresses him and sets down the covenant he wishes to establish between him and his Bride (see Hos 2:21-22). This covenant is the marital

\textsuperscript{14} See Ex 13:21.
\textsuperscript{15} “HSJS I,” 7:18-8:14.
bond between God and his people, the foundations of this martial relationship, and the condition for the wedding to take place.

Her marriage arranger, Moses, left her (the Bride) in front of the mountain and ascended [Ex 19:2-3] to find out when the Bridegroom is coming to meet her. He heard the Hidden One commanding him, “Go down and say to the Bride I saved and brought out of Egypt [see Ex 19:3, 20:2]. ‘Behold I bore you as if on eagle’s wings in the air [see Ex 19:4] and carried you uninjured through regions. Let us remain in love16 and establish a covenant between us. Hereupon, I shall come to marry you in holiness. Before the wedding feast, I shall make known to you my entire will. If you agree with me, come to the wedding banquet because I desire you. I seek you for pure company that you be with me when you do not submit yourself to infidelity with another. I shall make you dwell in my hope for ever. Again, you shall not be attracted to another that he come in unto you. I shall take you in holiness now if you are mine. However, if you act lewdly with foreigners, I shall repudiate you. I shall find in you neither the abhorrent sign of adulterers nor the ways found in a deceiver. You shall not show me vile signs of licentious women. You shall not go about the guile of lasciviousness. You shall bow [your] head to no one except to me [Ex 20:5]. Hereafter you shall not have another covenant. Be holy, venerable, chaste and unblemished, distinguished, pure, unsullied, [and] clean in every way. You shall be vigorous, safe, and clean, serene and calm, pure, watchful, placid, becoming, and undefiled. Also, if you thus come to me with unveiled face [see 2 Cor 3:18], you shall be the sovereign mistress of all I have. I shall give you a great diadem, a band for kings. I shall place within you holiness, the treasure of priests [see Ex 19:6]. Prophets revealing hidden [things] shall belong to you. Priests, forgivers of debts, shall dwell among you. Behold Levites like messengers shall accompany you, and ministers in the appearance of servants shall escort you. The heaven is a throne. Its hoarfrost thickly [sprinkled] over your ground.17 The land shall increase the choice produce before you. The air shall sprinkle your encampment with every delight. The sun shall make sweet fruits ripe for your nourishment. You shall take possession of the land of all kings who wage war against you. You shall not be conquered by mighty men who attack your country.

16. See Jn 15:9; 1 Jn 4:16.
You shall place your heel [see Gn 3:15] on the throats of the rulers of the earth
to tread down all crowns under your power.
I will give you [tablets with] the writing of my hands [on them] concerning
these [things] [see Ex 24:12; Dt 5:22].
If you [behave] according to my will [see Ex 19:5], you shall be with me, and
all [shall be] yours.”

The Bridegroom sent this covenant at the hands of Moses that
he descend to see if the Bride would agree with the Bridegroom [see Ex
19:7].

Fidelity to the divine Spouse is the cornerstone of this covenant. The
Bride is to remain faithful and loyal to him. She shall neither be attracted to
nor commit adultery with another. Rather, she must be chaste, pure and
undefiled. Promiscuity and chastity are opposing images used to express
Israel’s relationship, or for that matter any community’s relation, to God.
Infidelity signifies rejecting God and having other gods (see Ex 20:3-5; Dt
5:7-9), whereas purity indicates worshiping God, professing his unicity, and

---

declaring his salvific deeds (see Ex 20:2; Dt 6). Remaining unblemished has its rewards: the Bride is set to inherit and rule over all that God possesses. To validate her sovereignty, God will crown her. Moreover, he will establish priests for the forgiveness of sins, and prophets for revealing the hidden truths in her midst. Nature will be at her service by providing her with the finest provisions. She will capture the lands of any king who wages war against her, and she will subjugate the rulers of the earth under her heel. God sends Moses down with the covenant to the Bride that he ask for her consent.

The mediator, the son of the Hebrews, descended from the mountaintop and summoned the leaders and rulers of the house of Jacob. He repeated the precepts of the Bridegroom verbatim before them [asking] if they would agree to the marriage settlement he established. Lest perhaps they would not.

They answered him kindly while rejoicing in it, “We agree to your mediation, our teacher, Moses.

The Bridegroom rightly desires our daughter in holiness. We wish that that race would unite to our race!

We are insignificant. Which Bridegroom has been chosen for us? Whence is he that he become related to us in marriage? Great is the blessing! Behold the girl we reared in the house of the Egyptians is before you.

Inquire of her [if she would accept] the marriage settlement your Lord has made.”

Moses summoned her to ask [her] before the elders. Rejoicing, she gave her word to go with him [see Ex 19:8].

The Levite heard that she offered herself willingly. So rejoicing, he returned to his Lord to inform him, “My Lord, the girl accepted our agreement as we had desired her, and does not refuse to live in holiness.

Behold she agreed with me to the benevolent marriage settlement as you instructed me.

If she is faithful as she says, she will not be seduced.”

19. See Ex 19:7
20. Lit. she gave her mouth
21. Lit. to exist or be

228
The Bride’s consent means that Israel intends to follow God’s precepts faithfully. It will obey God, and keep his covenant (see Ex 19:5). In nuptial terms, it is the marriage contract signed by the bridal parties. The wedding can only proceed once both sides agree to the stipulations of the matrimonial contract. Therefore, Israel’s acceptance of this relationship is of utmost importance. The words of the prophet Jeremiah expresses it best, “They shall be my people, and I will be their God” (Jer 32:38; see also Jer 24:7, 31:33). For this unity to become a reality, Israel has to consent that God is its God and that it is his people, for God does not force himself upon others and is the gentlest of all even if he is the Omnipotent. For this reason, Moses summons the elders of the people to inform them of God’s will: God desires to establish an intimate relationship between him and them. The most intimate of all relations is that of the nuptial unity. He yearns to make of them his Nation, his bride. Once Moses announces God’s terms, Israel unanimously responds that it will do everything the Lord has ordained (see Ex 19:8). This resounding ‘yes’ by which Israel accepts God’s precepts is analogous to a bride consents to be united in marriage to her bridegroom. Now God can come down, as Israel has accepted the terms of the wedding.

Before a marriage takes place, a bride prepares herself to be suitable for the groom. In this context, Israel must be undefiled to receive in purity her heavenly Bridegroom. Therefore, God commissions Moses to return to Israel, and instruct the Nation to cleanse itself.

He (God) responded to Moses again and said to him, "Return to her. Go down, adorn her both externally and internally [see Ex 19:10]. On the outside, let her wear elegant white garments to be radiant in them. On the inside, [let her have] thoughts of holiness to be beautiful due to them. Let her purify herself mystically for me today and tomorrow [see Ex 19:10], and, on the third [day], I shall come to her in power [see Ex 19:11]." Moses went down and began to adorn the bride. He was wearied and enfeebled after he admonished the troubled one,
and taught the shameless one not to become contemptible
and commanded her, “Do not let the hidden Bridegroom loathe you.
Sprinkle for him holiness on the road that he be highly extolled by it,
[and] that you see his face in purity when you meet him.
Put a diadem of holiness on your head when he sees you
that you enter with him in splendor the bridal chamber of light.”

Moses, therefore, descended to adorn the bride he brought [out of Egypt]
that the Bridegroom to whom she was betrothed see her beautiful.
He commanded her, and she got dressed. He gazed at her, and she was
pleasing. He adorned her, and she was beautiful.
He sternly warned, admonished, instructed her, and finished her adornment.
Three days did Moses attend to her while he was teaching
and enjoining on her in what shape to go to see her Lord.
He fashioned wise words and put in her mouth
how to respond to the glorious Bridegroom when he calls her.
and enjoining on her in what shape to go to see her Lord.

Two days is allotted for the purification ritual which comprises of
washing, and the Israelites must sanctify themselves by washing their
garments. They collectively wear an elegant white garment which refers to a

23. On the bridal chamber of light in the Syriac liturgical tradition, see Brock, “Bridal Chamber”.
white wedding dress worn by a bride and alludes to baptism. The reference to baptism becomes more vivid as shall be seen below when Jacob of Sarug presents Moses as a type of Christ. Moses instructs, warns, and adorns the beautiful Bride. When all the preparations are finished, the heavenly Bridegroom leaves his place to descend to his Bride, Israel. After her sanctification, the Bride is called to meet her Bridegroom, and enter the bridal chamber of light (ܚܝܳܐ, ܫܼܐ) or the bed-chamber (ܡܫ̱ܪ̱ܐ ܚܝܐ), a Syriac image synonymous with the Kingdom of God.  

In the context of Ex 19, Jacob of Sarug interprets the summit of Mt. Sinai enveloped with dark clouds as the bridal chamber, the location of the union. Thunder brings to mind the joyous shouts at a matrimonial celebration, whereas the sounding of the horn announces the presence of the Most High on Mt. Sinai, in the bridal chamber.

The Holy One prepared a marriage feast for the boastful one and came to her that his marriage [to her] sanctify her. He pitched his tent of dark cloud at the summit of Sinai [see Ex 19:16], a grandiose bridal chamber of flame at a high place. Since there is constant [joyous] yelling and screaming at a wedding, he let hear sounds that the Bride exult on her joyous day [see Ex 19:16-19]. The cloud became a bed-chamber on the mountain for the Bridegroom-King, and he dwelt there bearing himself magnificently through formidable [things].  

[...]

At the sound of the horn, the Bridegroom enters his bed-chamber.

---

27. See Ex 19:18.
As seen above God comes down on Mt. Sinai to marry Israel, yet this is not the only reason. He does not want to allow Israel any pretext for rejecting him.

The matter urged him to bend his Majesty over Mount Sinai that the Synagogue be united to him on account of the astonishing vision. If he had not descended, she would have said after [committing] adultery, “Since I do not see him, how would I look for him?” Since one could well make up an occasion for pretenses in this way, a word issued forth, “Behold the Lord is coming down on the mountain.” As if it were truly shining [like fire] in front of him in his honor.

He lit rays of light through the air as lamps as if it were truly shining [like fire] in front of him in his honor. Also, he did not thus allow an occasion for pretenses, and, as if in truth, he did not give the daughter of Abraham a reason.

The astonishing vision refers to the majestic scene with thunder, lightning, fire, the dark cloud, the loud blast of the shofar, and the mountain trembling violently (see Ex 19:16, 18-19). It manifests God’s majesty and is also meant to enchant the Synagogue to accept God’s marriage proposal, i.e., to remain faithful to him. Moreover, this spectacular sight provides Israel, who, or for that matter, anyone, is not allowed to see God face to face, with the necessary “audiovisual” spectacle manifesting God’s presence on the mountain. As a result, the Bride will be unable to excuse herself after having

---

31. See Ex 19:9; 11.
32. See Ex 19:18.
committed adultery saying she has not seen him, yet the ultimate betrayal occurs: the Bride commits adultery on her wedding night!

The glorious manifestation on Mt. Sinai has the opposite effect on the Bride. She fears what is happening on the mountaintop, thus rejecting the Bridegroom categorically. Instead of captivating her, the spectacle scares her and alienates her to the extent that she substitutes Moses for God (see Ex 20:18-21).

The Mighty One descended, dwelt on the mountain, in the manner he descended.
Moses descended to summon the Bride to come to him (the Mighty One).
[...]
The sounds shook her, lightning terrified her, thunder shouted at her, and the visions so scared her that she was not able to endure [them].

The Bridegroom began to talk her solemnly.
She, however, did not accept to listen to him pleasantly.
She cried out to Moses, “You are humble [see Nm 12:3], speak to me. The voice of the Lord is driving me away to the place of death.”
The voice of the Holy One did not please the adulteress.
Therefore, she shrank from purity because of her wickedness.
She asked Moses to relay to her the word of the Bridegroom, for it was easy for her to clash presumptuously with him.
Since the sounds out of Mount Sinai did not satisfy her, she cried out if it got stronger [than the fire already is], she would be on fire.
She said to that humble one (Moses), “You talk to me,” for she knew he could be insulted and would not complain.
She asked him to speak to her to mistreat him and answer him with troublesome sounds of doubt.
The sound thundering from Sinai was not easy for her [to bear], for she could neither quarrel nor murmur before its power.
She called Moses, who was enfeebled because of her madness, for she was confident that if he were harsh, it would be easy to cause his death.
The voice of the Lion that roared and made Sinai quake terrified her.
She desired that the lamb, Moses, would answer her softly.
The scream of the Eagle shook up the detestable vulture.
She asked for the nestling laid between her talons.
She abhorred the sound that shakes mountains and longed for Moses’s speech impediment [Ex 4:10-12, 6:12].
The sounding horn from the summit of the air shook her up, and she coveted to hear the speech of the tongue-tied because it delighted her.


233
It was not that she loved Moses for him to speak to her, but that the brazen one abhorred God. She heard the Bridegroom admonishing her against strange [gods] [Ex 20:3-5], but the simple precept did not delight the brazen one. She made up a pretext to expel from her the voice of the Holy One. Craftily, she summoned Moses [saying], “You talk to me.”

Although called to be pure, the Bride remains sullied on account of her attraction to strange gods or idols. God had commanded her not to have other gods beside him (see Ex 20:3) and not to fashion any idols (see Ex 20:4). She rejects his divine rule, for her heart lies somewhere else. “After she confirmed that he had come to and dwelt with her, she, soon after, formed a calf [see Ex 32:1-29] to commit adultery with it.”

The Almighty’s display on Mt. Sinai revealing himself for the Bride does not sway her away from fashioning and worshiping an idol. Adoring the golden calf is tantamount to adultery.

If she had not resolved to commit iniquity there, she would not have abhorred the Bridegroom who came to her. If her eye had not fallen on strange [gods],


37. Ibid., 23:16-17.
she would not have chosen Moses’s speech over that of the Hidden One.
If she had not loathed the face of the Bridegroom,
she would not have dreaded his intimacy when she received him.
If her heart had not loved her corruptor,
she would have allowed the Bridegroom of Truth to talk to her.
If she had been pure, why was she was in awe of the Holy One.
It was revealed to her that she was in filth. So, she was ashamed.
She realized that the hour of the Bridegroom seeking the truth approached
and it revealed her secret that she is lewd toward the one raising her.
She called on Moses to speak to her according to her will
thinking that her adultery could be concealed,
“You, O humble one, talk to me,” she said to him,
“Let God silence his sounds because they shake me up.”
Moses soothes and encourages her as a little girl,
“He wants to test you. Do not be afraid of the powerful One!
[He desires to] make a marriage settlement and ascend to his sublime abode.
Enter into a covenant with him, and behold his thundering voice will be
silenced.
Come and find out to whom I have betrothed you lest I be ashamed.
See how much his creatures revere his Shekinah!38

38. Shekinah — transliteration of a Hebrew word, which originally meant “the one who
dwells” or “that which dwells” — is not a biblical term, yet it found its way in post-
biblical Jewish literature. Old Testament passages describing God as dwelling among a
people or in a particular place (see Gn 9:27; Ex 25:8; 29:45,46; Nm 5:3; 1 Kgs 6:13; Ps
68:16; 74:2; Is 8:18; Ez 43:7-9; Jl 3:17-21; Zec 2:10,11) provide the source for the later use
of the term Shekinah. God’s habitation is both the heavens and the earth. In the Targums
and rabbinic literature, it means God’s radiance, glory, or presence in the temple, the
midst of his people, or the world, and it signifies God himself. However, in later
Rabbinic sources, Shekinah develops into a separate entity created by God and becomes
understood as an intermediary between God and man. The New Testament authors do
not use the term Shekinah, but they ascribe it to Christ as divine (see Mk 8:38; 10:37;
13:26; Lk 9:32; Jn 1:14; 2:11; 11:4) and associate it with light, and glory (see Lk 2:9; 9:29;
Acts 9:3-6; 22:6-11; 26:12; 2 Pt 1:16-18). Also, Paul identifies Jesus Christ as the Shekinah
NIDB, 2nd ed., s.v. “Shekinah;” Martin McNamara, “Targum and Testament Revisited:
148-152.) The Syriac term ܳܺ ܳ for Shekinah occurs several times in the Old Testament
rendition of the Peshitta and is a translation of various Hebrew and Greeks words. In
the writings of the Syriac Church Fathers, Shekinah appears in relation to a place, and
an object, or a person. Cerbelaud calls it the Christian Shekinah to distinguish it from the
Jewish Shekinah. The Christian Shekinah refers to such locations as the highest heavens,
Sheol, the burning bush, the summit of Mt. Sinai, Mt Zion, the desert, the temple of
Jerusalem, and the fiery Chariot Ezekiel saw. It is attached to objects such as the
Temple of Jerusalem, the fiery Chariot Ezekiel saw, the Arch of the Covenant, the cross
of Jesus as an object of adoration, and the Christian Churches and their altars. It is also
attached to God, heavenly beings, people such as Moses, the Just in the Old Testament,
and the Christian priests, and to the entire Nation of Israel. The Christian Shekinah is

235
Your Betrothed has this power because of his magnificence.
Do not refuse his magnificence because of your perturbation.
Make with him the perfect covenant for which he came.
Let me not be ashamed of you, for I have been looking after you since Egypt.”

Everything is ready for the wedding to take place, but the Bride does not show up. She refuses to go with Moses to meet her Bridegroom.

Moses is humble, the Bridegroom is mighty, the Bride is despised, the bridal chamber radiant, the [bridal] tent pitched, and beauty shines out.

rather passive. It accompanies God, attaches to visible and invisible sacred realities, resides in the middle of the Nation of Israel, and later in the Church. As an active agent, it has a quasi-autonomy and is detached somewhat from God, yet its activities remain limited or isolated. The Syriac Church Fathers did not christianize the Jewish Shekinah, insofar as Christian Shekinah does not substitute Jewish Shekinah, but they used it typologically. Moreover, Christian Shekinah does not find a place in Trinitarian theology. The Jewish Shekinah is fundamentally similar to the Christian Shekinah, yet three traits distinguish the one from the other: “brilliance” and “wings” are characteristics of the Jewish Shekinah, whereas its integration with the celestial orders characterizes the Christian Shekinah. Another distinction between the two is God’s relation to human sphere, insofar as he “went up” and “came back down,” and his Divine Presence affixed to one given location. Syriac Christian sources do not mention the Jewish idea that the Shekinah progressively ascended from earth to heaven from Adam till Abraham and came back down gradually from Abraham till Moses. Also, they may ascribe to the Jewish belief that the Shekinah resided in the temple of Jerusalem and that it left it at its destruction, yet they are silent in its presence in the entire nation of Israel. The Jewish notion that there is a link between the study of the Torah and the presence of the Shekinah is foreign to the Syriac Church Fathers. (See Dominique Cerbelaud, “Aspects de la Shekinah Chez les Auteurs Chrétiens Syriens,” LM, 123, no. 1-2 (2010): 91-125.)

The wedding-guests are reclining [at table], the worlds are rejoicing, [and] the marriage feast is prepared, but the deceiver refuses the wedding. The scribe stands, bearing a pen to write up the covenant, and the Bridegroom is waiting to throw in the world to [her] marriage portion.40

The Bride whom God desires shuns him and rebuffs his covenant. She desires the intimacy of a handmade calf and rejects being united with the Lord of the universe who had promised her the world as her marriage portion. Indeed, “the Daughter of Abraham then treated this Bridegroom with contempt, since the calf’s [intimate] companion [see Ex 32:1-29] was not contented with his (Bridegroom’s) intimacy.”41 God, therefore, repudiates her due to her lewd act. “You did not retain the one you betrothed in the Sinai region [...] After you had loved the assembly of the Nation, it committed adultery with a calf.”42

Abraham’s progeny refuses the Lord, who comes down on Mt. Sinai although he is the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob (see Ex 3:6), who appeared to Moses in the burning bush (see Ex 3:2) and commissioned him to rescue Israel from the Egyptian’s grip.

He (God) was on the mountain, in the heights and everything, on the chariot [see Ez 1:26], and in the bush [see Ex 3:2] and every region. He showed the form of a fire-blaze on the mountaintop to prepare in an astonishing way the marriage feast among earthly beings. He desired to show the Daughter of Abraham a marvelous vision and enchant in an amazing way the Bride to direct her sight toward him. [...]
He showed the form of a fire-blaze on the mountainside to bind her in a holy manner to his union with marvelous [visions].

40. Ibid., 27:16-21.
41. Ibid., 28:1-2.
42. Ibid., 4:3, 5.
Although the Lover of Adultery approached to come to him, she refused to listen to his teaching.
Since Moses placated her that she be utterly quiet for a moment [see Ex 20:20] until the contract with her has been ratified, and the Bridegroom has ascended.
While the Shekinah on the mountain was astonishingly smoldering, the Lord called the chosen one, Moses, to come to Him.
The voice as a messenger went out to Moses that he enter, and ratify the contract with him (God) in the dark clouds.
He entered the cloud to ascend to the Holy One, and the voice hastened to prepare for him a flamelike path.
He lifted up before him the curtain of the clouds [see Ex 20:21; Sir 45:5] that he enter to see the Bridegroom in his glory where he is.
The command went out, cut a path for him through the dark clouds that the immense brilliance out of Sinai not terrify him.
Moses entered the bed-chamber of the Bridegroom-King to learn his mysteries and bring the Bride to the Holy One.
He entered, learned [his mysteries], and went out to lead her [to God] as commanded
that she approach and hear the teaching of the house of God.
He did not persuade her to enter the bridal chamber, for she was impure.
She stood outside listening and learning the will of the Bridegroom [see Ex 20:21].

Jacob of Sarug identifies the One who comes down on Mt. Sinai with the figure that looks like a human being sitting on the likeness of a throne above the firmament over the heads of the angels carrying the chariot of fire (see Ez 1:26). Since this image typically refers to Christ, it indicates that the

43. For Moses speaking to God fact to face, see Ex 33:11; Nm 12:8; Dt 34:10; Sir 45:4-5.
event taking place on Mt. Sinai refers to his betrothal to Israel. In fact, Jacob reveals elsewhere that it is so, “The Betrothed of the Son, the one whom the Father betrothed to him in Sinai that she might receive from him the royal name, was anxious.” Despite the stupendous manifestation on Mt. Sinai and Israel’s deliverance from slavery and Egyptian tyranny, the Daughter of Abraham chooses to remain outside and not enter the bridal chamber. She rejects the Son and clings to her golden calf. Consequently, God repudiates her and selects for his Son another Bride, i.e., the Church, who will be forever faithful to him.

The theme of the Church as the Bride of Christ is already revealed in the account of God’s descent on Mt. Sinai. As stated by Jacob of Sarug, Moses is a type of Christ, for his actions foreshadows the redemptive deeds of Jesus. Being a type of Christ allowed Moses to prophesy that God will raise “a prophet like me” (Dt 18:15), a reference to Jesus Christ. Moreover, God’s betrothal to Israel prefigures the Son of God’s espousal of the Church.

Do not omit the similarities between Moses and Christ.
Let us now see how he is similar to the Son of God.
By his descent from the mountaintop to the Hebrews
is perceived the way of Jesus for someone capable of understanding.
By his service to Jacob’s daughter—that is to say, he descended and ascended—is depicted [the service] of Christ to humanity.
Friends, give heed to how a servant resembles his Master and to how he called him symbolically “a prophet like me” [see Dt 18:15].
Because of him, the Daughter of Abraham was saved from Egypt.
And because of him, she was betrothed to become the Bride of the Holy One.
At his hand, she came near to become the Bride of the King, her Lord.
He sanctified her that she go to see the Exalted One in splendor.
He became a mediator between God and his camp.
He resembles his Lord because, through him, his Father is reconciled with the world.
According to this type, Christ descended to humanity.
He saved and betrothed it, sanctified and purified it, and washed and cleansed it.
Instead of the white garment in which Moses dressed the daughter of Jacob, Jesus whitened the soul for holiness in the water [of baptism].

Three days did Moses sanctify the daughter of the Nation. At the hand of our Lord, she exists in holiness forever. [...] Because of these mysteries fulfilled at his hands, Moses dared to call the Son of God “a prophet like me” [see Dt 18:15].

Moses’s actions of descending and ascending the mountain depict the incarnation of the Word of God and his return to this heavenly dwellings. The similarities do not end there, however. Moses saving Israel from Egypt foreshadows Jesus Christ saving humanity from a tyrannical world. Being the mediator between God and Israel made Moses a type of Christ, the true mediator between the Father and humanity. Moses purified, sanctified, and brought Israel, the Bride, to the Bridegroom. The Son of God also sanctified, purified, washed, and cleansed humankind by baptism. The white wedding garment in which Moses dressed the daughter of Jacob prefigures Christian baptism. Through baptismal water, Jesus Christ purifies his Church. The Mosaic cleansing lasts only three days, whereas the Son of God’s sanctification of the Church is eternal. To this unsullied Church betroths Jesus Christ himself and brings her as his bride to his Father.

5.2 Water and the Church’s Betrothal

The Old Testament narratives telling of those who pledge their troth by a well prefigures the theme of Christ’s espousal of the Church in the Jordan River. Besides, the well, the location of the engagement, furnishes the
necessary stepping stones to associate bridal imagery with Christian baptism. The betrothal of Isaac to Rebekah (see Gn 24) is such an account.

5.2.1 Betrothal at the Well

In his mimro on the betrothal of Rebekah to Isaac, Jacob of Sarug interprets Gn 24 in light of his theological outlook mainly the Church’s espousal to Christ.

By the bride whom Eliezer, the senior servant, promised in marriage was depicted the Church of the Nations for the one who understands. By the daughter of the inhabitants of Haran [Gn 11:31] was portrayed the Daughter of the Pagans, and the Son, our Lord, by Isaac, the sacrifice that was not immolated.

Rebekah, the bride whom Eliezer promises in marriage to Isaac, is a type of the Church, referred to as the Church of the Nations and the Daughter of the Pagans. These titles bespeak the Church’s idolatrous past. Like Rebekah, the Daughter of the Pagans knows and worships false gods. Adoring idols is akin to being unclean, impure, and adulterous. That becomes Israel’s state after having venerated a golden calf as discussed above. Isaac, Rebekah’s fiancé, is a type of the Lord insofar as both are sacrificial offerings although Isaac is not sacrificed (see Gn 22:11-13), whereas Jesus Christ, the perfect offering, is crucified. Since Isaac and Rebekah are types of the Lord and the Church respectively, their engagement typologically depicts the betrothal of Christ and the Church.

Also, by Eliezer was depicted John [the Baptist] for the one who perceives, for he (John) also betrothed the Bride to the Bridegroom, his Lord, out of the waters [of the Jordan]. By Rebekah’s well is represented, and revealed Baptism,

---

47. Extracts of Jacob of Sarug’s mimro on the betrothal of Rebekah published and translated into French by Graffin provide the necessary material for this section. See Graffin, “Église - Épouse,” 324-326 (French), 335-336 (Syriac).
48. See Gn 15:2.
49. See Gn 24.
out of which the Son of God leads us to his wedding.
Eliezer like John was zealous for the only-begotten (Isaac),
for out of the waters he (Eliezer) betrothed a virgin (Rebekah) to him (Isaac)
with immense love.
Abraham is likened to the true Father, who betrothed to his Son
the Bride of Mysteries from among the Nations that she inherit his treasures.
Isaac, the only-begotten, represents, by what he did,
the true Only-Begotten, our Lord, for he (Isaac) portrays his types.51

Abraham sends his servant, Eliezer, to find a spouse for his son Isaac
(see Gn 24:2-4), and the Heavenly Father sends his steward, John the Baptist,
to broker a marriage between his Only-Begotten and the Church. This
interpretation makes Eliezer a type of John the Baptist and Abraham a type of
the heavenly Father. The one betrothal occurs at a well, and the other in the
Jordan River, where John baptizes Christ. Accordingly, the well prefigures the
baptismal font, for Christ’s baptism is the model for Christian baptisms.
Christ’s betrothal to the Church is connected to baptism insofar as Christ
leads the baptized to his wedding. Therefore, the baptized are both the guests
and the Bride. Rebekah’s virginity can be taken literally in its physical
dimension. However, applied to the Church, virginity must be understood in
its typological sense which refers to rejecting false gods and worshiping Jesus
Christ, the Son of the true God. The Church is called the Bride of Mysteries in
reference to the sacramental Mysteries, the Son’s treasures, administered by
his priests.

When one travels on Eliezer’s road,
[one realizes that] it and its milestones lead to John.
Consider the virgin (Rebekah) whom this one (Eliezer) promised in marriage
out of the water:
she depicted the Daughter of the Aramaeans when she was betrothed.
The Father sent him (John) to prepare a wife for his Son.
He went out and instituted Baptism with immense love.
He stood at the Jordan [River], cast his dragnet into the streams,

51. Ibid.
filled his net with a new catch, 52 and brought it to the Father [see Jn 21:11].
He had been sent to convert 53 the Daughter of Abraham.

[...]
He prayed at the Jordan as Eliezer did at the well [see Gn 24:12-14],
and the Daughter of the Hebrews arose and came out to her baptism. 54
He was sent to betroth the Daughter of Rebekah to the Son
called on the Bride to be like her mother in her betrothal.
He demanded of her fruits equivalent to repentance [see Mt 3:2, 3:8],
purified and cleansed her in the blessed baptismal waters [see Mk 1:4; Lk 3:3].
He spoke more loudly the voice of the commandments into her ears as an
alternative to [the voice of] graven images
and adorned her hands with every deed of righteousness. 55
A spiritual graven image, the word of life, he hung on her earshot
and on her hands, he put the service of perfection too.
“Be like your tasteful mother,” he taught her,
“who was a virgin, modest and beloved.
Even though she did not see him, she loved Isaac to whom she was
betrothed.
Do not hate 56 the Son, who betrothed you, 57 when you see him. 58
Because of the Bridegroom’s love, Rebekah left the house of her father.
Leave earth and ascend to heaven because of the Bridegroom, your Lord.
The girl (Rebekah) who was joined to Isaac was made holy. 59
Be joined to the Son by the baptism of the Lord of holiness.” 60

52. See Mt 4:19; Mk 1:17; Lk 5:10; Jn 21:11.
53. Reading
54. See Mt 3:5-6.
55. Reading
56. Reading
57. Reading
58. Reading
59. See 1 Cor 7:14. Reading
60. Ibid., 325 (French), 335 (Syriac).
Jacob of Sarug interprets the mission Eliezer undertakes to fulfill the promise he made to Abraham as a depiction of the events occurring at the Jordan River at the hands of John the Baptist. The mission of Eliezer foreshadows that of John the Baptist, for finding a wife for the son of Abraham prefigures espousing a bride to the Son of God. Eliezer sees Rebekah at a well, and John the Baptist summons the daughter of Abraham, the daughter of Rebekah, to the Jordan River. Water, a shared detail connecting the two biblical stories, is once more a reference to washing, sanctification, and Christian baptism. Eliezer promises Rebekah in marriage to Isaac, and John the Baptist invites her daughter to marry Jesus Christ. Since Rebekah is a type of the Church, one could expect that her daughter is the Church. Surprisingly, her progeny in this citation is not the daughter of the Aramaeans but Israel. This interpretation indicates that God has not given up finding ways to reconcile the Hebrew Nation he saved from Egypt with himself. In the end, however, it will reject categorically the only-Begotten when she crucifies him.

Bridal imagery connects closely to baptism. In a language reminiscent of Jesus promising to make his disciples fishers of men (see Mt 4:19; Mk 1:17; Lk 5:10; Jn 21:11), Jacob of Sarug presents John the Baptist as a fisherman throwing his net into the water of the Jordan, thus linking fishing for men with baptism. Baptism is a visual sign of conversion. The Father sends John the Baptist to convert the daughter of Abraham. She responds and comes to be sanctified (see Mt 3:5-6; Mk 1:5; Lk 3:21). However, John’s baptism is not complete. Jesus, who is mightier than he, shall perfect it with Spirit and fire (see Mt 3:11; Mk 1:8; Lk 3:16). Similar to Moses who prepares the daughter of Abraham for her marriage in the desert, now John prepares the daughter of Rebekah for her marriage in the wilderness. God commissions Moses and John to purify the Bride (see Ex 19:10; Lk 3:2). The former sanctifies her by washing (see Ex 19:14) so too does the latter by baptizing her. Thus, both
imperfect baptisms are preparations for the wedding which takes place when
the perfected baptism with Spirit and fire occurs.

By exhorting the Bride to be like her mother, Rebekah, John calls her to
be chaste and virgin, and to accept the Bridegroom whom she has not seen.
Over against adultery are chastity and virginity. Once more, adultery implies
worshiping and adoring idols, whereas virginity signifies being faithful to the
one God and his commandments. Urging her to be chaste, John enjoins the
daughter of Rebekah to reject false gods and not to repeat what had happened
at Mt. Sinai. She is to denounce the Golden Calf (see Ex 32). The other way the
Bride can be like her mother is by agreeing to this marriage although she has
not met the Bridegroom. Before seeing Isaac and without knowing him,
Rebekah accepts him as her husband. She consents to the wedding and leaves
her homeland to join him (see Gn 24:58). The Bride Israel is now called upon
to imitate Rebekah by accepting her Bridegroom, Jesus Christ, without
knowing him, and to leave her earthly home and join him in his heavenly
abode, for his dwelling place is up above in the heavens. The daughter of
Rebekah does not pay heed to the admonitions of John the Baptist and ends
up crucifying the Son. Consequently, Christ rejects the Daughter of Rebekah
and chooses in her stead the Daughter of the Nations to be his Bride. Baptism
is the means by which the Bride joins her Bridegroom and the two become
one in spirit (see Gn 2:24; Mt 19:5; Mk 10:7-8; Eph 5:31).

If he (Isaac) had not served these types,
his name and deed would not have been celebrated in the Pentateuch.
If he had not depicted the type of the Church of the Nations
as the Bride he betrothed, his story would not have been well known.
Precious things are compared to ordinary things,
and truths are proclaimed by simple things.
The entirety of the book of Moses is a type of the one who understands,
and using one thing it depicts,61 another thing for the one who perceives.
Eliezer was the type of John,
and Isaac the figure of the mysteries of truths of the Son.
The bride Rebekah portrayed the Church when she was betrothed:
the former [was betrothed] out of the waters and the latter out of baptism.

61. Reading ʁ� ܕܳ
If she (Rebekah) does not portray the Church by her betrothal, the Daughter of the Nations would have been betrothed not out of the waters. Who has [ever] reckoned to promise a bride in marriage and made straight for [...] waters as did Eliezer? Who has [ever] begun to [write] a betrothal contract except for this one (Eliezer) who attended upon the great mystery? Which woman carrying water has anyone ever promised in marriage by the waters except for this one (Rebekah) because the fairness of the Church blazes through her? Which marriage broker has [ever] hastened to the waters to obtain a bride except for this one (Eliezer) who depicted John by his action? [...] The Son of God highlights the necessity of waters, betrothed the Church of the Nations out of them, and made her his. Baptism joined the Bridegroom and Bride to each other, and the two became one in one spirit as it is written. The road of Eliezer rushed toward these types when he betrothed the daughter of the pagans (Rebekah) to the son of the promise (Isaac).

The entire road on which Eliezer walked was the shadow of John’s body.
The whole marriage feast of the virgin Rebekah, the revealer of beauties, attended spiritually upon this type of the Church.

5.2.2 Betrothal in the Jordan

Like Moses before him, John the Baptist is only a marriage broker. Besides, the Apostles, Paul, and the bishops of the Church fulfill the same function in the poetry of Jacob of Sarug. The marriage broker is not to be confused with the Bridegroom (see Jn 3:29): he is the herald who leads the Bride to and betroths her to Christ. That means that the bishops follow in the steps of Apostles and Paul. They are the go-betweens who call people to repentance, conversion, baptism, and redemption. Jacob of Sarug seem to address bishops as marriage-brokers but not priests. Thus, the titles itself implies apostolic successions.

John ran from the womb to the river
as a voice [travels] from the mouth to the ear, and yet it does not touch [it].
He (John) did not enter the bridal chamber of the Bridegroom to marry
the Bride, whom he betrothed to his Lord, and he went away [see Jn 3:29-30].

69. See “HSJS IV,” 793:15-16.
The marriage broker is responsible for getting the bride ready for her wedding by cleansing her and then leading her to the Bridegroom. Washing the bride is a euphemism for calling her to repentance and conversion. The message of John the Baptist was clear, “Repent...” (see Mt 3:2), and the sign of this contrition is receiving his baptism (Mt 3:6). He instructs the Bride that her Bridegroom is a heavenly King and inflames her with his love, yet the Bridegroom’s identity remains concealed.

John came to betroth the Bride to the Son of God, was ready to wash away her filth, and then she would be betrothed. He brought her to the water and cleansed her with repentance that she be clean. At that time, she would see the King-Bridegroom. [John] purified her and removed from her the confusion of faces [see Dn 9:7-8] that the Bridegroom, who delights in beauty, not see her filthy. He made her clean and spotless with baptism and then brought her sanctified to the wedding feast of the Bridegroom. On that account, the Son of the Levites (John) hastened to the river to prepare the Bride full of beauties. He bathed her, purified her, sanctified her, [and] made her glow that the Bridegroom might see her beautiful. He announced to her the greatness of the King, her Lord, and proclaimed incessantly to her that he is a heavenly Being. He said to her, “I am neither worthy of nor equal to his sandals,”71 to exalt, by his humility, his Lord just as he was. He loved the Bridegroom’s sandals more than his head72 that the Bride listen to and be proud of the One to whom she was betrothed. While proclaiming to her, he taught her that he is from earth, and taught her concerning his Lord that he is heavenly. He inflamed her with his love daily that she wait for him. The Bridegroom was concealed, and the Bride did not know who he was.73 She learned from John that he is mighty and glorified. Christ was concealed, and creation was burning with his love to see him. People were asking one another with great trembling, “Where is he? Where is the one who was announced by John?” While John resembled thunder [see Ex 19:16,18, 20:18] with his proclamation, the Bride was fallen in love and drunk with the love of the Son of God. People were asking about him because he was concealed.

71. See Mt 3:11; Mk 1:7; Lk 3:16; Jn 1:27.
72. See Mt 14:3-12; Mk 6:16-29; Lk 9:9.
73. See Jn 1:26.
and baptism longed to gain holiness from him.\textsuperscript{74}

The bride is identified here with the Daughter of the Hebrews, who is not aware of the Bridegroom, for she is sleeping like the virgins in Mathew’s parable (see Mt 25:1-13). John’s voice wakes her up and proclaims to her the imminent coming of the Bridegroom. The Bride is filthy on account of all the holocausts she offers to idols and not ready in this state to receive her Bridegroom. Worshipping false gods goes back to the time when Israel rejected God on Mt. Sinai and worshiped the golden calf. Therefore, she must be purified and cleansed that her luster return to her and be dressed in prized garments, her wedding dress. Then she will be thus presented to the only-Begotten. The effect of John’s baptism is to wash off the Bride’s filth of her.

The Daughter of the Hebrews was sleeping, and the Bridegroom has come,\textsuperscript{75} but the slumber of wickedness weighed down on her, and she was not aware of him.

John, however, as a faithful [servant] and mediator, woke her up and proclaimed to her that the Bridegroom has come. Since she was filthy, he bathed her in [the waters of] baptism that the Groom not see her in her uncleanness when she would receive him. He brought her to the river and washed off the smoke of burnt offerings, that had diffused into her face and with which she was stained.

So like a lady, he was dressing her in precious garments.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{74} See Mt 25:1-13.
  \item \textsuperscript{75} See Mt 25:1-13.
\end{itemize}
that she, being beautiful, might be present at the wedding feast of the only-Begotten.76

John, the voice of one crying in the desert, announces the coming of the Bridegroom and all the assemblies of Judah, i.e., the Bride, comes to the wasteland where he is.

The voice between the Bridegroom and the Bride became a herald that the Bride might be aware of the Bridegroom's retinue who came. [...]  
Also John, a voice in an empty, desolate place, sounded, and the assemblies of Judah heard him.77  
The Levite sang, and the Bride greatly rejoiced in his song.78

When Christ the Bridegroom finally comes, John points him out to the Daughter of the Hebrews by bowing down to him. He is the effulgence of the Divine Being, the Lord of Israel.

Then the Bridegroom came like the sun and a glaring light, and John was moved to show the Bride his beauty.

The Levite bowed down and lowered his head in great astonishment, for he saw the Light, the Son of the Majesty, who came to him. The effulgence of the Divine Being shone forth on John, and, by his rays, he [so] inspired her with awe that she marveled at him.79

---


77. See Is 40:3; Mt 3:1-3; Mk 1:3; Lk 3:2-4 Jn 1:23.


79. Ibid., 156:3-8.
Moreover, John identifies the Bridegroom with the sacrificial Lamb who takes away the sin of Adam and his children and redeems them.

He said to the Bride, “This is the Bridegroom to whom you are betrothed. This is the Lamb who pardons the sin of Adam [see Jn 1:29]. This one abolished all the sacrifices of the son of Levi, for he is the sacrifice for the sake of sinners.”

The voice thundering from heaven and the Holy Spirit descending like a dove and coming upon Jesus (see Mt 3:16-17) witness to the fact that Christ Jesus is the Bridegroom. This manifestation allows the Bride to recognize her Groom. However, led by the Holy Spirit, Christ immediately leaves her to go into the desert to fight and defeat the Evil One, who had brought her into captivity. Afterward, he will come back to manifest himself openly with mighty deeds, claim her to himself and shower her with his riches. The wedding guests and the Bride are those whom John baptized.

The wedding guests have gathered and are waiting for the Heir of the Kingdom.

The Bride has washed, sits in awe, and awaits his coming.

Our Lord appeared as a day [breaking] on darkness.

A voice was moved to speak at the appearance of the Word and manifested to the Bride, the Daughter of Lights, [the One] to whom she was betrothed.

The Father became a witness to his only-Begotten with a voice, and the Holy Spirit manifested himself with the Savior.

In the likeness of a dove, he simply arose and descended81 after he (Jesus) has bathed, and came up from baptism.

He remained to evidently manifest that our Lord did not need baptism to be sanctified for his sake and then he would bathe.

After he had come up from the water, the Holy Spirit came down,82 led him, and he left the crowds to a desert place.83

The Bride saw the Bridegroom who has come and knew who he was, yet he immediately went out to fight against the Evil One.

He left the Bride knowing him, and being proud of him.
and went to do battle against the ruler who guards the air.  
He set himself to combat against the prince, and after having bound him, he would come to show the Bride his riches. He made straight for the one who robbed the Father of human beings and then he appeared among the multitudes.

After having been tempted, and having fought, defeated, and caused him (the Evil One) to fall, he (Jesus) manifested himself with mighty works, which he performed valiantly.

Once the fall of the adversary has occurred like lightning [see Lk 10:18], then the Son of God would begin performing signs [see Jn 2:11].

The Bride knew who the Bridegroom is, and he did not remain with her that she rejoice with him, but he left to fight to thrust down the rebel who brought the Bride into captivity from his authority, and then he would take the Daughter of the Day [to wife].

In his mimro called On the Baptism of Our Savior in the Jordan (క హస్తా),  
Jacob of Sarug interprets the baptism of Jesus (see Mt 3; Mk 1:1-13; Lk 3:1-22; Jn 1:29-34) in terms of Christ’s betrothal. He identifies the Bride of Christ not with the Hebrews but with the idol-worshiping-Nations. That is not a substitution: Christ did not choose the Nations over the Hebrews but for the Son of God desired to marry humanity. Humanity consists of both the circumcised and uncircumcised. The

---

84.  See Eph 2:2.
85.  See Jn 12:31; 14:30; 16:11.
87.  Ibid., 167-193 (Syriac); Kollamparampal, “Festal Homilies,” 162-186 (English).
two communities heeded John the Baptist’s call to repentance and came to receive his baptism. According to Luke, even tax collectors came to be baptized (see Lk 3:12). These tax collectors depict the presence of the Nations at the Jordan. Thus, the Bride of Christ, according to Jacob of Sarug, is both Israel and the pagans.

Christ, the Bridegroom, made a marriage feast for the Church of the Nations, and the world became aware of the wedding banquet he prepared. The Heir of the kingdom willed to betroth the smitten one and sent her to go to the spring that she might wash off the dust of herself. He saw the banished one, who was weak, meager, and wearied, and he mixed waters and sent her to bathe. Then she would be betrothed. He gazed at her beauty, which was changed by incense [offered] to idols, and he poured the rushing stream of the river on her face that her color might be bright.

He first brought her down to the tried water88 when he betrothed her to purge her of harlotry in holiness. The smell [emanating] from the odor of the sacrifices diffused into her. Thus, he let pure water come down on her that her body might be fragrant. She stunk from the stench of burnt offerings. Thus, he besprinkled her holiness that she might be cleansed of defilement by it. He placed the robe of glory89 in the womb of baptism and sent the Bride to go down and put [it] on in the water. He called his faithful [servant], the Progeny of Bareness, and sent him before him to go down, and bring the ornament to the Bride before he comes.

John [the Baptist] went out bearing the riches of the great treasure to adorn the Daughter of the Wretched as he was commanded. He carried the [treasure] chest of the spirit, opened it over the water, and took out garments that the Church might get dressed in holiness. He showed her wondrous garments, which she had never seen, and which were woven by the loom’s beam of God’s dwelling place. He captured her with his flattering speech heavy with promises while proclaiming the kingdom on high to the Daughter of Beggars. “Behold the kingdom of heaven is at hand [see Mt 3:2]. The Bridegroom arose to come to you that he might gladden you.”

He called the girl, and she prepared herself to consent, for she learned the Bridegroom who would come to her is the King.90

---

89. See Ibid., 336; Sebastian P. Brock, “Some Important Baptismal Themes in the Syriac Tradition,” TH, IV, no. 1,2,3 (July 1991), 202-204.
Like the Daughter of the Hebrews, the Church of the Nations must be purified because she is sullied and defiled. The smoke emanating from incense offered up to false gods covered up her beauty. Harlotry is, as mentioned above, in connection with her submission to idols. Her smell is repugnant on account of the stench of the burnt offerings that diffused into her. Therefore, John the Baptist, the marriage broker, is sent to prepare the Bride for Christ, the Bridegroom. John cleanses her, sanctifies her in the Jordan, and dresses her in wondrous garments. Her wedding dress is purified because she is sullied and defiled. The smoke emanating from his enticing speech, and she falls in love with the Bridegroom, the heavenly king.

The Church of the Nations proves to be smarter than Eve, who listened to the snake and followed its counsel (see Gn 3:1-6). The Church does not simply take John’s words, but she inquires about him and his message. She has recourse to Isaiah, who confirms John’s mission and message. The Church is waiting for conversion, which John preaches. Furthermore, John looked like a beggar, reminiscent of the austere attire of the prophet Elijah (see 2 Kgs 1:8; Zec 13:4; Mt 3:4, 11:7–8).

She (the Church) called Isaiah to learn from him concerning John [the Baptist],

“Who is this one proclaiming to me the kingdom on high?
Come, [O] Prophet, come, explain to me about the Herald,
for I need to learn the truths from you.
I shall accept your voice, which is in my favor,
for I heard the discourse of your account long ago.
You promised me conversion with your prophecy [see Is 1:27].
Come, look! Has the time perhaps arrived that I come to it (conversion)?
Look! Who is this one proclaiming precious [tidings]
while [the state of] poverty is seen on him?
His appearance is penurious, but the voice of his proclamation is rich.
His clothes are worthless, but his word is significant in everyone’s ears.
The man did not speak according to his stature when I saw him,
and the promise he sown in my ears is not insignificant like him.
He exalts his word even if he possesses absolutely nothing.
He roams the desert and announces to me the kingdom on high.
Tell me, [O] Prophet, if he is genuine, I shall listen to his words.
However, if he is not genuine, I shall not be deceived by him as [I was] by
others.
Your Lord is coming, and I am getting ready to go before him.
Reveal the truth to me. You shall not be blamed.”93

Isaiah assures the Church that John is genuine. Additionally, he
informs her that he is the voice crying out in the desert (see Is 40:3) before the
King’s Son, and tells her to accept John’s words and to allow him to baptize
her.

Isaiah drew nearer to teach the Church concerning John [the Baptist],
“He is the sharer of the mystery of the Bridegroom, your Lord. Accept his
words.
This is the voice crying out in the desert before the King’s Son,
‘Prepare, prepare the way for the Lord in faith.’
Go, descend and bathe. Do not reject the Herald.
He is making straight a rugged place to prepare the way for the King92 to
come.”93

91. Ibid., 169:3-170:1.
92. See Is 40:3; Mt 3:3; Mk 1:3; Lk 3:4; Jn 1:23.
Consequently, the Church goes down to the Jordan and allows John to baptize her. Meanwhile, John instructs her that she amend her ways and be prepared for the Bridegroom to come. Smitten by his words, the Church confuses John the Baptist with the Bridegroom (see Lk 3:15; Acts 13:25). Could he be the awaited Messiah? John, the faithful servant, corrects the Church. He pushes her away from him and tells her that he is not the Bridegroom (see Lk 3:16; Jn 1:20, 3:28). He humbles himself so low that he does not deem himself worthy of his master’s sandals (see Mt 3:11; Mk 1:7; Jn 1:27), and he instructs her that her Betrothed is coming after him.

The Church, the Bride of the King, went to John.
He began to bathe, cleanse, purify, and sanctify her.
He became a trustworthy [person] to her and labored to adorn her according to his ability.
He taught, and instructed her that she be reformed, for she was perverse.
She heard his voice, fell for his words, and thought that he is the bridegroom to whom she was betrothed.⁹⁴
She affectionately took the servant for the Lord, for Christ was hidden from her among the tribes [of Israel] [see Jn 1:26].
The faithful [servant] realized that the Bride he betrothed clung to him, and began to remove [her] off his lap crying out, “I am not the Bridegroom.”⁹⁵
He pushed her back away from him that she not go astray because of him, for he was [merely] a servant, and lifted her up that she hang on the Bridegroom’s hope while he went away [see Jn 3:29-30].
He humbled himself [saying], “I am neither worthy of nor equal to his sandals,”⁹⁶ to preserve the [utter] loftiness of his Lord.
He saw the girl who has eyes for him⁹⁷ because [he is] a Nazirite⁹⁸ and hastened to sever the cause of offense from her mind.
He bound her by a covenant to wait for the Bridegroom and not look at him.

---

96. See Mt 3:11; Mk 1:7; Lk 3:16; Jn 1:27.
97. Lit. settled her eye on him
98. See Nm 6:1-21; Lk 1:15.
while proclaiming to her, “He is coming after me,” and is more ancient than me.”

The Bride is there along the Jordan and anticipates the coming of her Beloved. She does not know who he is, yet is aware that he is among the wedding guests (see Jn 1:26), and expects one of them to be the long awaited Bridegroom. Therefore, she examines the wedding-guests one by one. She is inflamed with his love and ready to go with him in the womb of baptism, for his baptism is not like John’s. Her Beloved perfects John’s baptism, and baptizes with Spirit and Fire (see Mt 3:11; Jn 1:26–27, 33; Acts 1:5).

She started anticipating when she would see him, [and when] he would come to her while she considered the baptized one after another. She cast her eye over the many for a moment to see among them the only-Begotten, to whom she is betrothed. Whenever one would descend to be baptized, the crowds would encircle him to examine him, for if perhaps he might be the Christ to come. The Church gathered and remained by John in the desert while she considered the wedding guests to see which one is the Bridegroom. She surrounded the river and cast her eyes over its rushing streams to receive the Betrothed of Truth (مُحِّيَّة معْمَل) from the water. The beautiful one is standing [there], looking for the Bridegroom, and anticipating when he would come to enter with him the womb of the waters to be sanctified. She spread out her arms and waited for him round about the waters that when he would bathe, he would be received in holiness. [...] The Bride stood [there] by the faithful [servant], the Progeny of Bareness, waited for him in anticipation of when he would signal to her that this is the Bridegroom. She expected him to point out the Savior.

99. See Mt 3:11; Lk 3:16; Jn 1:27.
100. See Jn 1:15
and he was waiting for the Father to testify for his Beloved. Whenever someone would go down to be baptized, she would hasten to them to learn from them affectionately if they were the Bridegroom. He said to the crowds, “Behold the Bridegroom is among you [see Jn 1:26],” and this saying kindled a fire in the Bride. He also proclaimed, “I am neither worthy of nor equal to his sandals,” and he inflamed her once more with the love of Jesus and his magnificence. The Bride of Light pressed forward and stood by John that when he would point out to her who the Bridegroom is, she would bow down before him. [From the moment when] someone was brought to be baptized until they went up [from the river], the eye of the Bride was cast over them. Meanwhile, John does not divulge the identity of the Bridegroom, for he did not know who he is (see Jn 1:33). He is awaiting the Spirit to point him out by his coming down and remaining on him, and for the voice of the Father to declare that he is his beloved Son.

John was also looking for him (the Bridegroom), for when he would come, through him, his (John’s) deficient baptism would be made perfect. He kept the secret that was between him and the Father and was anticipating the Spirit to testify for the True One. Laying his hands to baptize those who were coming, he would look up because of the agreement that was there. He turned his eyes on the many who were with him to see which one the Spirit, when sent, would point out.

102. See Mt 3:11; Mk 1:7; Lk 3:16; Jn 1:27.
He regarded that Bird (the Holy Spirit), the Mistress of the Heavens: how he would come down, and on whom he would alight to testify for him. He was looking for the swift Pinions, bearers of the ends [of the universe], to see whom they would receive from the waters.

He was thirsty for seeing the Wing that soars without flapping, for when he would appear, he would testify for the Savior. He was listening for the mighty voice of the Father to hear from it concerning whom it cries out, “He is my Son, my Beloved.”

Having been purified and made perfect with repentance, the Bride now awaits the coming of the Bridegroom to come to her. Jacob’s description is reminiscent of his account of when the Bride Israel had been cleansed and was ready for her Bridegroom to descend on Mt. Sinai (see above). Everyone anticipates his arrival, but no one knows who he is until he manifests himself, and the Father’s voice and the Spirit testify for him. Suddenly, Jesus leaves the crowds and goes to the river to be baptized.

After the Bride was perfected with the ornaments of repentance, bathed, and ascended from the waters of baptism, and after the entire wedding feast was prepared including its arrangements, but only the Bridegroom delayed coming to visit his own [see Mt 25:3]—after the washing of the wedding guests took place, and it cleansed them,—but they were not dressed in the garments of the Spirit from the waters—and when all the Nations were standing naked expecting the Bridegroom to come to clothe them, and after the dirt on the Bride was washed away with water, and she ascended, and [when] everyone was waiting for the white garments the Bridegroom would bring, and when baptism was lacking the remission [of sins], and no one has received the Holy Spirit from the waters [yet],

---

104. See Is 42:1; Mt 3:16; Mk 1:9; Lk 3:22; Jn 1:32.
105. See Mt 3:17; Mk 1:11; Lk 3:22.
and while the entire wedding party was looking for the Bridegroom [asking]
where he is [see Lk 3:15],
the Son of the King left the crowds to come to the River.\(^{108}\)

To prevent a misunderstanding concerning who the Bridegroom is, John and the crowds clear the waters of the river, and leave him standing alone in the Jordan separated from everyone else. Consequently, the identity of the Bridegroom is finally revealed: he is Jesus Christ,\(^{109}\) the Heir to the heavenly kingdom.

He (John) signaled the wedding guests to give him a place among the crowds that the Bridegroom might gloriously show himself to all the Nations. The crowds encircling the baptismal [waters] fled, and the Heir to the kingdom separately stood alone.\(^{110}\)

John assures the Bride that Jesus is her Betrothed.

The faithful servant (John) hastened to tell the free [Church] of the Savior. He called the chaste [Church] to show her that he is her Lord, “To this Bridegroom have I betrothed you, [O] Church, from the beginning. The faithful servant (John) hastened to tell the free [Church] of the Savior. He (John) signaled the wedding guests to give him a place among the crowds and while the entire wedding party was looking for the Bridegroom [asking] where he is [see Lk 3:15], the Son of the King left the crowds to come to the River.\(^{108}\)

For this One have I kept you that you might wait for him. For this One have I guarded you with great care like a faithful servant.\(^{111}\)
David also testifies for Jesus and confirms John’s witness.

While John was instructing the Bride of the King, behold the singer of the Holy Spirit, David, approached singing to her, “Listen, my daughter, see, and incline your ear to glorious [things] and forget your people and your father’s house [see Ps 45:11], for they are incredulous. Yes, he is in truth your Lord. Come and bow down to him. Do not be in doubt about the Savior, for he has come to you.”

After Isaiah validates John’s authenticity, John identifies the Bridegroom to the Church, and David echoes John testimony about Jesus, the circumspect Church became certain that Jesus is her Bridegroom. She draws nigh, witnesses the Lord’s baptism, and is now ready to bow down to him in worship.

The Church learned from both John [the Baptist] and David and was confident that he is the Bridegroom, to whom she was betrothed. She came nearer and stood watching how he was also being baptized that, when he ascends from the waters, she might bow down before him.

In describing the baptism of the Lord in the Jordan, the bishop of Batnan employs a language redolent of the one he utilized limning the betrothal of the Son of God on Mt. Sinai and interpreting the dark cloud as the Bridegroom’s bridal chamber.

The Fiery Coal (Jesus) came down to wash in the rushing streams, and the fire of his holiness poured there. The Flame came, removed the garments he was wearing and came down to set ablaze the waters of baptism. The heavenly beings were astonished at the washing of the Blaze when his shining body was washed to sanctify the waters. The rushing streams of waters mingled with the [Blaze's] rays.

---

112. Ibid., 176:1-6.

113. Ibid., 176:7-10.

and the river broke forth into flames by the effulgence that dwelt in it.
The currents pitched a tabernacle of billows, and blazing thunders surrounded it from all sides.
Creation was struck with amazement and great astonishment when the Flame went down to be baptized by John [the Baptist].
The whole atmosphere grew hot and was ablaze in holiness, for the Son of the Holy One came down for baptism although he had no need to do so.
The wind was intensely kindled by the fire to receive splendidly the Bridegroom [coming out] from the waters.
An exalted glory broke out in flames [issuing] from all regions and reverentially made a spectacle for the Heir of the kingdom.
Clouds of fire flew from the uttermost parts [of the universe] and hovered there to become a bridal chamber for the glorious Bridegroom, who went down to be baptized.
Dark clouds came out like veils of a royal palace that, when the Son of the King would have washed, he might be received inside them.
The Father spread select apparel above the air: effulgence, glory, astonishing, thunder, and dark clouds [see Ex 19].
He surrounded the river with amazing and unfathomable colors to exalt the wedding feast of his Son, the Only-Begotten.
He tore through the heavens and vehemently cried aloud, "Behold this is my Son. This is truly my Beloved."116
The Spirit flew from the [dwelling of the] Father with great astonishment, fluttered over his Beloved, flew down, alighted, and remained on117 [him].118

115. This translation differs from that of Kollamparampil, “The tips of the waves were tossed about by the currents.” Kollamparampil, “Festal Homilies,” 179:349.
116. Mt 3:17; Mk 1:11; Lk 3:22.
117. See Mt 3:16; Mk 1:10; Lk 3:22.
Just as smoke enveloped Mt. Sinai when the Lord came down upon it in fire (see Ex 19:18), so the Jordan becomes ablaze, and smoke covers it when Jesus, the Fiery Coal, the Flame (see Is 6:6; Ez 1:13, 10:2-13.), the Blaze, descended into its waters. At the descent of the Bridegroom, the streams of the river pitch a tabernacle, clouds of fire becomes the bridal chamber, dark clouds cover it like veils of a royal palace, thunder sounds, and unfathomable colors, which conjure up images of lightning, paint the skies (see Ex 19:16-19). Ex 19 is the source of this picturesque scene, which Jacob of Sarug uses to describe here the wedding feast of the Son to the Church in the Jordan just as he did when he portrayed the betrothal ceremony of the Only-Begotten to Israel in Sinai.

The Church, the Bride of Light, marveled at the King-Bridegroom, since, through his washing, the heights and the depths were reconciled.

She saw the river: its rushing streams quivered, and its entirety was kindled. She also heard the voice of the Father proclaiming his Beloved. She sent for and called upon the Harp of the Spirit, David, to come and sing hymns suited for the wedding feast.

“Come, [O] son of Jesse, and bring your psalms with you that we, today, rejoice in the marriage feast of your Lord and Son.”

Related to the bridal chamber imagery is the bright cloud found in the transfiguration of Jesus (Mt 17:1-8; Mk 9:2-8; Lk 9:28-36). Commenting on this biblical pericope in his mimro entitled On the Transfiguration of Jesus on Mt. Tabor and on Moses and Elijah Who Were Speaking with Him. Jacob of Sarug interprets the bright cloud that cast shadow over the apostles and out of which the voice of the Father comes out (see Mt 17:5; Mk 9:7; Lk 9:34-35) as the Bridegroom’s bridal

119. See 1 Sm 16:11-13; 1 Chr 2:13-15.
chamber made by his Father. Thus, the bishop of Batnan connects the scenes at Mt. Sinai, in the Jordan River, and at Mt. Tabor. The cloud is the link between them, howbeit no biblical narrative of Jesus’s baptism speaks of one. Still, Jacob of Sarug sees one present on account of the voice of the Father testifying to Jesus. This voice comes from heaven. Accordingly, it issues forth out of a cloud. Further, the same bright cloud also symbolizes the Bride of Light, the Church.

His Father symbolized the Bride of Light as the bright cloud [see Mt 17:5], for she is one, and the mysteries affectionately betrothed her to the One. The Father placed [on the hand] of the Daughter of the Light a bright ring, and betrothed her to his Son, for the Bridegroom is also completely light. He symbolized the Church as a dazzling cloud, and the Father enjoined her to listen to his Son [see Mt 17:5] all he says to her. By apostleship and prophecy, one thing was manifest: the Bridegroom is one! Blessed is the One, whose mystery accomplished everything.

The voice of the Father and the descent of the Holy Spirit upon Jesus Christ at his baptism reveal to the Church the divine identity of Jesus. Therefore, she shows him honor by adoring him. “The Spirit surrounded the Bridegroom, the Baptized One, with feathers of glory. Thus, the Church was confident that it is he and fell down before him.”

124. See Jn 4:26, 6:20, 8:24, 8:28, 8:58, 13:19, 15:1, 18:5.
By recognizing and accepting Jesus Christ, the Church declares that she is related to God the Father by marriage. She belongs to his Son and is his daughter-in-law.

Until I had learned what his race is and who his Father is, I did not accept to wash with him through baptism. The voice proclaiming “He is my beloved Son” gave me a sign, and then I agreed to the betrothal from his herald. I believed his Father and accepted to be the betrothed of his Son. I am the daughter-in-law of the Father, before whom the mountains tremble. The Father does not have another Son except that one, the One who married me at [my] baptismal birth. I was a harlot, and, in water, he made me a virgin, a virgin also gave birth to him in the flesh miraculously. Therefore, I do not need to learn again concerning him.127

The Church moreover professes her adulterous past, but, more importantly, realizes that her Lord purifies her in waters of baptism, thus making her a virgin, the theme of the following section.

5.2.3 The Harlot Made a Virgin

Before submitting herself to the Lord, the virgin Daughter of the Nations whom he had chosen for himself was a harlot: she had worshiped other gods and defiled herself. Jacob’s mimro On Holy Baptism provides the researcher with the theme at hand.

Come, [O] Black One, whose color the Sun rendered odious by his rising.


The Church moreover professes her adulterous past, but, more importantly, realizes that her Lord purifies her in waters of baptism, thus making her a virgin, the theme of the following section.

5.2.3 The Harlot Made a Virgin

Before submitting herself to the Lord, the virgin Daughter of the Nations whom he had chosen for himself was a harlot: she had worshiped other gods and defiled herself. Jacob’s mimro On Holy Baptism provides the researcher with the theme at hand.

Come, [O] Black One, whose color the Sun rendered odious by his rising.

Put on your betrothed and be with him through a pure union. Come, [O] Harlot, and give your hand to the Only-Begotten, and he will make you a virgin in the water in a holy manner. Come, [O] Daughter of the Nations, who went a whoring after nugatory gods.

126. See Mt 3:17; Mk 1:11; Lk 3:22; 2 Pt 1:17.
128. See “HSJS I,” 193-211.
Clothe yourself with magnificence through the forgiving waters, which was prepared for you.

Come, [O] Foul One, who stunk with the smoke of sacrifices, shine from the effulgence and may your smell be pleasing through anointing.

Come to baptism, [O] Old Woman, who grew old by idolatry.

Become a comely, and glorious girl from the waters.

Come, descend, and clothe yourself with the divinely woven garment.

Then ascend, and show us your sweet beauty that we rejoice with you.

Come, be adorned by the spring gushing out light that the world see you with the ornament of the Holy Spirit.129

The effects of pagan rituals affected the Daughter of the Arameans. Her outward appearance displays their effects on her. She is black because of the smoke emanating from the innumerable burnt-offerings she raised to her false gods and she stinks owning to their foul smell. Weighed down by idolatry, she becomes old, but the state of this strumpet changes radically by her pure union with Jesus Christ in the waters of the Jordan. The giving of the hand represents her consent to this marriage. Upon entering the waters, she declares her repentance and professes her faith in the Only-Begotten. In the bosom of the water, Jesus Christ washes and anoints the harlot, thus making her his unblemished and virgin Bride by forgiving her sins. He rejuvenates her, makes her a glorious girl, perfumes her, dresses her in a divinely woven garment, i.e., her wedding dress, and adorns her with the spring gushing out light (an allusion to Jn 19:34), the ornament of the Holy Spirit. These images are undoubtedly symbols of the three Christian mysteries: baptism, Chrismation, and Eucharist.

129. Ibid., 206.2-15.
Unlike any virgin girl who loses her innocence on her wedding nights, the Daughter of the Nations, the Church, gains her virginity at her marriage feast.

Come, enter and see an awesome, and amazing deed because nothing like it happened before it or will happen after it: a virgin bears a Son and remains in her virginity, and a harlot becomes a virgin from her wedding feast. The Son of God came to the virgin, made her his mother, and when he betrothed the harlot from the Nations, he made her a virgin. Behold the virgin has a child and milk [in her breasts] without marriage, and the harlot is in a virginal state, which she gained at her marriage feast.

The Son of the King performed a wonder for the Bride whom he brought: when he married a harlot from the street, he made her a virgin. Virgins who are betrothed lose their virginity on their wedding [night]. However, the Daughter of the Nations gained hers from her wedding feast. She remained a harlot until her marriage feast and [became] a virgin from [the time of] her wedding feast onward. She committed harlotry with idols ...

When the Crucified one made a wedding feast for her, she became a virgin. Idols marred her, and she became a bride among gods. She met images and was joined to graven images in love. She committed adultery with the devil, and demons were her defiled companions.

The Daughter of the Aramaeans went a whoring, was satisfied, committed adultery, [and] was disgraced. The Bridegroom married the harlot from the street, brought her down to the waters, and made her a virgin. Behold she is with him.

Who is this one who made the harlot a virgin except for the one who made the virgin his mother? Unless a virgin had given birth to Wonder [see Is 9:5], it would be impossible for a harlot to become a virgin. Since he made a Virgin a mother, behold a harlot is made a virgin and dwells with him. The entire Creation marveled at how much she committed adultery and went a whoring, and at how much she was disgraced and exalted. Her adultery and her foul name [she earned] because of them ceased, [for] the Bridegroom gave her a beautiful name and the house of his Father. Behold she elates at the virginity, which the Bridegroom had given her, at the white [garments], which she put on from the waters [when] she went down [to the river].

---


267
Reverting to a virginal state is possible on account of the Son of God, for just as he is unfathomably born of a virgin, so he makes a harlot a virgin at her wedding feast. The wedding feast refers to the baptism of Jesus in the Jordan and the Church’s washing in its waters. This union is eternal, and the virginal state of the Church is too. Henceforth, she is exalted and dwells with the Bridegroom, who made her the heir to his heavenly Kingdom, the house of the Father. The virgin Bride is now proud of her virginity as much as she is ashamed of her harlotry.

The Son of God further makes the Bride, the Church, beautiful, and her beauty is unparalleled. She reflects the light of her Bridegroom and glows with the colors of water and blood flowing from his side on the cross. Her mouth is like a scarlet thread on account of the blood of her Lord and Savior she drinks. Besides, she is vested with embroidered bright garment woven of Fire and Spirit (See Mt 3:11; Mk 1:8; Lk 3:16; Jn 1:33). With the vestment, the Bride resembles a high-priest in the holy of holies.
How beautiful are you, [O] Daughter of the Aramaeans, how beautiful [are you],
and your entire countenance looks like a beautiful morning light.
A certain great light shines on your forehead.
If even the Sun looked at it, it would be immediately blinded.
Your clean mouth resembles a scarlet thread [see Sg 4:3],
and it seems to me that your lips are also wet with blood.
Your beauty shines out with two colors in the assemblies:
with the blood and waters flowing for you from the beautiful One.
Your bridal chamber is in the waters, and your dwelling in the dark cloud of
the exalted One.
Your beloved is the Cross, and your Hope is at the right [hand] of the Father.
You are wearing an embroidered vestment like [that of] a high priest in the
holy of holies.
A garment whose entirety is light has been woven for you [of] Fire and Spirit.
O Daughter of the Nations, you are betrothed to the Light within the
waters.131

The Bride reflects through and through her Bridegroom, for she is
vested with him. Jacob of Sarug sees Christ on the cross through the colors of
the water and blood flowing from his side on the Cross. White and red are the
colors of Jesus, and now they are the colors of the Bride. The color white, a
reference to baptism, is that of her light emanating from her. In fact, she
shines infinitely brighter than the sun. Red, the color of blood, is the color of
her lips and her wedding garment. With these two colors, the Bride is
unmatched in beauty. Thus, the Church is unequaled with the mysteries of
baptism and Eucharist!

Your Church knelt at your wounds to drink your blood.
Behold it is painted on her lips like a scarlet thread [see Sg 4:3].
Wearing you, the Bride ascends from the water
and resembles the incense and smoke of a fine censer.
That black [Bride], whom evil spirits blackened with their offerings,
behold, is glorious because of you, and splendid like a dark cloud.

Behold, [O] Son of God, are blood-red.  
Behold you are white, for, behold, water and blood, are flowing down on you like fountainheads. Behold the Bride, who was baptized by your crucifixion, is wearing you, and her beauty shines magnificent, powerful colors. She was baptized in water and wore light like the day, and your blood became for her a glorious garment of scarlet. Behold! You, [O] Daughter of the Aramaeans, are beautiful! You are bright! On account of your light, the sun would be darkened if it would look at you. Who has given you this beauty? Who has given it to you?
Behold! The entire world is captivated by your beauty while it marvels at you!

The reference to water and blood flowing from the side of the crucified one allows a transition into the next section, the betrothal on the cross.

5.3 Betrothal on the Cross

5.3.1 Jacob’s Dream at Bethel

Besides at the Jordan, the Son of God betroths the Church of the Nations on the cross. This theme is also typologically expressed in Jacob’s dream at Bethel (see Gn 28:10-22). It is another Old Testament account which the bishop of Batnan construes as the betrothal of God’s Son to the Church and expounds on it in his mimro entitled On Jacob’s Vision at Bethel. 

132. See Sg 5:10.
133. See Jn 19:34.
Just as Abraham charges his chief steward not to betroth Isaac to a Canaanite woman (Gn 24:3-4), so Isaac directs his son Jacob not to wed a pagan girl, but instead to choose a wife for himself from among the daughters of his uncle, Laban (see Gn 28:1-2). Jacob leaves his home for Haran, Laban’s hometown, and takes with him on this journey only a staff (see Gn 32:11). On his way to fulfill his father’s exhortation, Jacob comes upon a certain place. He stops there for the night, puts a stone under his head like a pillow, sleeps, and dreams of a ladder which is so long that it extends from the ground until the heavens (see Gn 28:11-12).

The bishop of Batnan already sees in this biblical account a foreshadowing of both the cross of Jesus Christ and his death. The angels “saw that he (Jacob) embraced his staff and slept on the mountaintop. The [heavenly] hosts surrounded him [see Gn 28:12] to see the image of the crucifixion.”136 Thus, Jacob’s slumber is “a repose which depicted the mystery of the death of the Son of God,”137 and his staff is a symbol of the cross. “He (Jacob) took the staff with him when he went on the journey that it might represent in truth the Son’s cross.”138 Not only does Jacob’s sleep depict the scene of the crucifixion, but it prefigures the betrothal of Christ to his Church as well.

Who has betrothed a woman with a staff except for Jacob who took nothing else with him when he went away [see Gn 32:11]? The staff provided the entire dowry of his engagement. With it, he guarded the sheep he pastured from harm. With it, he chased away the savage beast from his pasture. In it, he found a companion for the road and riches during peacetime. The Son of God manifested in the world only the cross, and all riches poured forth from it on the creation. With it, the forsaken Church of the Nations was betrothed.

209-220.
137. Ibid., 193:10.
By it, Satan and death were driven away like thieves. Jacob took [with him] its mystery when he went away to Haran [see Gn 28:10]. For this reason is his journey more exalted than that [of others]. He dozed off on his staff, set a rock as his pillow and fell asleep [see Gn 28:11], that is the Son who betrothed the Church and died on the cross.139

The crucifixion signifies the betrothal of the Son of God to his Church. That the cross and the staff are both betrothal dowries highlights further the parallelism between the staff and the cross.140 The staff is Jacob’s sole possession. He brought nothing with him when he left his father’s house except for it (see Gn 32:11), but he presents it as his dowry to acquire the two sisters, Leah and Rachel.141 Jacob’s staff, according to Jacob of Sarug, symbolizes Christ’s marriage portion. Since the Son of God manifests only his cross in the world, it is his sole belonging and dowry. With and on it, he betroths the Church. Moreover, Jacob used his staff to protect his sheep and drive away the savage beast. Similarly, Christ protects the sheep, his Bride, by utterly defeating Satan and death with his cross.

The Cross descended to make a betrothal settlement, and without oil [see Gn 28:18] its word could not have been proven true. The type of the Son appeared to the sage, and when he woke up, he painted an image of him that befits him. The revelation descended and stopped him while on [his] way [to Haran] that he would not pass by until he betroths the Church to the Son. “Accomplish my [affair], and you may move on to your business afterward. Represent me with types, and then you may pursue your [goal]. Prepare for me a mystical marriage feast here with a new vision, and afterward, you may take for yourself a woman who is also a symbol.

139. Ibid., 194:1-14.


141. As will be shown below, Leah and Rachel, Jacob’s wives, are types of the Synagogue and the Church respectively.
Betroth me a wife, and the daughter of Haran may be afterward betrothed. Build me a house, and then you may carry out your plans. If the daughter of the king would not be mystically betrothed, also your journey would not be rightly established. Write me a contract for the Church’s wedding and pass by. Travel the road on whose entirety the mysteries are depicted. Set up a memorial to the vision on the mountain, and you may go afterward lest the vision of the mystery slip your mind. Bring oil, pour it on the stone which is the Church, and depict her for me, for after a time she will return. Establish the foundation of the grand house of the King’s Bride that upon it all the Just build all their offsprings. Interweave me a bridal chamber that the mystery enter and be celebrated in it until I prepare a magnificent wedding feast in the entire world.142

Jacob is the marriage broker just like Moses and John the Baptist after him. God’s providence guided Jacob to that place where he slept that he be the go-between, the one who betroths the Church to the Son of God, prepare him a mystical marriage feast with a new vision - an allusion to the pouring of oil - and write him a wedding contract with the Church. Jacob of Sarug explicitly states that the stone Jacob uses as a pillow (see Gn 28:11) is a symbol of the Church. She will return not as a symbol but as the community which professes its faith in the divinity of Christ. The rock, moreover, is an image of the grand house of the King’s Bride and her bridal chamber. In this bridal chamber, the mystery will be celebrated. The pouring of oil represents both the ratification of the betrothal contract and the bridal ceremony celebrated by

Jacob. The Son of God reveals all this symbolism when he prepares his magnificent wedding feast on Golgotha.

5.3.2 The Betrothal of Jacob to Leah and Rachel

After Jacob’s arrival to Haran, his uncle Laban tricks him into marrying Leah, but Isaac’s son finally espouses Rachel, Leah’s younger sister, whom he has desired since the day he saw her at the well (see Gn 29:1-30). Jacob of Sarug sees the patriarch Jacob as a type of Christ and the two sisters, Leah and Rachel, as types of the Synagogue and the Church respectively. This interpretation led the bishop of Batnan to understand Jacob’s betrothal and eventual marriage to the daughters of his mother’s brother, Laban, as an image of Christ’s betrothal to both the Synagogue and the Church. Jacob of Sarug expounds on this subject in his minro entitled On Our Lord and Jacob, the Church and Rachel, Leah and the Synagogue (ܡܳܕܳ柝Š ܘܪܰܒ܃ ܡܳܪܳܢ). 143

The Son of God intended from ever to come down to earth. 144 He “set his face to come to betroth the Church of the Nations.”145 The coming down of the Son of God, his betrothal to the Church, and return to his heavenly abode are typologically depicted in the account of Jacob going to Haran, espousing Rachel, the younger daughter of Laban, and returning to his father.146 In this

145. Ibid., 208:8.
146. See Ibid., 210:6-7.

He was his Lord’s shadow by his actions: he came down, got betrothed, grew rich, and went up to his father.
context, Jacob typifies the Lord Jesus Christ, and Rachel the Church of the Pagans.

The tidings of his (the Son of God’s) road sent Jacob to the Haranites that the great just One go down to betroth the Daughter of the Pagans. That one (Rachel) who grew up among the images of idolatry [is betrothed] to this one (Jacob), rich in both blessings and revelations.

“For the unbelieving wife is made holy through [her] holy husband” just as Paul wrote [see 1 Cor 7:14]. Now, if Rachel was holy on account of Jacob, how much [more] is the Church of the Nations sanctified through Jacob’s Lord?

The [two] daughters of pagans are made holy by a just man (Jacob), that is [to say], the Son made the assemblies of the Nations holy. Unless Jacob bore the image of the Son, he would not have become renowned for his actions.

Jacob’s actions make sense only if they foreshadow those of the Son of God. His travel to Haran seeking a wife prefigures the Son’s journey from his heavenly abode to earth to marry the Church, represented by Rachel. Rachel, the daughter of the pagans in Haran, is a type of the Church made up of Nations who worshiped idols. Although the Bride is unclean, she is sanctified by the Holy One. Jacob bases his argument on Paul’s first letter to the Corinthians. If an unbelieving wife is made holy through her believing husband (see 1 Cor 7:14), how much more is the Church of the Nations made holy by her heavenly Bridegroom? Jesus Christ erases the Church’s idolatrous past and makes her pure and her holy.

Jacob of Sarug contrasts Rachel with her older sister so as to juxtapose the Church and the Synagogue. Rachel is glorious and splendid, whereas

147. See Ibid., 223:14.

Our Lord is typified by Jacob, and the Church by the daughter of Laban (Rachel).

Leah is scorned and ugly-eyed, a reference to her dull eyes (see Gn 29:17). The younger sister exudes the glory of the Church, and the beauty of the Church is hidden in and shines through her, but her older sister represents the unwanted and disdained Synagogue.

How much is the account of Leah, the ugly-eyed [see Gn 29:17], scorned, now wherefore unless for the sake of the mystery that is served by her? How much is her sister, Rachel, glorious, in the Holy Scriptures? The Church’s beauty lie hid in her. That is why her splendor grew great.149

Jacob meets Rachel at a well (see Gn 29:9-10). The large stone that covered the well’s mouth (see Gn 29:2) is only rolled away once all the shepherds who used that well to water their flock are assembled there (see Gn 29:3, 29:8). This well, according to Jacob of Sarug, is not just a well-water, but also a well full of the Lord’s mysteries.150 These mysteries are baptism and the Eucharist which the Lord gave to his Church on the cross. Although the heavy stone requires the strength of all the shepherds to roll it away, Jacob, upon seeing Rachel, goes up and moves the weighty cover away from the mouth of the well (see Gn 29:10). His cousin’s beauty stirred him to action, for what he had seen reflected on her face was the countenance and comeliness of the Church, the Betrothed of the Mysteries.

The collective power of the many shepherds [is required] to push off the stone of Mysteries, and then it could be rolled away.151 Jacob stood and looked at the herds inflamed [with thirst].152 There was no strength to lift up the stone and water them [see Gn 29:8]. While he was standing around, Rachel came to the flock [see Gn 29:9]. Once he saw her, he moved the stone off [the well] that the sheep drink.153 Rachel’s beauty moved Jacob after he saw her to roll away the stone that was heavy for the many

---

149. Ibid., 209:19-210:1.
150. Ibid., 210:14-15.
He (Jacob) reached the well, not a well of water but of mysteries, for if one thinks about [it], it is filled with mysteries more than with water.
151. See Gn 29:3
152. See Gn 29:2
153. See Gn 29:10
as if her beautiful appearance add strength to him
that he lift up the heavy, very large stone and water the sheep.
The mystery of the Church was placed on her face as beryl,
and her just fiancé, Jacob, earnestly desired her countenance.
The assembly of the Nations sprinkled beauties on that Daughter of the
Pagans
that, when Jacob would see her, he bestir himself to the great deed.
He moved the large stone off [the well] and watered the sheep [see Gn 29:10],
for he saw that the Betrothed of the Mysteries is more splendid than her
companions.
All the herds drank there because of Rachel,
who was the cause [of Jacob’s action] owing to her beauty, love, and
splendor.\textsuperscript{154}

The heavy, big stone is a symbol of sin. Just like the herds which are
not able to drink because of the large stone placed on the mouth of the well,
humanity is not able to delight in the fount of the world because of sin that
covers it. By removing the stone, Jacob depicts the Lord presenting the
Church with baptism that she be purified and sanctified by its waters.

He (our Lord) saw sin placed at the fount of the world,
and humanity did not have the drink of life to delight in it.
He saw the Nations, like the herds, in a great thirst,
and the spring of life is blocked as if with a stone.
He saw the Church, like Rachel, and rushed forth to meet her,
and, like the rock, he removed sin that was heavy.
He unblocked Baptism for his Betrothed that she wash there,
draw water and be watered, like the herds, the Nations of the Earth.
He raised the weight of sins with his awesome power
and revealed the source of the sweet drink for the entire world.
He poured out a drink for the entire nations on account of the Church,
just like the herds drank because of Rachel.\textsuperscript{155}

\textsuperscript{154} "HSJS III," 211:1-18.

\textsuperscript{155} Ibid., 213:1-12.
One expects baptism to be an image of the Lord’s betrothal to the Church at the Jordan river. However, the lack of reference to John the Baptist or the Jordan River makes this connection questionable. Jacob and Rachel’s espousal at the well foreshadows Christ betrothal to his Church on the cross. The water that Jacob drew to water the sheep of Rachel on her account is a symbol of the drink that the Lord gave the Nations because of the Church. Christ reveals the source of the sweet drink for the entire world. This well, a clear allusion to the Eucharist, is in reference to the side of Christ gushing water and blood.

Then Jacob kisses Rachel. The bishop of Batnan explains that this is not a kiss of lust. Isaac’s son does not desire his cousin sexually, for he weeps aloud when kissing her (see Gn 29:11). He cries because he was affected by the Son’s suffering: the Passion of Jesus Christ causes Jacob to weep aloud.

Jacob, therefore, was not inflamed with lust, yet he was affected by the mysteries of the Son’s suffering. Who has kissed his betrothed while crying except for Jacob [see Gn 29:11], who saw the symbol of the Church in Rachel while she was getting betrothed? It is also right that he weeps and suffers while kissing her that he depict the sufferings of the Son through his betrothal. With his tears, he drew an image of the suffering of the Son of God, for, while he was betrothing the Church, he suffered. Then she got betrothed. Behold how more important is the Son’s road than that of his heralds, and the betrothal of the King-Bridegroom than [that of] his messengers.

---

156. Ibid., 211:19-212:2.

Do not think, my son, that Jacob desired her (Rachel) sexually, for even after he kissed he bitterly wept in great pain. If it were lust, he would not have shed tears there, for lust engenders cheerfulness by its fervor. Suffering engenders weeping and sadness, and, where there is weeping, absolutely there is no lust.
Jacob offered tears to Rachel when he betrothed her, and our Lord sprinkled the Church with his blood when he saved her. Tears are also the shadow of the blood, for, unless caused by suffering, they would not be produced by the pupils. The weeping of the just Jacob, therefore, was the shadow of the extraordinary pain which saved the Church of the Nations. Come, see our Lord, who came to the world from his Father, emptied himself [see Phil 2:7] to make his way in humility.

Jacob’s tears are an image of the suffering of Jesus on the cross. Jacob weeps when he kisses Rachel because he perceives that the Son will greatly suffer for his Church. Jacob offers Rachel tears when he betroths her, whereas our Lord offers his blood to the Church when he saves her. Tears are a symbol of the extraordinary pain undergone by Christ to redeem his Church. Jacob of Sarug interprets the espousal of Jacob to Rachel as a type of the Heavenly Bridegroom’s betrothal to his Bride, the Church, on the cross.

The suffering Jacob also represents the Lord’s suffering withstands working for his uncle, Laban. Jacob the shepherd, who hired himself out in exchange for Rachel (see Gn 29:18), is a type of Christ, the great Shepherd, who undergoes great sufferings for the sake of his Church, the Worshiper of Images. Jacob carries a staff, whereas the Lord carries the cross, his rod.

The whole type of our Lord took place here, for, in exchange for the Church, he was willing to undergo great labor. The Son of God hired himself out to sufferings because of his love to betroth, by his afflictions, the Church, who had been forsaken. He suffered on the cross for the sake of the Worshiper of Images that she be his in holiness after his labor. He accepted to pastor the entire flock of human beings.

with the great staff of the crucifixion when he suffered. Nations, worlds, legions, congregations, and regions he accepted to pastor only that the Church return to him. He guarded the pasture with labor, care, and afflictions: when sufferings and torment befell him for her sake; when he was beaten to gather the lost and lowered his shoulders for those who had gone astray to pick them up, when he stood in the midst of the crowds instead of a pasture, and nails [see Jn 20:25] instead of thorns pricked him for her sake; when he endured not the freezing [weather] but scourging [see Mt 27:26] and instead of the sultry heat the point of the lance instead of a pasture; when Satan and death, the wolves, menaced him. He was lifted up, tolerated sufferings and did not succumb.

After seven years working for Laban, Jacob asks his uncle to give him Rachel for a wife (see Gn 29:20). Laban, however, dupes Jacob into consuming his marriage not with his beloved Rachel but with Leah (see Gn 29:23-25). Here too lies a hidden symbol according to Jacob of Sarug. Divine Providence is in control and accomplishes its will despite Laban’s unjust actions. Leah and Rachel, two sisters given to one man, are types of two.

158. See Lk 15:1-7.
159. See Gn 3:24; Jn 19:34.

The comely (Rachel) was dismissed, and the ugly-looking one entered [to marry Jacob], for the hidden mysteries were also concealed here.

161. Ibid., 216:19-20.

Although Laban contrived to deceive the just one, [Divine] Providence accomplished its [will] through this marriage. Although Jacob was much indignant at what happened,
Jacob of Sarug draws a parallel between Jacob’s betrothal and Christ’s espousal. Jacob betrothed Rachel, but he is given Leah. The Lord espouses the Church, and yet ends up with the Nation. Jacob betrothed [the one who is] the paragon of appearance, pleasing of beauty, lovely of countenance, attractive of face, [and] glorious in everything. However, they gave him [the one with] the ugly eyes, the diminished vision, the satisfied look, the sad face, and [who is] full of flaws. Our Lord also betrothed the great Church, the Daughter of the Kings. She knows the Father, worships the Son, [and] accepts the [Holy] Spirit. They gave him also the assembly of the Nation, the Worshiper of Images. She forges the calf [see Ex 32:1-29], rejects the Father, [and] crucifies the Son.164

The physical appearances of the two sisters reflect the responses of the two communities to God. The ugliness of Leah points to the unfaithfulness of the Nation of Israel. Instead of worshiping God, she rejects the Father and crucifies his Son. In contrast to the disloyal Nation, the Church of the Nations rejected her idols, hand-made gods and clung to God: she comes to know the Father, worships the Son, and accepts the Holy. Her disloyalty was hidden since Egypt. Seeing that daylight would have exposed Israel’s ugliness, Moses led the Nation out of that land in the middle of the night (see Ex 11:4). At nighttime, Leah also came to Jacob. Darkness hid the ugliness of Leah and Israel and was used to trick both Jacob and Lord into betrothing the undesired brides. Jacob of Sarug does not explain how the Lord could be tricked into marrying Israel.

---

163. Ibid., 218:16-17.

Here the mystery of the communities came to pass in the two sisters given to one man.

164. Ibid., 221:5-12.
In the middle of the night, Moses led her out of Egypt [see Ex 11:4],
that no one see the Bride he brought how ugly she is.
She left at night just as Leah entered at night,
for the day would expose that both were ugly.  

Although the Lord desired the Church, Israel came first, stood before
him with her face covered, and beguiled him into espousing her.

The mystery entered the house of the pagan with the righteous one
and betrothed the two that it reveals itself through revelations.
The Nation and the Nations are typified by Leah and Rachel [respectively].
The Synagogue and the Church were spoken of by the two sisters.
God invited all nations to his wedding,
for there is no nation on earth that is not his.
The invitation of the Nations was dear to the Creator
that all come to be his through conversion.
He loved the Church and desired that she be his,
for she is the Bride, who is even much more comely than Rachel.
Although God betrothed the Daughter of the Nations,
the community of the Nation preceded her and went to Adonai.
Through the veil which Moses spread over his face [see Ex 34:33; 2 Cor 3:13]
is depicted the covering of Leah, the oldest [sister].
The daughter of the Hebrews was covered and stood before Adonai.
Moses's brightness covered her ugliness, and she was unrecognizable.
She was thought to be the Church by witnesses,
and that account she wanted the covering lest she be exposed.
Her appearance was even uglier than [that of] Leah, the daughter of the
Haranites.
Her eyesight was taken away—not [that] her eyes were dull [see Gn 29:17].
She gazed at the calf [see Ex 32:1-29] and called it Lord, for she was blind
[and] did not have the sight to ascertain the truth.
The one deprived of eyesight entered first,
and the comely Church, like Rachel, was dismissed.
She was covered with Moses. No one recognized that she was blind,
and, with a covering, she appeared as if she were lovely.
The mistress of [comely] appearance was covered by the nations and was not
recognized,
but the ugly one, entirely veiled, enters the house of God.
For the sake of the Church did God labor with humanity
through revelations and mighty deeds.
Since the Daughter of the Nation was the oldest [and] albeit she was ugly,
they gave her to the Lord, like Leah the oldest [see Gn 29:26].
This Nation was indeed the firstborn to God.

165. Ibid., 220:20-221:2.
Although the Daughter of the Nations was beautiful, she was dismissed.\textsuperscript{166} 

Jacob of Sarug describes the Nation as being blind, for it chose the golden calf and called it Lord. Its lack of sight deprived it of recognizing the truth and seeing the true Lord. Therefore, its ugliness significantly exceeds that of Leah. Moses was as if a veil to Israel. By hiding its true appearance, it gave the impression of being beautiful. Its comeliness was an account of Moses. The Church, whom the Lord desired, was dismissed like Rachel was, and he ended up with the undesired Israel, the older sister, even if he had labored for the Church with revelations and mighty deeds.

In contrast to Leah and Israel, Rachel and the Church came in the daylight, for they have nothing to hide. Both are attractive, and their beauties shine forth on their faces. “The young Rachel and the youthful Church, who were beautiful, entered last, for the light showed their beauties.”\textsuperscript{167}

Jacob of Sarug describes Rachel and the Church as young, for grooms prefer young brides. Notwithstanding her idol-worshipping past, the Church rejects her hand-made gods, and clings to her Lord: “she knows the Father,
worships the Son, [and] accepts the [Holy] Spirit.”168 As beautiful as Rachel is, the comeliness, grace, elegance, and attractiveness exceedingly surpass her beauty. Also, the Church and Rachel exceedingly love their husbands and without deceit.

Bridegrooms love young [brides], for they are beautiful. The Church and Rachel, without deceit, loved their husbands. It was not in deceit [that] Rachel went to the righteous one, nor does the Church remain with the Holy One with a covering. The exposed countenance of the Church is more beautiful than Rachel’s face. She entered in the morning that everyone see how comely she is. The Synagogue and Leah would not enter without a covering, for they do not [ooze] comeliness that one desire them. They employed pretense, deceit, and guile with God and Jacob who represented him.169

The morning brought to light Leah’s deceit, and the brightness of the Son on the cross exposed the Synagogue’s guile. The light shining on the Church, standing at the foot of the cross, reveals her perfect countenance and unsurpassed beauty.

Lest the deceitful one remain with the true one, the cross and morning exposed them, since they acted cunningly. In the morning, Jacob gazed at Leah, who was ugly, and the brightness of the Son revealed the Synagogue, which was dubious. The Church stood before the True One with her face exposed. She was uncovered, for her beauty proclaims her splendor. Her appearance is full of the spots of beautiful ornaments. She does not enter with a different look to cover her marks. There is not a fleck in her beauty [see Eph 5:27; Col 1:22] that it be covered. Rachel, whose appearance is beautiful and countenance is winsome, typified her.170

---

168. Ibid., 221:9-10.

169. Ibid., 221:13-22.

170. Ibid., 222:1-10.
The Synagogue is more at fault than Leah, for the latter could not help having dull eyes, which made her ugly. However, the Synagogue chose to block its eyesight and not recognize the Lord. Therefore, it is blameworthy for its repulsive appearance. Both Leah and the Synagogue are ugly. In contrast to the former, who loved her husband, the Synagogue hated her Lord.

These mysteries came to pass in the house of Laban because Jacob drew the entire path of the Son. He betrothed Rachel, but Leah entered. As one one might say, instead of the Daughter of the Nations, the Synagogue entered although she was ugly.

He typified her by the feeble-eyed symbolically. She was uglier than her by her actions. “the heart of the Nation was hardened, its ears were deaf, and eyes shut, lest it see or hear.” It was not that the eyes of that one were dull [lacuna], but that she shut her eyes and ears to understanding.

Leah was not to be blamed for her ugly and poor eyes, but that she shut her eyes and ears to understanding. The Synagogue is blameworthy, for she shut her eyes willingly. The fault emanating from [one’s] freedom is much ugly. Credit is [due] to Leah, for she loved her husband although she was ugly.

Woe to the despised Synagogue for it hates the One who loves her. The Daughter of the Hebrews shut her eyes and ears, and how uglier is she than the Daughter of the Haranites, Leah! The Church is loved although she is rejected because of her beauty and resembles the dismissed Rachel although she was fair. Jacob took [for wives] both the ugly and the beautiful one and resembled our Lord, who betrothed both the Nation and Nations to his Gospel.

These just ones drew these, and so their news shines out throughout the regions. Jacob typifies our Lord and the daughter of Laban the Church. Blessed is the One by whose mysteries the righteous ones shine out through their actions.172

---


In his mimro entitled *To Show Why Our Lord Remained on Earth 30 Years and Then Performed Miracles in the World* (173) Jacob of Sarug argues that the love of the Lord for his Bride, the Church, is much more than that of Jacob for Rachel. The proof to this reasoning lies in the fact that our Lord suffered for his Bride ten years more than Jacob did for his. Jacob served Laban twenty years (see Gn 31:38), whereas Christ patiently waited thirty years for the sake of his Betrothed before performing extraordinary deeds. These thirty years were necessary that the Lord prepare and instruct the Church.

The Son of the Rich One humbled himself by the course he undertook to grow up with the Daughter of the Lowly betrothed to him. Since [his] birth, he set off on the journey to walk with her that the Bride receive the custom of the Bridegroom and then he would take her [as a wife].

Thirty years did he walk with her on the earth of the evil ones that she subdue [evil] with him and then he would raise her up to his Father’s abode.

He was a companion to her and instructed her through his intimacy that she not flee when he leads her to return to his abode.

He came to her father’s house and was tried by poverty and was not weary of showing her how much he loved her.

Both Jacob and the Lord love their spouses and endure hard labor for their sake. However, the Lord’s labor and love overshadow those of Jacob.

---

173 Jacob of Sarug argues that the love of the Lord for his Bride, the Church, is much more than that of Jacob for Rachel. The proof to this reasoning lies in the fact that our Lord suffered for his Bride ten years more than Jacob did for his. Jacob served Laban twenty years (see Gn 31:38), whereas Christ patiently waited thirty years for the sake of his Betrothed before performing extraordinary deeds. These thirty years were necessary that the Lord prepare and instruct the Church.

The Son of the Rich One humbled himself by the course he undertook to grow up with the Daughter of the Lowly betrothed to him. Since [his] birth, he set off on the journey to walk with her that the Bride receive the custom of the Bridegroom and then he would take her [as a wife].

Thirty years did he walk with her on the earth of the evil ones that she subdue [evil] with him and then he would raise her up to his Father’s abode.

He was a companion to her and instructed her through his intimacy that she not flee when he leads her to return to his abode.

He came to her father’s house and was tried by poverty and was not weary of showing her how much he loved her.

Both Jacob and the Lord love their spouses and endure hard labor for their sake. However, the Lord’s labor and love overshadow those of Jacob.
is true that Jacob toils twenty years behind sheep in the freezing cold and scorching heat. Still, Jacob’s hard labor and humbleness fail in comparison to the humility shown by the Ancient of Days (see Dn 7:9), who becomes a human being. Although divine, he wills to be born for the sake of his Bride. He grows up just like her and goes through the stages of her growth from infancy to adulthood. He desires her and wants to take her back with him to his heavenly adobe. He suffers shameful indignations for her sake and does not give up until they become one. He becomes the Son of Man and makes her the Daughter of God.

Jacob the Great was afflicted for twenty years
[toiling] behind sheep for the sake of Rachel, the daughter of the Haranites.175
Christ came, showed his love, and increased [it] by ten,
when he humbled himself thirty years for the sake the Church.
Jacob depicted this image in the land of Aram,
whither he went down, where he toiled and married, and whence he went up
as a vigorous one.
The freezing cold and scorching heat devoured Jacob176 for Rachel’s sake,
and he endured [all] on account of her love without murmuring.177
The Son of God yearned for the Daughter of Adam,
went down after her to bring her back to the abode of his Father,
and subjugated himself to hard labor—more than Jacob [did]—
 thirty years on account of the love of the one whom he loved.
Jacob did not do what the Son of God did,
for there is no love that [can] ever resemble his [love] in the world,178
for our Lord, the great One, who agreed to become a child
although he is the Ancient [of Days]179 and to bring the little girl to his
Father’s house.
He became a child to grow up with her [and] in her nearness
that she know his love from his intimacy [and] how much he humbled
himself,
for she became the beloved one and went with him when he called her,
for he bore with her the burden of poverty.
Her ancestors treated him shamefully, and he endured [it] on her account.
They spat in his face.180 Unless he had married her, he would not have left.
He endured their indignation for thirty years, was patient,
and did not consider his shame as shame on her account.

176. See Gn 31:40.
177. See Gn 29:20
178. See Jn 15:13
179. See Dn 7:9
180. See Mt 26:67
He was heavenly and wished to take for a wife the daughter of earthly beings.
He became a human being and did not murmur because of her love.
He came down and so humbled himself to go through her ages of growing up
that he became a baby in a manger and [wrapped] in swaddling clothes\textsuperscript{181}
that she receive his customs through upbringing and intimacy
and go with him when he is lifted up to the One who sent him.\textsuperscript{182}
Because of the love of the Daughter of the Wretched, he impoverished himself
that she revere him when she sees how much he humbled himself.
Of the race of the lowly one did he take flesh
that she be with him as a daughter of [his] race through the one joining.
Since it was written, “the two are one,”\textsuperscript{183} he allied himself in marriage to her.
Thus, he became of her and made her of him, and behold they are one!
He became the Son of Man and made the Church the Daughter of God.
Through his joining the phrase, “the two are one,” exists.\textsuperscript{184}

Only when the thirty years were bygone did the Son of God reveal himself to his Bride at the hand of John the Baptist in the Jordan River.

On this account, Christ, the Bridegroom, was patient
with the Bride for thirty years while he was betrothing her.
He came down on poverty and neediness

\textsuperscript{181} See Lk 2:7
\textsuperscript{182} See Jn 8:28-29
\textsuperscript{183} Gn 2:24; Mt 19:5; Mk 10:7-8; Eph 5:31
on account of the love of the Daughter of the Wretched betrothed to him. Since he loved the children of man, he became the Son of Man. He became a brother to them and made them children of God. According to the measure of human growth, he grew up thirty years in their quarters that the saying, “he came to become flesh,” be believed. For it is not metaphorically but in truth that he became a human being so that the world perceive that the Second Adam revealed himself to renew the world instead of the first [Adam], whom the snake bit. [...] When the full measure of thirty was fulfilled, he revealed himself through John’s baptism. There the Bride knew the King and that he is the Bridegroom who dawned to her like a day of great light.

5.3.3 Samson and the Timnite Woman

The story of Samson and the Timnite woman (see Jgs 14) also foreshadows Christ’s betrothal to the Church insofar as Samson and the woman are types of Christ and the Church, respectively. On his way to Timnah to take a wife, Simon looks at the remains of a lion which he had killed on a previous journey to the Philistines. There, in the lion’s carcass, was a swarm of bees and honey which he eats (see Jgs 14:8).

He (Samson) went to the place on account of a woman he wanted to take [to wife].
A mystery, clear as daylight, fell in with him.
To betroth a woman, he went to the land of the Philistines [i.e., Timnah],

---

185. See Jn 1:14.
186. See 1 Cor 15:45-49.
187. See Gn 3.
188. See Mt 3:13–17; Mk 1:9–11; Lk 3:21–22; Jn 1:31–34.
when a lion’s whelp [came] roaring out toward him like a strong one.\(^{190}\)
Whom does he (Samson) resemble except our Lord, who came to betroth the Church of the Nations when death befell him like a mighty one.
To take [to wife], that daughter of the uncircumcised,\(^{191}\) Samson lowered himself
and depicted his Lord, who betrothed the Daughter of Pagans by his Gospel.\(^{192}\)

The Daughter of the Philistines whom Samson desires to take for a wife bespeaks the pagan origin of the Bride whom the Lord wills to betroth. Jacob of Sarug identifies this Bride with the Church of the Nations. She is the Daughter of the Pagans whom the daughter of the uncircumcised, i.e., the Timnite woman, typify. The Lion charging on Samson is a symbol of death befalling Christ Jesus. The Lord dies on the cross and death takes him to his den, so to speak.

Come. Look here. If you are capable, you will see rightly.
Take and depict an image for maidens and their fiancés.
Against Samson, who went out for the land of the Philistines, a lion’s whelp came threateningly to ravish him, and against our Lord, who has come to betroth the Daughter of the Aramaeans, death dared to bring him to its den to dominate him.
Let us see now what befall death and the lion on account of both our Lord and Simeon, his Nazirite [see Jgs 13:5].\(^{193}\)

Samson’s defeat of the Lion depicts God’s killing death to save his Bride from its grip.

To betroth a woman, who depicts a type of the Church of Light,

---

\(^{190}\) See Jgs 14:5.
\(^{191}\) See Jgs 14:3.
\(^{192}\) “\textit{HSJS V},” 335:1-8.
\(^{193}\) \textit{Ibid.}, 335:9-16.
Samson was led\textsuperscript{194} and, for this reason, he killed the lion’s whelp.\textsuperscript{195} The Daughter of the Pagans typified the Daughter of the Uncircumcised, for the Son of God killed death as he saved her.\textsuperscript{196}

The lion does no hinder Samson’s journey, and death cannot stand in the face of the Son of God. He triumphantly overcomes death, betroths the Church by his crucifixion, for whose sake he came down, and returns to his heavenly abode. She is now his forevermore.

The Son of God arose from his place and came to our land to betroth the Church of the Nations as we have said. Death, the lion, who devoured all generations, befell him. However, he killed death as Simon killed the Lion. He made his way, betrothed and took to wife, by his crucifixion, the one for whose sake he descended to the inhabitants of the earth. The lion was not able to bring to an end the journey of Samson, who betrothed and married whom he had desired and then left. Likewise, the journey of the Son of God did not end because of death, for he married the Church, made her his, and then he ascended.\textsuperscript{197}

5.4 Diometrical Responses

John the Baptist betroths the Son of God to Israel and the Church. As has been shown above, the betrothal of Jacob to Leah and Rachel prefigured Christ’s betrothal to these two communities. “Jacob took both the beautiful and ugly [daughters of Laban for wives]. He became like our Lord, who betrothed the Nation and Nations for his Gospel.”\textsuperscript{198} Jacob of Sarug presents two diametrical responses to the Heavenly Groom. “The Synagogue hated the
true Betrothed, who came to her, and the holy Church bowed down to, honored, and loved him.”

The following sections elaborate on how the two Brides reciprocated Christ’s invitation to the matrimonial union.

5.4.1 Israel’s Response

Israel repeats her actions at Mt. Sinai by refusing once more her Lord, who came down for her sake. “She did not receive the Bridegroom, [her] Betrothed, who has come to her.” In his mimro entitled On Hosannas, the Colt, and the Sending of the Disciples, Jacob of Sarug describes Zion rejecting her Bridegroom despite the signs her prophets had revealed to her.

[A prophet] was proclaiming to her, “Awake, awake, and put on strength!”

Another was saying, “Exult, [O] Daughter of Zion, for your King has come.”

However, she, full of wickedness, shut her mouth [so as not to] praise, stopped her ear[s], and did not receive the one who has come to her.

The rejected Bride gave herself up to nugatory idols, and did not accept the true Betrothed, who has come to her.

On Mt. Sinai his Father betrothed her, wrote her under his name, and placed around her neck lovely gems: all the commandments.

He put on her head the beautiful ornament of all the laws placed on her hands the Holy Scriptures like rings.

He betrothed her to his Son and gave her a ring from Mt. Sinai, yet the unworthy Bride did not receive the true Betrothed.

She murmured against his Father, even said to him she did not know him, and she began screaming, “I do not accept that he reigns over me.

I do not want the One who has come to approach me.

Why is it necessary for him to come near me when I do not love him?

I hate him. I loathe him, and he knows [it].

If he comes to me, I will stone him [See Jn 8:59, 11:8].

Since I utterly do not love the one who has come,

200. Ibid., 618:18.
201. Ibid., 613-631.
Zion’s Daughter murmurs against the Bridegroom’s Father although he had betrothed her to his Son on Mt. Sinai and had given her lovely gems, a crown, and rings. These are symbols of the Decalogue, the laws, and the Holy Scriptures, respectively. She declares her hate and loathing toward her Betrothed, rejects him, and chooses empty and worthless idols over him. Moreover, she threatens to stone him. Israel responds thus despite the message of its prophets. Isaiah and Zechariah had prophesied that the Son would come to her, and both prophets had prepared her for his coming. Nevertheless, she refused them and spurned all the prophets God sent to her.

[Zion] covered her face [so as not to read] Zechariah, “Behold your Lord is coming on a colt.Get up and go meet him.” She hated Isaiah, who proclaimed the truth before his (the Lord’s) coming, and who was shouting at her, “Awake, awake, put on strength!” and all the sayings of prophecies did enter her ears. She abhorred David the King, for she was insane, and [Zion] covered her face Zechariah, “Behold your Lord is coming on a colt.Get up and go meet him.” She abhorred David the King, for she was insane, and [Zion] covered her face Zechariah, “Behold your Lord is coming on a colt.Get up and go meet him.” She abhorred David the King, for she was insane, and [Zion] covered her face Zechariah, “Behold your Lord is coming on a colt.Get up and go meet him.”

Lit. from reading

See Zec 9:9.


Lit. from reading

Jacob of Sarug repeats the same theme in another mimro entitled On the Sunday of Hosannas
text.209

The prophet Zechariah carried his spiritual harp, ran before him, singing and rejoicing in the prophecy. He plucked its strings, and it sounded while he sang, “Rejoice, [O] Daughter of Zion, shout and cry out for joy because your King has come. Behold he has come to you riding on a colt, the foal of a donkey. Open your gates for him, for he is humbly coming to you. Rejoice and be glad and shout praise in a loud voice, for, behold, he comes to you as I had promised you in prophecy.”210 Zechariah sang to the Daughter of the Hebrews that she exult with him, but the rejected Bride did not rejoice as she had been exorted. She was defiled and distressed, for the Bridegroom has come, and for this reason, she did not rejoice when she met him. Her heart took possession of the calf,211 her beloved, which enthralled her. Thus, she did not hear the prophet when he exhorted her, “Rejoice.”212

Zion carries through her threat: she crucifies her Bridegroom. Thus, she categorically rejects him and tries to annihilate him by killing him. The crucifixion is Israel’s ultimate rejection of Christ Jesus.

[Zion] made the cross, forged the nails, sharpened the spear, and mixed the vinegar to the One who had given her water from the rock213 when he made flow an abundance of water from flint-rock in the desert.214

---

210. See Zec 9:9; Mt 21:5.
211. See Ex 17:6.
213. See Ex 17:6.
Consequently, the Son of God repudiates the Bride who disdained him and chooses the Daughter of the Aramaeans, the Church, whose response to him is opposed to that of her older sister Israel.

His crown of thorns wove a diadem for the Daughter of the Aramaeans, the Bride whom he seized from among the idols and wrote her under his name.

[...]

The Daughter of the Hebrews was rejected because she hated him, and he repudiated her in the presence of the Nations on the great feast day. She gave him a reed\(^{215}\) pen to write her a bill of divorce,\(^{216}\) for she saw that he greatly loves holiness like his Begetter.

She made him take the reed pen that he might repudiate her, that she might be free from him, and that she might go and have her fill with Baal, the calf, and Tammuz.\(^{217}\)

She gave the Bridegroom a reed pen, for she hated him, that he might subscribe the bill of divorce he wrote to her.

[...]

Lest the Son of God make her useless through his teaching, she gave [him] the reed-pen to go to her beloveds.\(^{218}\)

5.4.2 The Church’s Response

In contrast to the Synagogue, whom the Mighty One repudiates because it rejected him despite the stupendous manifestation on Mt. Sinai and regardless of the fact that he saved it from slavery and Egyptian tyranny, the Church clung to the Lord notwithstanding that he manifested himself in weakness. The fearful vision on Mount Sinai is absent when the Word of God becomes incarnate: neither fire, nor dark cloud, nor thunder and lightning,

\(^{215}\) See Mt 27:30. The soldiers struck Jesus with a reed, which Jacob of Sarug turns into a pen.

\(^{216}\) Lit. to put her away

\(^{217}\) See Ez 8:14.


---

295
and nor horn blowing. He came down to human beings not in a splendiferous way, but in humility.

That one (the Synagogue) despised the Mighty One in that magnificence, and this one (the Church) madly clung to the Son.

He did not descend to her (the Church) [carried] by angels as [he did] on Sinai

nor did he blow heavenly horns for her.

Not with laws, not in a dark cloud, not in a cloud, not in a fire [and] not even with blazing lightning,

—the house where he dwelt did not smoke on account of him—but in humility did the Son of the Mighty One come down to earth.

He manifested himself to humanity [wrapped] in swaddling clothes,²¹⁹ hungry,²²⁰ thirsty,²²¹ [in need of] sleep²²² and work,²²³ and needy.²²⁴

When Satan tempted him in the desert [See Mt 4:1-11], when the unbelievers called him the prince of demons [see Mt 9:34], when the waves of scandals were breaking²²⁵ on him from every side, when he was reviled because he ate with sinners [see Mt 9:11], when they chided him for mingling with tax-collectors [see Mt 9:11], when they demanded that he pay the king a census tax [see Mt 22:15-22], when he had nowhere to rest his head [see Mt 8:20], when he processed alone [riding] an unsaddled colt,²²⁶ when a piece of cloth girded his loin in the likeness of a servant, when he washed the feet²²⁷ of dust whom his hands formed,²²⁸ when a [close] associate who accompanied him sold him ,²²⁹ when the faithful ones who adhered to him denied him,²³⁰ when a judge interrogated him as a killer,²³¹ when he was scourged with whips as a convict,²³² when he clung to a column in the tribunal and drank torment, when lunatics clothed in shameful clothing,²³³ when a crown of thorns woven by defiled people was on his head,²³⁴

---

²¹⁹. See Lk 2:7, 12.
²²⁰. See Mt 4:2.
²²¹. See Jn 19:28.
²²². See Mt 8:24.
²²³. See Jn 5:17.
²²⁴. See Mt 21:3.
²²⁵. Lit. were blowing
²²⁸. See Gn 2:7.
²²⁹. See Mt 26:14-16; Mk 14:10-11; Lk 22:3-6.
³³¹. See Mt 27:11–14; Mk 15:2–5; Lk 23:2–3; Jn 18:29–38.
³³². See Mt 27:30; Mk 15:19; Lk 23:16; Jn 19:1.
³³³. See Mt 27:28; Mk 17:17; Lk 23:11; Jn 19:2.
³³⁴. See Mt 27:29; Mk 17:17; Jn 19:2, 5.
when he was struck and asked, “Who is it that struck you?” [see Lk 22:64],
when he carried on his shoulders the wood of the cross and went out, 235
when his hands and feet were nailed by those who went astray, 236
when they cast lots for his garments [to see] to whom they would belong, 237
when bitterness and vinegar in a sponge were offered to him, 238
when his side was pitilessly pierced with a lance, 239
when he was embalmed, wrapped, and buried, 240 —Blessed is her sagacity!—
the Church saw the Son of God [undergo] all of this.
Blessed is he who seized her from idolatry. 241

The Church recognizes, accepts, and cleaves to the Lord, not in his
might, but his humility. She knows him as a baby wrapped in swaddling
clothes, and as a man who feels hunger and thirst, who requires sleep and
work, and who is needy. The devil tempts him in the desert, and his foes
accuse him of being the prince of the demons. He endures scandals, eats with
sinners, and associates himself with tax-collectors. His adversaries demand
that he pay the king a census tax. He does not have a place to rest his head.

235. See Jn 19:17.
236. See Mt 27:35; Mk 15:24; Lk 23:33; Jn 19:18, 20:25, 20:27.
238. See Mt 27:48; Mk 15:36; Lk 23:36; Jn 19:28-30.
239. See Jn 19:34.
240. See Mt 27:59–60; Mk 15:36; Lk 23:53; Jn 19:39-42.
He enters Jerusalem alone on an unsaddled colt. He washes the feet of others as a servant. One of his apostles sold him out for thirty pieces of silver while the others abandoned him. To make matters worth, his accusers judge him a killer, scoff and mock him, place a crown of thorns on his head, repeatedly strike, and scourge him. Consequently, he suffered greatly. Unjustly sentenced to be crucified, he carries his cross, on which they nail him. They strip him naked to cast lots for his garments and make him drink vinegar offered to him on a sponge. They bore his side pitilessly with a spear to make sure he is dead. His sympathizers embalm, wrap, and bury him. Despite the Lord’s displayed weakness, the Church clings to him and stays by his side. Whereas Israel, who had known God, chooses a golden calf over him, the Church, who had worshiped foreign gods, leaves them and becomes united with him. The Church does not go back to her graven images and does not exchange him for idols although she sees him at his weakest point. Consequently, by cleaving to Christ, the Church accepts his betrothal proposal and becomes the Bride of Christ.

Since her Bridegroom is a very wealthy King, the Bride deserves the finest jewelry. The finest gems, precious stones, gold, pearls and the like should adorn her ornaments.

Let golden chains for the Bride who ascended from the Waters and strips of silver for the Mistress of Shining enhance [her] beauty.

Let pearls be brought from Cush for the high head, along with arrays of precious stones from India.

---

242. See Ibid., 38, footnote 1.

243. Ethiopia
Let the sea bring the rich blood of the Tyrian murices\textsuperscript{244} and its friend, the dry land, the stones of Thummim and Urim.\textsuperscript{245}

Let the mountains offer all the emeralds and valuable gems, and the depths send jacinth\textsuperscript{246} from their treasuries: precious stones from the forehead of snakes; gold from Ophir\textsuperscript{247} for beautiful beads; and multifarious necklaces and chokers for the neck of the Crowned one (the Bride).

Her Betrothed is wealthy. Let her adornments be multiplied.\textsuperscript{248}

Nevertheless, the Church rejects these ostentatious, immaterial ornaments. She beautifies herself with Christ’s suffering, for she values more than anything else the cross upon which her Beloved hung, the nails hammered into his hands and feet, and the water and the blood flowing out of his side which dyes her wedding dress.

The Bride says, “I have the cross instead of ornaments, and all my beauties are arrayed with him on my limbs. He dyes my clothes for me with his blood and adorns me. Thus, I do not desire the blood of the Tyrian murices. He places his mark between my eyes and purifies me. Therefore, golden chains and pearls are not beneficial to me. With his anointing, he gladdens my countenance and sanctifies me. Hence, the strips of silver, which are used for me, are not for me. Instead of jacinth and valuable gems, he gave me his nails that I forge all the betrothal ornaments from them.”\textsuperscript{249}

\textsuperscript{244} From this kind of seashell the purple dye was extracted.

\textsuperscript{245} See Ex 28:30; 1 Sm 14:41; 28:6.

\textsuperscript{246} See Ex 28:19.


\textsuperscript{248} “HSJS I,” 206:16-207:7.

\textsuperscript{249} “Ibid., 207:8-17.
The crucifixion of Jesus is revelatory, for the cross manifests the identity of the crucified One. The Church recognizes and identifies him as the Son of God, in contrast to Israel that remained blinded. Using Paul’s voice, the Church shouts in the synagogues that Emmanuel betrothed her through this crucifixion. Therefore, the Church deserts her old pagan ways, clings to Christ, her Lord, and boasts only in his cross (see Gal 6:14).

The daughter of the Aramaeans saw you, Emmanuel [see Is 7:14], on the cross, and recognized who you are because of your mighty wonder.

Envy blinded the Daughter of the Hebrews. Thus, she did not recognize you, and since she hated you, the power that occurred did not excite her. The Church of the Nations, the Daughter of the Day, beloved by you, recognized you, Lord, through the crucifixion and that you are God. [...]

Behold the voice of the Bride rose, and she shouts in the synagogues, “I shall not boast except in him [see Gal 6:14]. Emmanuel came, betrothed me through his crucifixion, and I recognize who he is, and whose Son he is. He shall not be dishonored.

Consequently, the Bride shouts for joy, for Jesus has saved her, freed her from her captives, and enriches her with his mysteries. The appropriate

---


---

Consequently, the Bride shouts for joy, for Jesus has saved her, freed her from her captives, and enriches her with his mysteries. The appropriate
response to his betrothal proposal is to accept it. The Church does so by bowing down to Christ in worship and joining her voice to that of the angels singing to him “Holy, Holy, Holy is the Lord of hosts” (Is 6:3).

The saved assembly of the Church of the Nations shouts for joy, for you have freed it from the stumbling block of vain idols. The Daughter of the Aramaeans exults on your day and rejoices in you, whereas the daughter of the Hebrews was sad. She scorned [you], and was furious.

[...]
Behold! The shepherds and their herds bow down to you [see Lk 2:8-20] instead of the flock that crucified its Shepherd on Golgotha [see Jn 10:1-22]. Behold the assemblies of the Nations kneel down before you in all places, whereas the band of Caiaphas’s people reviled you [see Mt 26:57-68]. Behold they are shouting to you “Holy, Holy” [see Is 6:3] in the assemblies, whereas the Synagogue of the Nation shouted, “Condemn [him] to death.”

[...]
Behold the Virgin Church resounds [your praises], is enriched by you, and she rejoices in you because you brought her back from the captors.

5.5 Indissoluble Unity

Jacob of Sarug speaks of this indissoluble marriage in his minro known as On the End (وٓ أٔهٔـٔ). Contemplating Gn 2:24, the bishop of Batnan interprets the man leaving his father and mother and clinging to his wife as Christ, and the spouse as the Church. Accordingly, Moses “symbolically depicted an image of the Church and Christ.”

251. See Mt 26:66; Mk 15:13; Lk 23:21; Jn 19:15.
(see Eph 5:32) is the foundation of Jacob’s explanation. The true Bridegroom and Bride are Christ and the Church, respectively. Christ’s sacrifice on the cross is the proof of their mutual love.

“I speak concerning Christ and not Adam,
and also regarding the Church and not Eve, who ruined her man."255
They are the Bridegroom and the true Bride, who are one,
and [his] slaughter and crucifixion seal the proof of their love.256

In his minro On the Veil of Moses (ܕܳͺܒ˛˛˛͔̈Ͱ),257 an exegesis of Ex 34:33-35, Jacob of Sarug also expounds on Gn 2:24.

The hidden Father betrothed the Bride to his Only-Begotten and taught symbolically through prophecy.
He built with his love a great house for the Bride of Light and represented the Bridegroom with various types on its palaces.
Moses came in, described, like a skilled painter, the Bridegroom and Bride, and hid with a veil258 the great painting.
He wrote in his book “a man shall leave his father and mother and cling to his wife that the two become one whole.”259
The prophet Moses introduced the subject of a man and woman that on their account Christ and his Church might be spoken of.
With the great Eye of Prophecy, he saw how Christ becomes one with his Church in the waters.
He gazed at him who put her on in the womb of virginity, and she put him on in the waters of baptism.
Behold the Bridegroom and Bride are caused to become one spiritually and on their account did Moses write down, “the two are one.”
However, the Nation, unworthy of the great mystery, thought that he said “the two are one” concerning a man and a woman.
The covered Moses gazed at Christ and called him “man” and gazed at the Church and called her woman for a reason.
So that he might not speak of [this] subject clearly before the Hebrews, he covered his words from the outsiders with different affairs.

255. See Eph 5:32.
256. “HSJS V,” 883:3-6 (Syriac); Babakhan, “Fin du Monde,” 370 (French).
258. See 2 Cor 3:12-18.
259. See Ex 2:24; Eph 5:31.
He depicted an image of the Bridegroom-King inside of his bed-chamber and called them man and woman while he knows that this is Christ and this is the Church who were covered and thought of as man and woman for a reason. Since there was the veil that was spread, no one knew what the great image was and of whom it was.  

The bishop of Batnan elaborates that the reason Moses speaks of a man deserting his family to cling to his wife in Gn 2:24 is that he saw, with the Eye of Prophecy, the betrothel of Christ to the Church in the waters of baptism. However, Moses hides this prophecy with a veil that no one can see it, for the Israelites are not ready to understand its meaning and import. They understand this biblical verse verbatim and thinks that Moses is speaking of a man and a woman. The Syriac poet presents here the Incarnation as the Word of God putting on the Church in a virginal womb. She, in turn, puts him on in the baptismal font. This reciprocal dressing imagery shows the two becoming one, and thus the indissoluble union between Christ and the Church, his Bride.

Paul removes the veil which Moses used to hide the meaning of his words. Therefore, the Apostle reveals the identity of the man and woman in Gn 2:24, and the entire world recognizes that the man is a type of Christ and his wife an image of the Church, the Lord’s Bride.

Paul came in after the wedding feast occurred, saw the veil that was placed, raised and removed it from the beautiful ones. He revealed and showed to the entire world Christ and his Church,261 whom the prophet Moses depicted by his prophecy.

The Apostle (Paul) was excited and exclaimed, “This mystery is great,”262 and began to show what the covered image is. The ones named man and women in the prophecy, I know them [as] Christ and his Church, for the two are one. The veil over the face of Moses has been uncovered that everyone come and see the beauties of which one could not have too much.

The great, hidden mystery emerged openly that the marriage feast rejoice in how beautiful the Bridegroom and Bride are. He offered her himself, became of the Daughter of the Wretched, and made her of him. Behold she is joined to him and rejoices with him. He came down to the depths and raised up the Daughter of Earthly [Beings] to the heights, for they are one, and where he is, [there also] is she with him.263

The great Paul, the great profundity of apostleship, explained the mystery, and behold it is spoken of plainly. Her fabulous, hidden beauty appeared openly, and, behold, the Nations and the World gaze at how luminous it is. Her Betrothed brought in the Daughter of the Day to a new womb, and the tried waters of Baptism264 conceived and bore her. He stood in the water, called her [to him], she went down, got dressed, got out, received him, and Moses’s saying, “the two are one,” was substantiated. The pure clinging of holiness is inside the waters.

The Bride and Bridegroom are one through the one Spirit in baptism.265

---

261. See Eph 5:32.
262. Ibid.
263. See Jn 12:26, 14:3, 17:24.
264. See Mt 3:11; Jn 1:33; Acts 1:5.
The language speaking of the Lord as becoming of the Daughter of the Wretched and she of him highlights that the Bridegroom and the Bride are now one. Their union cannot be annulled, and thus, it lasts forever.

The Lord’s union with the Church is unique and not like any other marriage between a man and a woman.

Wives do not thus cling to their husbands
as the Church clings to the Son of God.
Which Bridgroom dies for the sake of the Bride except for our Lord?
Which Bride has beseeched a slain [man] to become her husband?
Who has thrown in, from ever, his blood to the marriage-settlements except for the crucified One, who sealed the marriage feast with his afflications?
Who has seen a corpse lying at a wedding feast,
the Bride embraces it and remains that she be comforted by it?
At which wedding feast was a banquet and instead of bread they broke the body of the Bridegroom for the guests except here?
Death separates the wives of men from their husbands but joins this Bride with her Beloved.
He died on the cross and gave his body to the Glorious One.
Behold she tears it in pieces and eats from eats from it daily.
He opened his side [see In 19:34] and prepared his cup with his healing blood and gave [it] to her that she drink and leave behind her too many idols.
With oil, she receives his anointing, in the water, she puts him on, and in the bread, she eats him.
In wine, she swallows him that the world perceive that they are one.
He died on the cross, and she does not replace him to be for another.
She loves his death, for she knows that she has life through it.
Man and woman were a pretext for this mystery,
and the image, type and a figure resembling its actions.
Moses spoke of this mystery [using] them as a pretext,
covered and kept it under the veil lest it be exposed.
The great Apostle, however, revealed its beauty, showed it to the world, and the saying Moses, “the two are one,” shone and was substantiated.266
Another argument for this indissoluble marriage is the fact that the Church consumes the body of her Bridegroom and drinks his blood. Instead of decaying, his corpse turns into the wedding banquet, the source of food spread for the Bride and her guests. It nourishes the Church, and she partakes of it daily. The three Mysteries of Initiation, Baptism, Chrismation, and the Eucharist denote that the Son of God and the Church are one.

The crucifixion of the Son of God makes his union to the Church indissoluble. He dies for her sake, and she chooses him, a slain man, for a husband. Death usually separates a man from his wife but joins, in this case, the crucified Christ to the Church. The agent to dissolve a marriage, death, becomes the instrument of their inseparable union. Despite the Bridegroom’s horrific demise, the Bride does not go seeking another but remains with him. In addition, he offers his blood to his Beloved as a dowry, and, with his afflictions, signs the marriage covenant. It is the guarantee of their eternal union. Along the same line of reasoning, Jacob of Sarug makes the assertion that the dowry with which Jesus purchased his Bride is his being, thus making their marriage unbreakable. If repudiated, the bride’s right guarantees her a claim to her dowry. Since the Church’s dowry is Christ, he must remain with her even in the case of renunciation. Therefore, their union is, once more, proved to be indissoluble in life and death.

As long as his finger has written my dowry, who settles it, and my Bridegroom, who offered himself to me, is my marriage portion?
If he desires to separate me from him, it would be impossible, and he would not be able to, for he would deny himself, since, behold, he is with me.
She who leaves [her husband] would lay claim to her dowry and take with her everything written in the [marital] bond.
How can I leave when my dowry is the Bridegroom?
Even if I would leave—God forbid that I would leave—he would [have to] come with me.

Joined to him I am, and there is no way that I separate from him, for I am with him whether in life or death.267

Furthermore, Jacob explains the biblical narratives of Mt 12:46-50, Mk 3:31-35, and Lk 8:19-21 in light of a man cleaving to this wife. The Church is the Lord’s brother, sister, and mother. In this manner, the bishop of Batnan argues that Jesus leaves his mother to cling to his Bride and the two become one.

“Who is my mother? Or who are my siblings?”268 says the Bridegroom.

I have the Church. She is my brothers, sisters, and my mother.”

Behold he left his mother and clung to his spouse in a pure manner, and the saying of Moses, who said that the two [became one], was confirmed.269

Becoming one bespeaks of the bond between Christ, the heavenly Bridegroom, and the Church, his Bride. Moreover, this marital union lasts forever. Jacob founds this elucidation on Rm 8:35-39, where Paul argues that nothing can separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord. The Bride-Church echoes Paul’s words that nothing can split her up from her Christ, her Bridegroom. Despite his horrific demise, the Church remains loyal to Jesus.

In the book of Moses, “a man and [his] wife are one [Gn 2:24].” However, it was evident that they are not one as we have said.

By the mighty eye of apostleship, Paul recognized this mystery, which is greater than [any] explanation.

“I say in reference to Christ and his Church

267. “HSJS IV,” 784:2-11 (Syriac); Grill, “Heiligum der Kirche,” 50-51 (German); Griffith, “In the Shadow of the Mosque,” 332 (French).

268. See Mt 12:48; Mk 3:33.

that the two are one in an indissoluble union [see Eph 5:32]."

“Nor height, nor depth, nor life, nor sword, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor dominions, nor present things nor future things in their many forms, nor another Creation will change my opinion about the Bridegroom, to whom I was betrothed in holiness [see Rom 8:35-39]."

Behold the one [man] and the one [woman], who [become] one as it is written:

Christ and his Church, whose love not even a sword separates [see Eph 5:25].

He (Christ) was treated with contempt on the cross. Still, she is proud of him, for he is the Son of God.

He was hung on a tree,"271 and she boastfully bears his sufferings.

“May I never boast except in the cross of shame, my pride, and by which I was saved.”272

Behold the concord: not even in death will she renounce [him].

The mystery of Moses that the two [become] one has [finally] been explained.273

5.6 The Wedding Banquet

The eschatological marriage feast is a Syriac symbol that found its roots in the aspirations of the early Syriac ascetics, who looked forward to their union with Christ in the wedding banquet and afterward in the heavenly bridal chamber.274 The Syriac Fathers developed it later into a symbol of the Church as attested by Ephrem.275 According to Jacob of Sarug, the Bride’s

---

270. Lit. separate my opinion (or mind) from
wedding feast takes place on Golgotha, where the Son of God is crucified. It is a unique kind of banquet insofar as it is rich in sufferings and the food is the body and blood of the Bridegroom.

The grand banquet of the crucifixion, rich in sufferings, pressed wine for the one who entered it that they drink. The [wedding] guests whom the slain Bridegroom invited to rejoice with him, a sharpened spear met them at his wedding-feast.276

The Church’s Beloved offers her his body as the source of her life and invites all to his marriage. He is the “exalted Bridegroom, who summoned all the worlds to his marriage feast”277 and “the Heir of the kingdom, who invited the worlds to his wedding banquet.”278 His wounds are the well satisfying her thirst. She, in turn, summons all the Nations to this royal banquet and presents to them her Bridegroom’s food. Allowing them to partake of the Eucharist, his true body and his true blood, the Son of God makes human beings his relatives, thus raising them to a rank higher than that of the angels to the degree that these heavenly beings would be envious if they could.

The Virgin [Church] approaches and sees the Bridegroom, her slain Betrothed, burns with his love, kneels down, and embraces the body of the Son. With her lips, she sups up his blood from his wounds. She puts around her neck all his sufferings like a necklace. She invites the Nations to the table of the King to delight them in the abundant crumbs [see Mt 15:27] of the Bridegroom’s body available to her. Also, she celebrates all the mysteries concealed among the angels as if she were the teacher of the heavenly beings. The hidden, heavenly hosts deem humans blessed, for they were esteemed worthy to be brought to this life. If there were jealousy among the angels, the cherubim would come close to envying humanity.


277. Ibid., 375:8.

278. Ibid., 375:10.
since the former carry him on their backs in awe [see Ez 1],
and the latter bear him in the palms of their hands.
Those [spirits] cry out “Blessed” like ones distant from their place,
and these [humans] eat at his table as kinsfolk.
He gave a figure to the chariot that it bear him [see Ez 1:26],
and gave the Church his Body and Blood, which are not shadows.
He summoned her and drew her near that she might touch his flesh and hold
his body
to reveal openly to her the truth about how much he loves her.280

Christ’s Bride, the Church, along with her Bridegroom, summons all
nations to their wedding feasts and invites them to enjoy the delights of his
body. “The King’s Bride prepared a marriage feast for the entire world. Come,
[O] Nations and Worlds, to the feast of the glorious One.”281 The Eucharist is
the center of this imagery and replaces Gihon and the other three rivers (see
Gn 2:13), the source of life for the entire world. Furthermore, the Church
distributes the body and blood of her Bridegroom, the exhaustible
fountainhead of life, to nourish her children. The color of the Bride’s wedding
dress obtained from the waters of the baptism is white but red when she
receives it at the crucifixion on Golgotha.282

Behold she felt elated at the virginity the Bridegroom had given her,
at the white [garments] which she put on from the waters [when] she went
down [to the river],
at the cross of light hanging around her neck like a necklace,
at the ornament of the Son’s sufferings dear to her,

279. See Is 6:3.
282. The colors of the Bridegroom and Bride are white and red. These colors designate
baptism and the Eucharist.
and at the fountainhead of blood and water flowing from him [see Jn 19:34],
by whom she sits as by Gihon [see Gn 2:13] filled with life.
She eats from him, for he willed to become food.
She drinks from him, for he desired to become a drink.
She breaks his body, lifts it up, and places it in the mouths of her children.
She mixes his blood and all drink life from him.
She tears him in pieces and puts him on her table every day.
She distributes him to the nations and worlds that they live because of him.283

The children of light and the righteous are the wedding guests and
enter with the Son of God to his wedding banquet. They feast on the
Bridegroom whose appearance reminds Jacob of Sarug of a table covered
with the choice produce, which is, once more, a reference to the Eucharist.

The Bridegroom enters, the children of the light enter with him,
and all the righteous rejoice in his wedding feast.
His appearance is like a table covered with choice produce,
and all his invitees take delight in it in their seats.
They feed on it like a pasture of a new life,
are satiated from it, and enriched by it spiritually.284

The Eucharist and the Bridegroom are so intertwined that the Church
only accepts as the Bridegroom him who offers her his body to eat and his
blood to drink. The Eucharist issued forth from the side of the slain One who
married his Beloved on the cross is paramount insofar as it allows the Church
to recognize her Lord, who is simultaneously the Son of God and the Son of
Man.

The Church never acknowledges that the Father has two Sons,
for he has [only] One, and to him, she is betrothed, for he is God,
and this only-Begotten is the Son of God,

284. Ibid., 396:12-17.
the one crucified between thieves on Golgotha.285 If he (God) had another [Son] foreign to the crucifixion, she would not recognize him, for he did not betroth her. She is betrothed through blood. Unless he has blood, he is not the Bridegroom, for the Only-Begotten betrothed her by his blood when he betrothed her. Unless he has a body to distribute to the partakers of his mystery,286 she does not belong to him, for she craves to eat the body of the Bridegroom. If, however, he has a body and blood, he is the Bridegroom. The one who has a body and blood, it is clear that he will die.287

Furthermore, the wedding feast has eschatological connotations drawn from the fact that the martyrs are also invitees to the marriage ceremony and recline with the Bridegroom and Bride at their table.288 These guests include, for example, the innocent children whom Herod slew. “The beloved wedding guests arrived at the marriage feast of the Bridegroom, and offered him fresh blood from their necks [see Mt 2:16-18].”289 Their blood spilled for the sake of the Bridegroom is their wedding gifts they offered their host, and it symbolizes the crucifixion of Christ.

The holy ones (martyrs) reclined at this banquet of sufferings. The Son of the Virgin invited virgin wedding guests and pressed out of them a new wine for the King-Bridegroom, The Son of the Virgin invited virgin wedding guests

286. Lit. children of his mystery

The one who has a body and blood, it is clear that he will die.
that, with the virgin blood, they might symbolize his slaughter and his offering.\footnote{290}

The bodies of the martyrs who met their demise for not renouncing Christ lie around in his wedding feast. “Bridegroom of Blood in whose wedding feast dead bodies lie.”\footnote{291} Jacob of Sarug provides his audience with a vivid scene of the heavenly wedding banquet.

They (the martyrs) were struck as gold and gained beauty like ornaments that they be the Bride’s adornments at [her] wedding feast. The slain Bridegroom invited them to [his] supper, and they brought with them their blood, their marriage gifts. Behold I see the banquet of sufferings filled with the slain, and I see the Bride exulting in their dead bodies: throats cut; bodies sawed; flesh lacerated with combs; heads lopped off and the corpses of all the victims. The Virgin Bride, greatly rejoicing, is among them, and the hideous sights of their chopped off pieces are dear to her.\footnote{292}

The Bride ultimately enters the bridal chamber, which is a symbol of the kingdom of heaven.\footnote{293} In the Syriac tradition, the symbolism of the bridal chamber finds its origin in the Parable of the Ten Virgins (see Mt. 25:1-13)\footnote{294} and goes back at least to the early third century.\footnote{295} Like the nuptial imageries, the bridal chambers depicts the intimate union of God and human beings.

\footnote{290} Ibid., 145:14-21.

\footnote{291} “HSJS II,” 636:12.

\footnote{292} Ibid., 639:1-10.

\footnote{293} See “HSJS III,” 299:11.

A marriage feast was held, and the Bride entered the bridal chamber.

\footnote{294} See Brock, “Bridal Chamber,” 181.

\footnote{295} See Ibid., 182.
Jacob of Sarug identifies it as the tomb of Jesus Christ. This symbolism refers to Ps 19:5-6, “He has pitched in them a tent for the sun; it comes forth like a bridegroom from his canopy.” The Church Fathers have connected this verse to the Resurrection. Finally, the baptized make up the Church, whose husband is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

5.7 Conclusion

The foregoing exposition shows the significance of the personification of the Church as the Bride of Christ in the mind of Jacob of Sarug. This biblical theme provided the bishop of Batnan with the necessary foundations to expound God’s salvific plan bedecked with nuptial language. The Syriac exegete interprets the descent of the Most High on Mt. Sinai as the foreshadowing of the Incarnation of the Son of God and his betrothal to the Church. The Nation whom he liberated from the Egyptians rejects him by choosing to worship a human-made god, the golden calf. Therefore, he repudiates her. In contrast to the Israelites, the Church whom he saves from her pagan past renounces its idols and joins to the Lord hung on the cross.

Furthermore, the few events preserved in the Old Testament and typifying beforehand Christ’s betrothal to the Church bespeak his espousal at his baptism in the Jordan and crucifixion on Golgotha. In the Jordan River, Christ cleanses and betroths humanity, the Hebrew Nation and the Church of the Nations, called to conversion. Just as the Lord repudiated the Bride, Israel, at Mt. Sinai because she chose a false god over him, he rejects the Bride, Israel, who demanded his death on the cross. Also, he betroths the Church, who embraces his lifeless body, despite her idol-worshiping history. Moreover,

296. See “HSJS II,” 603:1.

They went to him to see the tomb, a new bridal chamber.

297. See Brock, “Bridal Chamber,” 188.


You are the Church of the baptized whose husband and God is Jesus.
Jacob of Sarug interprets the Lord’s crucifixion as the marriage banquet. The Bridegroom offers his body as food and blood as drink to his Bride, who, in turn, presents the Eucharist at the altar of her Lord, the life-giving nourishment, to their guests. Therefore, one can infer that the Divine Liturgy, a memorial of the death and resurrection of Christ, celebrated in churches throughout the world, is the marriage banquet of the Lord and his Church. The Church’s bishops and priests are today’s marriage-brokers, like Moses, John the Baptist, the Apostles, and Paul before them. Their primary ministry consists in calling people to conversion, bringing them to God, and providing the faithful with the body and blood of the Bridegroom, the pledge of forgiveness of sins and eternal life. The unity between the Bridegroom and Bride is indissoluble. Not even death can separate the two. Just as Christ goes to the tomb, defeats death, and conquers its kingdom, so too the Church, drenched with the Lover’s blood, hastens after him, jumps into the abyss of death, and rises with him as well. Further, she lives with him forevermore in the bridal chamber, his heavenly kingdom.
CONCLUSION

This study dealt with the life story of Jacob of Sarug and the various typologies of the Church found in his *mimre*. It complements and contributes to the scholarly works already published in the theological field of Syriac Ecclesiology. Moreover, it is a foundational work for further researchers and theologians wishing to investigate Jacob’s comprehension of the Church. The purpose of this final chapter is to share the findings of this disquisition and suggest further inquiries on the topic.

1. The question about the person of Jacob of Sarug shall remain unsatisfactorily answered. The current stories about him in extant manuscripts are more hagiographical than historical, yet they contain a tidbit of data that allows the researcher access to general information about him. Jacob of Sarug was born to Christian parents in Kurtam in Mesopotamia, studied at the famous theological school of Edessa, was ordained a priest, then a periodeutes, and ascended to the episcopal see of Batnan in Sarug late in life, two years before his passing on November 29, 521. His natural death occurred seventy years after the Council of Chalcedon (A.D. 451). Jacob of Sarug was a prolific and an excellent orator, became famous for his exegetical expositions of the books of the Bible, and left behind numerous *mimre*, which he composed in his eponymous dodecasyllabic meter he invented, and other genres of compositions. Being an irenic pastor, he avoided getting into confrontational debates over the Christological issues of his time, albeit the theological interpretation of the person and work of the Son of God takes center stage in his writings.

2. The Church is next to Christ in importance, as her subject is prominent in the *mimre* of the bishop of Batnan. The Son of God is the reason for her
significance. Jacob of Sarug employed different typologies to depict the
Church. This work presented four such Ecclesiological themes: (1) the
Church as a building on Golgotha, (2) the Church as a fisherman and a
life-giving fishnet, (3) the Church as the Garden of Eden on earth in whose
midst is the Tree of Life, and (4) the Church as the Virgin Bride of Christ.

3. The Church emerging from these images is inseparable from the Son of
God and present with him wherever he is. The prophets in the Old
Testament proclaimed with types and symbols not only the coming of the
Son of God but also the reality of his Church. For example, Melchizedek
offering bread and wine showed the Son offering his body and blood to
the world and the Church who would minister this mystery. Abraham
longed to see the day of the Son of God, and when he saw it, he saw the
Church. The Patriarch Jacob saw the cross of Christ, and the Church
established on it. Moses saw Christ, the Bridegroom, and the Church, his
Bride. God’s prophets possessed the Eye of Prophecy, i.e., Jesus Christ,
who granted them access to God’s plan of salvation, which includes the
Church. After the Incarnation, the Son of God removed the veil that had
concealed him and the Church in the Old Testament. Their account shines
brighter than the sun. The Church accompanied him clearly through his
earthly ministry, is present at his crucifixion, follows him to Sheol,
resurrects with him, and joins him in his heavenly kingdom.

4. The first chapter of this study shows how the actions of Melchizedek,
Abraham, Jacob, and Moses depict the Church as a building on Golgotha
in the writings of Jacob of Sarug: Melchizedek built a house for the
Mysteries when he offered God bread and wine at his encounter with
Abraham (see Gn 14:18-20); Abraham erected an altar to sacrifice his son,
Isaac (see Gn 22:1-19); the Patriarch Jacob anointed a rock when he woke
up from his dream (see Gn 28:10-22); Moses sat on a rock with hands
extended (see Ex 17:8–16).
a. The house for the Mysteries Melchizedek built presents the notion of a sacramental Church. He is the king of Salem and its priest. As a type of Christ, he embodies the perfect kingship and priesthood. Jesus Christ is the true King of Peace, for he reconciled heaven and earth. Through his sacrifice and self-offering on the Cross, he became the perpetual peace offering that forgives human beings. Moreover, Melchizedek’s priesthood in no way resembles that of the Levites, who sacrificed animals. His priesthood is an image of the perfected priesthood of Jesus Christ, inasmuch as Melchizedek offered God bread and wine, symbols of the true body and true blood which Christ gives the world. At his baptism, Jesus Christ put an end to the Levitical priesthood and manifested the perfect priesthood on the cross when the fountainhead of the mysteries burst out of his side. The Son of God passes down this perfect priesthood to the Church that she may continue nourishing dying humanity with his life-giving body and blood. That makes her a sacramental Church. Therefore, her role is to dispense God’s mysteries. The distribution of Jesus Christ’s gifts to humanity is related to her everlasting missionary role in the world.

b. The Altar Abraham and Isaac built also symbolizes the Church as a building on Golgotha. It shows that sacrifice is central to the understanding of the Church. The sacrifice of the Son of God on the cross is a unique event in the history of humanity. However, this occurrence is perpetual, for it takes place again and again on the altars of the Church at the celebration of the Divine Liturgy. The Church never ceases to be at the foot of the cross of Jesus Christ receiving the divine gifts he offered her, i.e., the mysteries of Baptism and the Eucharist, which point to a sacramental Church.

c. The Church as a building on Golgotha portrays the Church as a permanent reality, which the Patriarch Jacob depicted when he anointed the rock. This permanence is due to Jesus Christ founding her
on Golgotha. Since the Son of God establishes the Church at his Crucifixion, her foundations are unshakable, and he interwove her permanently with him on his cross. Due to this entwinement, she becomes the gate of heaven, the ladder connecting Sheol to the heavenly Kingdom. The Church as a solid building provides the believer with a permanent place of worship and a symbol of enduring faith.

d. Furthermore, the Church as a permanent reality is prefigured by Moses stretching out his arms and resting on a rock. This image resembles an actual Church building adorned with the cross on its top. However, the image is not about architectural preferences, but it is a symbol of victory. The Church can be permanent only when she overcomes and defeats her enemies, whoever may be. Just as the cross granted victory to the Israelites, so the cross guarantees that the Church will always prevail, for Jesus Christ has perpetually stretched out his arms on the cross.

5. The second chapter explicates how Jesus Christ, the ṣayādā par excellence, employs different methods to invite people to come to him to grant them life. The Magi (see Mt 2:1-12) and the Samaritan woman (see Jn 4:1-42) show how the Lord uses their needs to offer them salvation. This chapter also presents the Evil One working in opposition to the Lord. He is an evil ṣayādā, who seeks the annihilation of humanity. The man possessed with Legion (see Lk 8:26-39) and the sinful woman (see Lk 7:36-50) are two examples of the Evil One ensnaring human beings and using them to capture other people to their detriment. Moreover, this chapter discusses the Church in relations to evangelization. She continues the mission of Jesus Christ, for she is both Peter’s fishnet (see Jn 21:1-14), which the Son of God, throws in the sea of life, and a fisher of man (see Mt 4:19; Mk 1:17; Lk 5:10), which Peter, the Apostles, and Paul represent.
a. To fulfill her missionary role, the Church must be a herald: she must proclaim the Lord to humankind and bring Adam and his children back to the Lord. In symbolic language, the Church is both the fishnet Jesus Christ employs to net human beings and is the fisherman the Lord sends to fish men. Being a fisher par excellence, the Lord shows the Church how to be a fisher of men. It is the intention of the Son of God to manifest himself to human beings. Unless he goes to people to meet them where they are in life, they would not be capable of knowing him, for God is utterly concealed, incomprehensible, unsearchable, and inscrutable. Thus, the Word of God became man to manifest himself to humanity. In consequence of the Incarnation, human beings have access to God through the Lord Jesus. However, his mission does not end but starts at his conception. A fisherman goes to the sea where the fish are intending to throw his net and catch fish, and the Son of God sails on the sea of the world to fish for humankind, so to speak. It was not haphazard that led Jesus Christ to the well where he met the Samaritan woman, but he had planned on going there to reveal to her his messianic identity. This encounter highlights the Lord’s intention. To imitate the Lord, the Church must go out in the world to evangelize. Evangelization, however, does not mean imposing religious ideals, ideas, and philosophies on others but proclaiming the Son of God. Since the Lord respects the free will he gifted humanity with, he does not force anyone to follow him and accept his invitation to salvation. Paul, for example, came to Christ of his own volition. The Church must follow the example of the Lord: he drew the world to him without compulsion through his suffering, afflictions, weakness, humility, being persecuted, and death. The sea of life was not gentle to the Fisher of All, and it will not be to the Church.

b. Just as he manifested his greatness through his lowliness and death, so the Church will manifest him through her humility and martyrdom.
The martyrs have been evangelizing by gladly shedding their blood for the sake of Christ. The Church, moreover, must not be afraid of being persecuted. By the power of the Lord, she can convert the persecutors and bring them to God just as Jesus did with Paul. Although the persecutor Paul became a persecuted Christian, he did not stop being a herald for Christ. In fact, he spent the rest of his life proclaiming Christ to anyone who would listen. What is highly unusual about this subject of a fisher is Jacob’s portrayal of the Son of God attracting the Magi through their craft and without prophets. They are avid students of the heavens as if the skies were their scriptures. The Son of God hid among shooting stars to capture the Magi and their kindred. Did Jacob of Sarug mean that the Son of God lies in wait in the scriptures of other religions? How does Jesus Christ reveal himself to Atheists? How much can one press this train of thought of Jacob of Sarug in today’s context of ecumenical and inter-religious dialogue? One thing, however, is for sure: the Church cannot sit idle, she must take the initiative, go from one person to another proclaiming the Kingdom of God, and invite them to be part of that kingdom. Not only the hierarchy of Church but also the baptized Christians must seriously take the missionary role of the Church. Therefore, the mission of each Christian is to proclaims Christ in whatever capacity they can just as the Samaritan woman did.

c. The fisherman’s job is to catch fish, but once caught, they die. That makes the image of a fisherman portraying Christ paradoxical, for the intention of the Son of God is to grant life to Adam and his children. Another fisher, the Evil One, does catch human beings for their damnation and destruction. Jacob of Sarug used the biblical stories of the man possessed with Legion and the Sinful woman to show how the Evil One is a fisher who seeks the annihilation of human beings. Christ the Fisherman desires to fish humanity out of this sea of destruction, death. Since Adam left the Garden of Eden, he has been living in this
sinful world that leads to his death. The Son of God’s manifestation of himself to human beings is not a boastful display of power and might, yet he reveals that he is the fountainhead of life. Jesus Christ grants the people he fishes forgiveness of sins and eternal life.

d. After his return to his Father, the Son of God remains active in the business of fishing humankind. He throws his fishnet, an image of the Church, from heaven into the sea of the world. Therefore, the Church is the Lord’s fishing tool for capturing human beings. That means that it is through her humankind have access to God. For this reason, she must be diligent in fulfilling her missionary role in the world. The Church takes the role of Jesus Christ in the world insofar as she can forgive them their sins. Also, she is the vehicle to eternal salvation, for she is the life-giving net. Having access to God through the Church means that Christ grants eternal life to those he catches through her. The image of the Church as a life-giving net does not illuminate how the Church offers salvation other than that it brings them to Christ.

e. The symbol of the Church as a Fisher of Men clarifies her mission to evangelize the world. To be a Fisher of Men means to be Christ’s witness throughout the world, to make disciples of all nations, and baptize them. Therefore, the Church must take the initiative as the Lord did, be active, and go to all regardless of their social status, race, skin color, or any other distinguishing traits. The Church must not be discouraged when she faces difficulties like Simon Peter and the apostles. They returned to their previous trade although they were called to be fishers of men. Christ Jesus continually reminds the Church of her missionary role, just like he helps Peter and the Apostles remember that they are no longer fishermen but Fishers of Men. Furthermore, the Lord calls Church to leave everything behind and concentrate on her missionary role. Thus, she can be the true herald, the Fisher of Men in the sea of the world and the life-giving fishnet that
catches the creation and brings the universe to her Lord and God, the source of life to all, who is evermore in her midst.

6. The fourth chapter deals with the topic of the Church as the Garden of Eden on earth, in whose midst is the Tree of Life. Three plantations symbolize the Church: a vineyard, a fig tree, and an olive tree. The vineyard symbolized Israel originally. Since Israel rejected the Son of God, the Father replaced it with the Church, the vineyard bearing sweet grapes (see Mt 21:22-41). The fig tree which Jesus cursed (see Mt 21:18-22; Mk 11:12-14; Mk 11:20-25) also represents Israel, for it refused Jesus the fruit of faith. The fig tree becomes a symbol of the Church when the chief tax collector Zacchaeus who climbed it (see Lk 19:1-10) believes in Jesus Christ. Zacchaeus’s faith is the sweet fruit of the fig tree. The broken off branches of the olive tree symbolize Israel, while the grafted wild olive shoot typify the Church (see Rom 11:13-24). This chapter also discusses three images of plants that symbolize Jesus Christ: a grape cluster, an olive tree, and the Tree of Life. All three symbolisms show that Christ is the *Ursakrament* and the source of the Church’s sacramental life. In this sacramental sense is the Church paradise on earth and Jesus Christ, the Tree of Life, is her midst. Further, the chariot Ezekiel saw further symbolizes the Church as the Garden of Eden, insofar as the chariot depicted paradise and the burning coal inside of it the Eucharist. Lastly, this chapters deals with the meaning of the keys which Jesus gives to Peter and their power to “loose and bind” (see Mt 16:19).

a. The economy of Salvation as Jacob of Sarug understood it comes to the fore in this chapter. Adam’s fall drove him out of the Garden of Eden and denied him access to the Tree of Life, which stands in its middle. Only the Son of God can restore human being to their God-intended abode and grant them access to the fruits of the Tree of Life, which makes Adam and his children immortal. He is also the only One who
can to unlock the gate to the Garden of Eden, which the fiery Angel guards holding a sword of fire.

b. The Church is both the “vineyard” and the “vinedressers.” The vineyard insinuates that she is God’s instrument of sanctification, while the vinedressers refer to those who help perpetuate her existence.

c. The return to this paradisiacal state can be attained now, for where the Tree of Life, Jesus Christ, is, there is the Garden of Eden. For example, the Son of God’s presence on his throne on the Chariot that Ezekiel saw makes the Chariot the Garden of Eden. Jesus Christ hung on the cross turns Golgotha and the world into the Garden of Eden. Sacramentally speaking, the Lord’s presence in the bread and wine offered at the Church’s altar makes her the Garden of Eden. Through the Mysteries of the Church, Christ restores human beings to the Garden of Eden. That means the Church is sacramental, and as such, she is the re-found Garden of Eden on Earth.

d. Jesus Christ is Ursakrament, the fountainhead of the Church’s sacramental life. This sacramental model of the Church is interwoven with Christ’s sacrifice on the cross, for the river of water and blood flows from his side irrigating the entire world. The Church relives the event of Golgotha at the celebration of her Mysteries. Moreover, her altar becomes sacramentally the Son of God’s throne, from which he rules the universe. The Holy Spirit transforms the bread and wine into the body and blood of the Son and hands them to the priests of the Church, who enter the chariot, to distribute them to those who believe in Jesus Christ. The Church’s sanctuary is thus the fiery chariot, whose burning coal is the Eucharist. Also, the Son of God is the Tree of Life, whose fruits are the medicine of life. This medicine of life, a reference to the body and blood of Jesus Christ, cures Adam of the illness of death, and it frees him from the grip of mortality and grants him
eternal life. The Tree of Life is thus the Altar, and its fruits are the Eucharistic species.

e. Jacob of Sarug does not interpret Peter’s key as a symbol of Petrine primacy, but he attaches to it revelatory, sacramental, and eschatological imports, which further point to the sacramental model of the Church. The key represents the unicity and continuity of God’s revelation found in both the Old and New Testaments. Although the Bible is a collection of books, which various writers authored at different times in history, its message is one. It ultimately reveals God’s love to humanity through the person of Jesus Christ. Moreover, the key grants its holder the power to confect the Mysteries of the Church. By the laying of hands, bishops pass down their ecclesiastical authority from generation to generation and their responsibility in passing on God’s teaching. Along with the bishops of the Church, her priests also hold the key, which grants them the power to baptize and celebrate the Divine Liturgy. Eschatologically, this key, a symbol of Christ, unlocked the fiery gate of the Garden of Eden and allowed Adam and his children to return to the Garden of Eden.

7. The last chapter expounds the image of the Church as the virgin Bride of Christ. It presents Israel as a repudiated Bride. Moses led her out of Egypt to Mt. Sinai, where she would meet her Bridegroom. The grandeur of God’s display and its splendor on Mt. Sinai (see Ex 19) scared her into rejecting the Bridegroom, and she finally chose the golden calf over him (see Ex 32:1-29), who had saved her from the tyrannical grip of the Egyptians. Israel’s sin of idolatry is akin to adultery. This chapter also shows that the Bridegroom on Mt. Sinai is Christ. Moreover, the betrothal of Isaac to Rebekah at the well (see Gn 24) points to Jesus’s espousal to the Church of the Nations in the Jordan. As worshipers of idols, the Church of the Nations is adulterous. However, baptism makes her a virgin. Further, the Old Testament accounts of Jacob’s dream at Bethel (see Gn 28:10-22)
and Samson’s choosing a Timnite woman for a wife (see Jgs 14) prefigure the betrothal of Christ to the Church on the cross. Moreover, Jacob’s espousal to Leah and Rachel (see Gn 29:1-30) also represents Christ betrothal to both Israel and the Church. Whereas Israel categorically rejects her bridegroom and crucifies, the Church falls in love with him and clings to him. The marriage feast occurs at the cross, where the Bridegroom offers his body and blood for the wedding guests. Finally, the unity between Christ is indissoluble.

a. The Nation, Israel, and the Church of the Nations represent humankind. The Son of God’s betrothal to both confers his plan to uniting himself with humanity. This nuptial language symbolizes salvation and shows that God extends redemption to all. It also highlights Jacob of Sarug’s stress on the pre-existence of the Church of the Nations in God’s plan of salvation, which God reveals through the experiences of Isaac, Jacob, Moses, and Samson. Although God’s offer of salvation pertains to all, individuals could refuse it just as Israel did when she, by her own choice, rejected and crucified Jesus Christ.

b. The image of a marriage broker further presents the Church as a herald, whom Jesus Christ entrusted to the Apostles and their successors, the bishops. They are the go-betweens who call people to repentance, conversion, baptism, and redemption following in the footsteps of Moses, John the Baptist, the Apostles, and Paul. Moses as such led Israel out of Egypt to betroth her to the Son of God on Mt. Sinai and called her to purify herself. In his capacity as the friend of the Bridegroom, John the Baptist called the Nation and the Nations to repentance and baptism. As go-betweens, The Apostles and Paul proclaimed redemption through Christ on the cross.

c. Christ’s ability to restore the virginity of the Church of the Nations from its past of worshipping idols though baptism provides an insight
into the power of the Mystery Baptism. It makes the baptized Adam sacramentally a new creation and restores him to his pre-fall state.

d. The Sacramental model of the Church comes to the fore once again in the images of the wedding banquet at the which the Bridegroom’s body and blood are the food and drink. Both the Bridegroom and the Bride invite their wedding guests to partake of the meal which the Bridegroom prepared on the cross. The true union of divinity with humanity makes the Eucharist possible and further supports the sacramental model of Church. That points to the Divine Liturgy as a wedding celebration and the sanctuary as the bridal chamber.

e. Christ betroths and cleanses humanity, the “Hebrew Nation” and the “Church of the Nations.” That insinuates that all of humanity is betrothed to Christ, yet Israel rejects the Bridegroom, whereas the Church accepts him and remains hopeful that the rest of humanity will eventually be converted.

f. Christ will always be united to the Church no matter what, for she is in effect his created body. Jacob of Sarug seems to identify the Church as Christ’s physical body, while he is also the Bridegroom. That insinuates that “the two become one flesh” in Genesis is a “type” of the Incarnation. The Church is with her Bridegroom wherever he is, and her actions mimic his deeds. She follows him to the grave, goes to Sheol, breaks down its gates, frees Adam and his children, and resurrects with her Lord.

8. Jacob of Sarug is no doubt a child of his Syriac tradition and is well versed in the writings of the Syriac theologians who proceeded him. However, he is not a copycat. This study shows that not only does he expand on the various ecclesiological notions he received but also provides theological insights that are uniquely his. Jacob of Sarug’s understanding of who Melchizedek is differs from that of Ephrem. While Jacob of Sarug imagines the Church built on Golgotha as attested in his account of Melchizedek,
Ephrem sees her built on the location where the temple stood. None of his predecessors seem to have used the fishnet as a symbol of the Church. These and other examples show the originality of Jacob of Sarug’s theological understanding of the Church.

9. More research would be desirable to study further the symbolism of the Church as presented in this work and discover others in the writings of Jacob of Sarug which this author might have missed. Extra in depth investigation is required to assess better Jacob of Sarug’s originality in expanding on the tradition of his Syriac ancestors and position him rightly in the history of Syriac Ecclesiological thought.
The objective of this section is to present for the first time an English translation of Jacob of Sarug’s mimro entitled On Inquiry and the Sanctity of the Church. This mimro relates to the Ecclesiological theme of this dissertation. The Church is its main protagonist and some of her types found in this mimro are discussed in the main sections of this work.

The source of the Syriac text reproduced below is “HSJS IV,” 767-789. The English reading of this mimro is not the first in a western language, for already in 1963, Grill published a German rendition and republished it in 1970. Along with his work, the following text will make Jacob’s mimro available to an even larger audience than before.

The context of the mimro does not betray the exact year when Jacob of Sarug composed it or even to whom he addressed it. He presents his ideas by making the Church a speaking person. This personified Church delivers a heated address denouncing disputants and their inquiries into the Son of God, and she asks the hearers to be the judge of what she has to say. The historical, theological background of this mimro is undoubtedly the Council of

---


2. At times, this translator finds it difficult to reconcile his reading of the Syriac text with that of Grill. Therefore, when the English and German versions diverge, he makes available the German translation in the footnotes without commenting for fear of being presumptuous. Some of these divergences are minute, while others are not.
Chalcedon held in A.D. 451, for Jacob of Sarug lived and wrote after it, and he experienced the damaging aftermath of this controversial Council, which caused dissensions and divisions in the Church. The “two natures in the one person of Jesus Christ” formulation of the Council of 451 is the crux of the resulting schisms.

On Inquiry and the Sanctity of the Church addresses several topics: philosophical investigation, Christology, Mariology, and Ecclesiology. The following subsections present summaries of these themes.

Philosophical Investigation

The dispute is between the Church, on one side, and Disputants (ܐܬܝܓܠܐ), Inquirers (ܒܝܓܠܐ), the Wise (ܓܠܬܐ), the Learned (ܓܠܬܐ), and Doctors (ܓܠܬܐ), on the other (1-3). The identity of these groups remain concealed, for Jacob of Sarug does not betray whether they are pro- or anti-Chalcedon. Since The Son of God is incomprehensible and inscrutable, so the Church stands in opposition to philosophical inquiries. She forcefully says, “The teaching was not sent to me at the hands of philosophers (51)!“ According to Jacob of Sarug, a close investigation into the nature of the Son of God results in crafty questions and cunning counterarguments that lead to rebelliousness against God and the Church’s separation from him. Also, it creates harmful divisions and schism within the ranks of believers. The Church states that these kinds of philosophical inquiries trouble her, do not profit her and cause rifts among her groups. Furthermore, they turn shepherds into wolves, pastors into strangers, and depose bishops. These statements bespeak the divisions of the Church and the political situation that occurred as an aftermath of the Council of Chalcedon. To avoid this unfortunate and undesirable result, the Church anchors herself in the Holy Scriptures and categorically rejects philosophical questionings in matters relating to God. Jacob’s stance against this kind of intellectual investigation is not unique to him. Grill provides quite a few
sources, including texts from the Old and News Testaments, warning against a rational explanation of her faith.3

Christology

The Christological debate of the time is the main theme of the mimro. It comes to the fore at the beginning of Jacob’s work under consideration with such terms as origin (ดารา, ḫmḥš), race (ｖ.bit, ḥmḥš), stem (ｖ.bit, ḥmḥš), and nature (סנה, 5-7). The Church does not need disputants and the like to instruct her who Jesus Christ is, for she is his Bride and already knows him well. She learned that he is both human and God from the prophet Isaiah, who called him “Emmanuel (א֐וָֹם)” (see Is 7:14) and “Wonder (וָדֳו) (v.ad)’” (see Is 9:5). Emmanuel is not just an abstract notion and an empty title which means “God is with us” but becomes a reality at the Incarnation. The Word of God becomes among human beings in actuality while remaining with the Father and is like him in divinity. Also, being born does not rob the Son of God of his divinity. After the Incarnation, the Church professes Jesus Christ as both the Son of God and the Son of Man, for she denies neither his divinity nor his humanity. To the question how to reconcile divinity and humanity in the one person of Jesus Christ, the Church answers, “His exalted nature (אֲנָקֹפֶת) joined indeed to humanity (סנה), yet he was not deprived of the strength of his magnificence. While he is as he is in his divinity, he put on humanity just as it is with all its changes (19).” With such statements, Jacob of Sarug declares the Chalcedonian faith without using the two-nature formulation of the Council of 451. Whereas the title Emmanuel denotes both the divinity and humanity of Jesus Christ, the name Wonder points to the unfathomable mystery of Jesus Christ. He is truly Wonder, for he is the One holding the uttermost edges of the universe and the baby in Mary’s womb! His handspan contains the heavens, yet Mary carries him? How could the One whose palm is the sea lay

in a manger, or the One who is ablaze put on swaddling clothes? So, the mind is incapable of comprehending or investigating the impenetrable mystery.

**Mariology**

The *mimro* presents the two origins of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. The Father does not conceive the Word but begets him of his being (*ܐܺܒܳܢܲܐ) (59). Mary, however, conceives him, and this conception occurs when the Word enters through her ear (61). He dwells in Mary’s pure womb and comes to birth from the daughter of David (61). Her virginal state remains intact even after his birth (62-63). Birth pangs do not spare Mary, who suffers like any mother giving birth lest she may think that she conceives a spirit.

**Ecclesiology**

The Church as the Bride of Christ is the central Ecclesiological image running throughout the entire *mimro*. Jacob of Sarug introduces her at the beginning of the *mimro* as the King’s Bride (1), and she presents herself as his Betrothed (2). She is a virgin Girl, whom the Son of God’s heralds betrothed her to him. These are the prophets (13), who are the Sharers of his Mystery, the Apostles, and Paul. She is the faithful Bride who investigates her Bridegroom before accepting his ring and entering the bridal chamber with him. After the wedding, all investigations cease, for further inquiry is akin to breaking the covenant. The wedding takes place on Golgotha, and the Bridegroom offers his body as food and his blood as the drink at the banquet (9), an apparent reference to the Eucharistic species the Church offers to her children. Jesus’s sacrifice on the cross for the sake of his Bride is her dowry, so he can never repudiate her. He cannot separate from her, for he will have to give himself to her—he is after all her dowry (86). The Bride rejects the Disputants and sends them to her rival, the first Bride (47). The rival Bride is Israel, the Daughter of the Nation, who rejected and crucified Jesus Christ.

---

Another important symbol of the Church mentioned in this mimro is that of a Fishnet. Jacob wrote, "May you be a fishnet capable of catching the sea and land, and may the world be taken in your bosom to life at the hands of your Lord (100)." The image of the Church receiving the entire world speaks of the call to universal salvation the Lord Jesus Christ issues to fallen humanity. He is the Fisher of Men, and she is his instrument that grants life to those they come to her.

Concerning the Order of the Presbyters, Jacob of Sarug does not see the Christian priesthood as a continuation of that of the Levites. Notwithstanding the fact that Jacob of Sarug affirms the legitimate anointing of Levi and his sons at the hands of Moses, who was fulfilling God's command (see Ex 30:30), he claims that Jesus takes away from them that privilege at his baptism in the Jordan River. Indeed, John the Baptist does not pass down the priesthood he received from his father, Zechariah (see Lk 1:5-25) to Jesus Christ, for Jesus lacks nothing, but John returns the entire treasury of the priesthood to its rightful owner. The Son of God, in turn, gives it to his Church and her shepherds.

Jesus's descent in the waters of the Jordan sanctifies its waters, i.e., the waters of Baptism. The water John poured upon Jesus in the river does not add to the holiness of the Baptized, but Christ sanctifies the Mystery of Baptism by pouring his holiness into the waters of the Jordan River (69). Therefore, Jesus grants the Church the power to sanctify the children of Adam through the administration of the Mystery of Baptism.

Jacob of Sarug exalts the Church over all earthly and heavenly principalities and dominions. She is the Bride of the Son of God, and so, nothing can overwhelm her, not even the gates of death (85). Since she is victorious over death, disputants cannot overpower her (90). It is true that strife and division vex her, yet a Church, whose members unite, could become the envy of heaven (106).
Outline

I. Introduction: The Church, the Bride, Debates Disputants (1-2)
II. The Bride Against Further Inquiry into the Bridegroom (3-8)
III. Inquiry Occurs Before the Wedding (9-15)
IV. Isaiah’s Testimony and Warning (16-30)
V. The Bride Rejects and Upbraids Disputants (31-49)
VI. The Church’s Adherence to Scriptures (50-56)
VII. The Church’s Teaching (57-88)
VIII. The Poet’s Supplications (89-111)
IX. The End (112)
I. Introduction: The Church, the Bride, Debates Disputants

1. The young Church entered into debate with Disputants. Let us wait to hear the lovely discourse of her wisdom. The King’s Bride got into an altercation with Inquirers. Come, Discerners, be mediators between her and them.

2. The Virgin of Light made an accusation against the Wise. Let everyone listen to what her sweetness taught. She cried to you, Jesus, to rescue her of the Learned who vexed her greatly. She shook the Doctors from her bosom [screaming], “What have I to do with you?”

II. The Bride Against Further Inquiry into the Bridegroom

3. Unashamed, she cries out with a loud voice to the crowds, “Since I am betrothed, do not labor for my sake that I may love my Betrothed. I love him without investigation, for he died for me, and worship him without inquiry, for he saved me.

4. Do not teach me rebelliousness with your questions, for I do not dispute [first] over and then love him who died for me. Do not accustom me to cunning counterarguments, for it was not by inquiry that his heralds betrothed me to him.

5. Bedjan reproduces the intention of the scribe who copied Jacob of Sarug mimro, “By the power of the Father, the Son, and the Holy, life-giving Spirit, we begin writing a book of mimre by the Holy Mar Jacob, the Doctor, for the complete [liturgical] yearly cycle. The first mimro: On Inquiry and the Sanctity of the Church (‘ثلاَثُّ ثَلاَثاً مَّثَلَّا فَرَأَيْتُ سَانَاا) مَثَلًا عَظِيمًا وَحُوَّرَتْ لِعَزْيَةَ وَلَمْ تَسْرَعْ لِحُبُّ كُلِّهَا, مَثَلًا عَظِيمًا وَكَفَا" “HSJS IV,” 767, footnote 1.
וַחֲמָא מָדְנָא תַּחְמִיתוֹ חַעַשׁוֹן

חָמָא אָּהְמָא.

וַחֲמָא חֲרִיָּא: 5 כְּכֶּּּוֹ עָּדְּבַּלָּא.

1. כְּכֶּּּּוֹ עָּדְּבַּלָּא חֲרִיָּא: מָדְנָא תַּחְמִיתוֹ חַעַשׁוֹן
   מַדְנָא לָעָּמַּעְלָּה חַעַשׁוֹן בַּמְּתַסָּא וּבַמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא
   חַעַשׁוֹן נַחֲמִיתוֹ נַחֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא חַעַשׁוֹן
   אוֹ הַחֲמִיתוֹ הַחֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא חַעַשׁוֹן אָהְמָא.

2. הַחֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא הַחֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   חֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.

3. הַחֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא הַחֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.

4. הַחֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא הַחֲמִיתוֹ בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
   בַּמְּתַסָּא בַּמְּתַסָּא אָהְמָא.
5. Do not labor for my sake that I may cleanse my tongue with questions,
for I will not wipe off the hymns of praise from between my lips.
I do not need you to show me my Betrothed’s origin,
for I know that he is truly the Son of God.

6. I do not seek to learn from you about his race,
for I will not forget that he is from the divine stem.
I do not desire you to comfort me with his magnificence,
[for] I am convinced that he is of the Majesty, the Author of [all] Origins.

7. Do not say to me that this or that is his nature, for I deny neither his divinity nor his humanity.
After I had known him, was betrothed to him, and became his,
to what end are the questions, for there is no way that I would leave him.

8. After I had known and entered into a covenant with him,
why do you want to cause division between him and me?
After the blood of his crucifixion sealed and washed me,
to what end do you break my marriage settlement signed with his hand?

III. Inquiry Occurs Before the Wedding

9. The Cross became for me a great marriage feast, and I went to it.
[So,] to what end is the investigation into the unfathomable, inscrutable Son of the King?
Before the wedding one asks about the bridegroom,
but when the marriage feast ends, investigations come to an end.

6. “Does it indicate against two natures (אֶחָד אֵל, אֶחָד נַעֲרָאִין)?” Ibid., 768, footnote 2.
7. See Jn 19:34.
لا أقوى، فلذك، إن أRpلا كم آن.اف الأف A في كنء هرقن. 
لا صنوا إنا أرا، كد ليقمة وحمس. 
وبنخا إننا كيف وجَب كلامًا 15 مسنارًا. 

لا حمَنا إننا بقَنة سماحة، ومسه. 
لا ليحنا إننا وحي فهَمًا، و بكلاه. 
لا وسنا إننا لاكسة، كحمس. 
سقفتا إننا كه في وحنا، 117 هذا ليفهان. 

لا أهِدها كد وية سهَنة أه خنًا، 
وبكلاهة كه لا تضا إننا ملًا حالقنا. 
في وسُكَهنا كائمننا كه 738 وسَك. 
كَنة، خَدًا إننا لا أن هفَشًا إاهه، كنها. 

في وسُكَهنا أو كحُسمَا تَكَة كَنة: 
كَنة، حِنُي إبَل، أقعت، عُمَها، ضد كد أه كه. 
في وابنائها كحمسَ، حَمَها واسعة. 
كَنة ناهقَر أبها. 1035 فَهد أبها. 

دَدُنا 81 كد سكَنة لا أتَها، و سكَنة، 
كَنة، حَمَها كد كد سكَنة وآتَها سكَنة. 
صُمِم سكَنة كد 85 إنا، عهَّنله كدُنا. 
1324 سكَنة 1000 كد كنها، حَمَها كدُنا.
10. Once the bride marries the bridegroom, there is no [longer] investigation, yet the one seeking to investigate would cause division there. Where have you ever seen a bride asking in her bridal chamber, ‘Who is the bridegroom?;’ Or ‘How is his reputation?;’ Or ‘What is his race?’

11. Before entering, she learns all these things from those coming, but after marrying him, she refrains her mouth from questions. [Since] I became his, I shall not investigate after my wedding. [So,] do not teach me effrontery alien to me!

12. When it was necessary, I greatly wore myself out asking questions. I investigated about him, then found him, and was betrothed to him. Until I had learned the truths of who he is and whose Son he is, I would not make a marriage contract with him to become his.

13. When he sent the seekers, [his] prophets, and they came to me, I entered with them into a heated debate about him. Although they brought me the Bridegroom’s ring, I did not accept it, for I put in the contract: [not] until I will have learned the truths.

14. I did not hasten to give them credence based on one saying. They allured me exceedingly, yet their words did not attract me. Since it was necessary thenceforth to enter into a debate with them, I provoked the heralds and questioned them to learn who had sent them.

---

10. أما ظ לנ، كنا نقدًا للسماء، كننا نفحًا:

قالوا: وَرَبَّنَا سَكَّبْنَا أَحَدَهُمَا وَتَطَوَّرَ

أما سن كننا، كننا، لما كننا حتى بربعنا:

بِكَّسَةِ شَيْئَانَا أَهِي أَيُّهَا الَّذِي يَلِيشِه.

11. كُلُوا لَحْمًا نَكُحْلِيًا كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلًا، كُلًا:

فَمَا وَبَعَدَ كُلُّهُ بِصَمَتٍ هَذَا في وَقَاءٍ فَمَا

12. كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا:

مَكْفَحُوهْ صَعَدَ فيّ أمَنَاسِكَهُ فَأَمَحْتُوهْ كَأَنَّهُ:

جَعَلُوا وَنَكَحْلِيَهُ مَكْفَحًا وَقَدْ غَلَبَهُ،

أَهْلًا أَنَاسُهُ، حَمَّتُوهُ كَحُمْهُ كَأَنَّهُ كَبِكَهُ:

كُلُّهُ كُلًا سَعَتُهُ قَالَهُ رَأِيَ:

مَكْفَحُوهُ وَنَكَحَلْبُوهُ نَكَحْلِيَهُ، كَحْدَيْهِ:

كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا:

وَمَعْلَمًا حَلَّبًا. كُلُّهُ مَكْفَحًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا.

13. لا أَمَحُوهُ وَأَنَا مَكَافِحٌ أَنَا:

أَصَيَّرْهُ مَكْفَحًا، كَحُمْهُ، كَأَنَّهُ كَبِكَهُ، كَأَنَّهُ كَبِكَهُ:

كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا، كُلُّهُ كُلًا.

14. 770
15. The prophets, whom I asked, showed me the origin of my Betrothed, 
but I did not ask you, Learned, for you are haughty. 
I diligently questioned the Sharers of his Mystery about him 
and learned from them exactly everything I wanted [to know].

IV. Isaiah’s Testimony and Warning

16. I learned from Isaiah the names of my Betrothed. 
So, I do not need to learn from you what to call him. 
‘His name shall be called Emmanuel,’ he proclaimed in my ear. 
He gave me a sign to learn his concealed nature through the revealed name.

17. I recognize the nature of my Betrothed from this name. 
So, I do not accept the sayings of the Learned and their questions. 
The Disputants cannot investigate Emmanuel, 
for he is our God, behold he is among us and cannot be explained! 

18. He is with his Father and is like him in his divinity, 
yet Emmanuel became among us although he is God! 
Since he came and became among us according to the flesh, 
Isaiah said, ‘the one who became among us is our God!’

19. His exalted nature joined indeed to humanity, 
yet he was not deprived of the strength of his magnificence. 
While he is as he is in his divinity, 
he put on humanity just as it is with all its changes.

9. These are the prophets, to whom God had revealed the mystery. 
12. “He is like his Father, is with us, and like us. The Father begot him, the Virgin carried him, and he cannot be comprehended.” “HSJS IV,” 770, footnote 5.
15. دمع القلوب وأحذته أني لى عرضه وعَضَبَت
حَكَّةٌ وَمَحْطَمٌ لا سلامة إنا وَأَسْلَمْتَ إِبَأَةَ
جَعَلَت أَبَاهُ حُكْمَةٍ حَكَّةٌ حَكَّةٌ
مَضْعُوْهَا عَشُرُها حَكَّةٌ حَكَّةٍ حَكَّةٌ

16. دمع القلوب وَعَضَبَتُه في أَهْلُه حَكَّةٌ أَنْهاء
فَلَأ صَنِّعْ إنا وَمسْتَنَبْ عَلَى أَمْثَلٍ
نَذَهَرُوا حَكَّةٌ حَكَّةٌ أَنْهاء آدَى حَكْمٍ
هَمْمَتُ أَكَانُوا وَهذَى كُلَّه حَكَّهُ فَصَنُّه

17. فَنَا مَعَاهُم مَعَضَبْبا إنَّا صَنَّه وَعَضَبَت
فَلَأ سَكَّبُ إنا وَكَتِبْت مُعْضَبْبا مَعَا كُنْتُهٍ
فَلَأ صَنِّعْ حَكَّةَ أُهْنَاه تَمُنُّهَا
بَكَّةٌ مَا كُتَيسِه مَعَ حَكَّهُ وَمَلْعَبُهْ

18. كُنَّا حَكَّهَا مُعْضَبْبا حَكَّهَا حَكَّهَا
كُنَّا حَكَّهَا مُعْضَبْبا حَكَّهَا حَكَّهَا
كُنَّا حَكَّهَا مُعْضَبْبا حَكَّهَا حَكَّهَا
كُنَّا حَكَّهَا مُعْضَبْبا حَكَّهَا حَكَّهَا

19. آيَتَكِ يُعْلِمْنَا أَنَّهُ بَيْنَ عَمَى وَأَشْمٍ
فَلَا نَفَعَهَا فِي هَيْأَا وَعَضَبَتْهَا
كُنَّا حَكَّهَا مُعْضَبْبا حَكَّهَا حَكَّهَا حَكَّهَا
20. The prophet gave me these signs concerning the Bridegroom that I might perceive he is both human and God. He depicted and showed us his feebleness and greatness, for he included both in the adored name of Emmanuel.

21. Isaiah rose at the hand of his prophetical revelation, went up, and gave Christ a name in the dark clouds. He remained as a mediator between the height and depth and sang the name that both sides might rejoice in it.

22. Behold Emmanuel is God as is written in prophecy, the revealer of the mysteries of God’s house. The Son of God, who is God, along with his Begetter, descended from his abode and became among us for our sake.

23. I will not deny Emmanuel to whom I am betrothed. The prophet is truthful and recorded for me the name of the Bridegroom. Since he knew that Emmanuel’s account would be wondrous, he called him Wonder, for he wondered foremost at him.

24. He is indeed Wonder: although God, he became a human being, and a womb contained the One holding up the uttermost edges of the universe that he might become a baby! The heavens is his handspan, yet he rested on a bosom as wide as a handspan! The sea is the palm of his hand, yet a manger was enough for him to lay in!

17. See Is 40:12.
19. See Lk 2:12.
20. عَكْبِيُّ وَأَهْلاً حَكَمْنَا عَلَيْنَا حَكِيقَةً

21. ما أَكَلَتْنَا 90 كَفَأَةً حَيَاتًا، وَإِذْ، وَإِذْ، وَإِذْ، وَإِذْ.

22. 17 كَفَأَةً أَهْلُهَا، وَإِذْ كَفَأَتْنَا حَيَاتًا

23. لَا طَعَّنا إِنَّا حَكِيقَةً أَهْلُهَا، وَإِنَّا حَكِيقَةً حَيَاتًا

24. وَقَدْ أَكَلَتْنَا 90 مِلْسَمًا حَيَاتًا.
25. He nourishes babies, yet he grasped a breast like an infant!
He feeds the worlds, yet he sucked milk to grow strong by it!
He carries the creation, yet knees carried him like a child!
He is watchful over creatures, yet the Virgin Mary watched over him.20

26. The arms of the solitary widow21 carried him whom the cherubim carry!22
He, arrayed in flames, put on poor swaddling clothes!23
He is formidable among the angels,24 yet Mary’s arms carried him!
He inspires the Watchers with awe yet was ordinary and quiet in the house of a carpenter.25

27. If someone wonders about the ‘where and how’ of these things, behold Isaiah called him Wonder26 and contained all of them.
I learned all these from Isaiah.
So, I do not need to learn anything additional from you.

28. The prophet saw that I gave credence to the entire account, and he further instructed me, ‘Bind up the testimony. Seal the law.’27
Do not seek the testimony of anyone after these things, and do not learn another law concerning the Bridegroom.

---

21. See Lk 2:36-38.
22. See Ez 1.
23. See Lk 2:12.
24. See Ez 1.
25. ما الذي يجتمع عليه أن تحكمنا هو شيء تخفيفاً Wien أرسلناه

26. همّ عالقوناً في حضرنا وما تخفيفاً في شيء تخفيفاً Wien أرسلناه

27. إن كنت يكره ساعة تخفيفاً إنها وانها قانصةٌ

28. سألوا نحنما وإنكما إنكما تخفيفاً مخالفاً

346
29. Do not also investigate many things. The truth is one, and I have told it to you exactly as it is. Bind up the testimony of prophecy\(^28\) in your mind, and do not seek other witnesses concerning these things.

30. Safeguard this account just as you have heard it. Never again should useless questions distract you. Seal the Law\(^29\) with the great seal of faith that no one may break and add to it of their teaching for you.’

V. The Bride Rejects and Upbraids Disputants

31. I, the Church, hold fast to this truth and believe in it just as I have heard from Isaiah. I will wait for the Lord, my savior, only according to my instruction and expect him, who turned away his face from disputants.

32. My testimony is bound up, my Law sealed, and I am betrothed. Let no one come to exchange my seal for their counterarguments! I gave credence to the Bridegroom’s discourse, entered with him, and do not need to learn from you how he is.

33. Go away from me, haughty Learned! Leave me alone to praise! You have hindered the hymn of thanksgiving in my assemblies. I have laid before my children a hymn of praise that they might meditate on it. Not to a dispute did I bring them that they might be disparaged because of it.

---

29. See Is 8:16.
لا نكتحب لائق فيهم، بل نحن هناث
إنّما نكتحب كده لأنّه دُعاء، سُمّداً
وعِزَّةً، وافْتَضَأْنَهُ حَيْثَ جَهَٰنُ
فَعَلَتُوا بِهِ إِنَّما نَحْبُ كَتَنَ أَرْجِحُ

٣٠. حَكِيمٌ نَعْفَأٌ مَّطْحاً مَّنَا أَبَّ بُهْطَكَّٰهُمْ
لا نكتحب كده كله فَّإِنَّهُ عِلَّمي ولا مَخْلِفَنا
سُعْفَتُ نَحَبُّهَا حَيْثَ جَهَٰنُ وَقَهْفَهَا
نَأْنُ نَفْتُوهُ، إنّهُ نَحْبُ كَتَنَ حِينَ مَخْفَفْهُ

٣١. أَنَا كَحْرُ اللَّهِ مِنْهَا حَارَى كِبْدَةً إِنَّا
قَاحِلَا وَفَهْدَةً، فِي أَهْضَنَا مَدْعُوا إِنَّا حَهَٰنُ
حَكِيمُ كَتَنَ أَبَا، كَهْ حُنُنَا وَقَهْفَهَا
قَاحِلَا كَهْ وَإِلَّهُ أَهْلِهِ فِي وَقْهَهَا

٣٢. رَسُولُ اللَّهُ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمُ نَحَبَّهَا حَكِيمًٰا إِنَّا
لَا إِنَّهُ نُتَلَّا سُكَّةَ كِبْدَةٌ حَكِيمَةً
بَعْلُوا نَحَبَّهَا وَسُكَّةَ مَكَّةٍ كَتَنَ
نَأْنُ سُنَتَُّ إِنَّا إِلَّهُ حِيْنَ، وَإِلَّهِ أَسْلَمُهُ

٣٣. كَنْكَهْ حَكِيمًٰا نَحْبُهَا سُكَّةٌ مَكَّةٍ كَتَنَ أَبَا
كَنْكَهْ حَبَّةٍ، مَّنَا أَهْلِهِ فِي وَقْهَهَا
إِنَّهُ نَحْبُ كَتَنَ أَبَا كَتَنَ حِينَ، وَقَهْفَهَا
كَنْكَهْ كُنْكَهَ أَبَا أَهْلِهِ نَخْفَفْهَا، حَهَٰنُ

٣٤٨
34. I do not seek a polished discourse of your questions, 
for my assemblies are directed to praise in simplicity. 
I do not desire to see any of my children investigating, 
for ordinary people has handed down my Betrothed’s tidings.  

35. Paul, and not a disputant, betrothed me to Jesus, the Bridegroom, 
uttered in my ears common expressions I have learned, 
‘Only Christ crucified do I proclaim everywhere,’  
and subjugated the creation to the name of the crucifixion.  

36. The cross of shame was his boast everywhere,  
and he put to shame the Wise through it without dispute. 
He did not proclaim to me these sayings I have heard from you. 
They are novelties which pride has uttered.  

37. You have caused me much trouble with your questions 
and traded for a loss all you had learned.  
You are quarrelsome! You are cunning, and you are haughty! 
Are you wise, and yet you have brought me no benefit!  

38. Who of you have used astuteness for my sake, and I have profited 
by it? 
Who has disputed in me yet caused no harm? 
Who has caused a schism in me but was not thrown into the side 
of the schismatics,  
or has investigated, yet the world did not perceive their fall?  

---

31. See 1 Cor 1:23. 
32. See 1 Cor 15:27; Eph 1:22; Phi 3:21. 
لا حكمنا إلا عذابًا محتومًا به عقدة ٣٤
وحكمة ما هو سوء، فلما كان حكمه ٣٥
لا سما إلا ما حكم عليه بحكمته
بحمد السما إلينا لحكمه حكمًا وحكمته

لا تفعنا به حكمه حكمًا به عقدة ٣٦
وما فعلنا به حكمه حكمًا به عقدة
فما فعلنا به حكمه حكمًا به عقدة
لا شعبًا إلا به حكمنا حكمًا به عقدة ٣٧

لا تفعلوا به حكمنا حكمًا به عقدة ٣٨
لا شعبًا إلا به حكمنا حكمًا به عقدة
لا تفعلوا به حكمنا حكمًا به عقدة
لا تفعلوا به حكمنا حكمًا به عقدة
39. These ranks which divided me were those of the Wise who will meet their fall on their own due to their knavishness.\textsuperscript{35} Behold the offices of the Learned \textit{lacuna} how empty they are, for their ingenuity expelled them from their groups.\textsuperscript{36}

40. If inquiry had not penetrated me through the Wise, a rift would not have had altogether occurred among my groups. If the accursed snake\textsuperscript{37} had not hissed dispute at me, not even the sun would have been comparable to me due to the multitude of my children.

41. If the sound of your questions had not troubled me violently, the thunder of those glorifying me would have been clear like that of the seraphim. If you had not caused these divisive rifts within me, the choir of the watchers would not have been more united than my children.

42. Even if you have been silent in me now [and] allowed that I rest, do not renew my grief, now that it has passed? O Disputants, I have greatly suffered at your hands! Let the previous rifts you had caused in me remain sealed!

43. Did you not quake because of the strife and its damage, that when it died out, you revived it so that it would plague me again? Did the horror that occurred to your brothers not terrify you that you would even get ready for the dispute that ruins assemblies?

\begin{itemize}
\item 36. “Siehe, die ‘Reinigung’ der Schriftgelehrten, Wir hätten sie je ein Ende gefunden?” \textit{Ibid.}
\item 37. See Gn 3.
\end{itemize}
فَحْكَبُ طَهْرَةٌ تُؤْمَّنَ بِهِ كَ وَدْكُنْتُمْ ۚ إِنّي أَخْبَرْتُكُمْ ۙ أَلاَّ يَكْبِرُواُّ نَفْسَهُمْ أَنَّكُمْ تَحْكُمُونَ

ۚ وَاَلَّذَا، وَاَلَّذَا وَاَلَّذَا، وَاَلَّذَا [..] أَنَا صَفَطُتُهُ ۖ وَلَيْكُمْ مِنْ فِعْلِكُمْ أَنَا قَدْ تَعَدَّلْتُهَا.

ۗ كَلَّا، أَنَا أَلْحَكِرُ كَ كَ يَحْكُمُونَۡۗ كَلَّآ هِكَلَا كَيْمِهِنَّۡۗ كَلَّآ وَإِنَّ كُلَّ ما كَحْتُهَا لَيْمَ حَتَّىۡۗ كَلَّآ أَهْلُ هَٰذَا فَمِسُّا أَلْفُ حِيْثُۡۗ كَلَّآ

ۗ كَلَّا مَعَوْهَا كَتَنَٰتْهَا لَنْ وُكَّلَ كَ خَلَّمَ کُلَّ مَا كَحْتُهَاۡۗ كَلَّآ وَإِنَّ كُلَّ ما كَحْتُهَا لَيْمَ حَتَّىۡۗ كَلَّآ أَهْلُ هَٰذَا فَمِسُّا أَلْفُ حِيْثُۡۗ كَلَّآ

ۗ أَقَّ مَدْمَعَةً حَكْمَةً كَثِيرَةً أَوْفِّهِ أَنْفُسُۡـۗ كَلَّا لَمْ يَكْبِرُواُّ نَفْسَهُمْۡۗ كَلَّآ وَإِذَا حَكَمَتُهَاۡۗ كَلَّآ حَلَّٰعَةًۡۗ كَلَّآ أَهْلُ هَٰذَا فَمِسُّا أَلْفُ حِيْثُۡۗ كَلَّآ

ۗ لَا حَلَّٰعَةًۡ كَثِيرَةً مِعْدَةًۡۗ كَلَّآ مَا سَأَلْتُمُّهَاۡۗ كَلَّآ حَلَّٰعَةًۡۗ كَلَّآ أَهْلُ هَٰذَا فَمِسُّا أَلْفُ حِيْثُۡۗ كَلَّآ

ۗ ٣٥٢
44. Did you not know from experience that dispute engenders harm and corrupts the right actions among congregations? Did you not hear that it turned shepherds into wolves and made pastors strangers in the community?

45. Do you not know that it is an instigator from the beginning and has deposed bishops from the rank of their authority? Did it not throw the Learned into a pit and humbled them, hurled the Inquirers into a urine retention, and drowned them?

46. So, disputing has not to do with you howsoever it is as such. Flee from it, for anyone musing about it finds their death. I reject you, Learned, and your sayings, and do not need the teaching of your questions.

47. Go to my rival, [the first Bride], who will receive you with love. Behold the Daughter of the Nation, who delights in dispute that harms her! Behold the Sadducees in her midst, who dispute profusely, and the Scribes, who assail the hidden things, just like you!

48. Behold the questioners of concealed things are there! If they could, they would measure heaven with a handspan. I do not allow questions to multiply within me or dispute to raise its [ugly] head within my ranks.

40. “Gelehrte, sich klammernd ans Dunkle, wie ihr er zu tun liebet,” Ibid.
‫‪.44‬‬

‫‪.45‬‬

‫‪.46‬‬

‫‪.47‬‬

‫‪.48‬‬

‫ܳ ܰ ܺ ܽ ܰ ܰ ܳ ܳ ̈ܽ‬
‫ܕܬܘ ܶͲ͔ ܰ‪ܶ ͸‬‬
‫ͣ͵͠ ܃‬
‫‪ΕͯͿͻ Ζ‬ܘܢ ͲͰ ͵͠ܪ‪͔Β‬‬
‫ܶ ܶ ܰ̈ ܳ ܳ ܰ̈ܳ ܳ ܰ̈ ܽ ܳ ܳ‬
‫ܘ͗͢ ‪ ͽͶͥ͘Ε͸‬ܐܦ ܬ‪ ͕ΕΒͣͼͳ͗ ͕ΕͼΎ‬܀‬
‫ܽ ܳ ܰ ܳ ܳ ܺ ̈ܶ‬
‫ܐ͔͗ ܰ‬
‫ܳ‪ܺ Ζ‬‬
‫ܗ·ʹ ̱ܗ ܳܘ͕ ܃‬
‫‪̱ Άͯ͹Β‬ܗ ܳܘ͕ ͵ͳͣܢ ܕ‪ͣ΄τ‬ܬ͕ ͵ـ͠‬
‫ܰ ܰ ܳ ܶ‬
‫ܰ ܽ ܳܶ ܰ ܰ ܺ ܳ‬
‫‪ ͕Εͯ΄Α‬܀‬
‫‪ͶͶ‬ـͼ̈ـ͔ ΄͘͠ ͻͣͲ‪͸ ͣ͛͗ ͔ͮυ‬‬
‫ܘ͵΅‬
‫ܽܳ‬
‫ܳ‪ܺ ܳͮ Ζ‬‬
‫͠΄ͯͽ ܐ ̱ͻ ܽ‬
‫‪ܳ ͠͸‬‬
‫‪Ε‬ܘܢ ܰܕ ܰ‬
‫‪ͣΒ‬ܪ͔ͮܳ ܃‬
‫͵ͦͼܰـ͔ ̱ܗܘ ܶ‪ͽ͸‬‬
‫ܕ‪ܳ ͣΒ‬‬
‫ܺ‬
‫ܪ͚͔ ܽ‬
‫ـͯ ܽ‬
‫ܘ‪ܰ ͔ͻܶ ̈͢ Ͳܳ ͰΒܰ τ‬‬
‫͵ͩͼ ܰ ̈‬
‫;ͦ‪ܰ ͽ͸ܶ Ή‬ܕ ܳ‬
‫͢ܘܢ ܀‬
‫ܰ ܳ‬
‫͵Ϳ ܶ‬
‫‪ܰ ͖υΈ‬ܐ ܺ‬
‫ܳ‪ܳ Ζ‬ܗ͕ ܳ‬
‫ܘ‪ܶ ͷΈܶ Β‬ܐ ܽ‬
‫ͦ‪ܰ ͕Ε‬‬
‫ͻͣܢ ܃‬
‫ܪ‪Έ͗ Ͱ͸‬‬
‫ܰ ܳ̈ܽܶ ܳ ܳܰ ܳ ܰ‬
‫ܘͨ ܰ͘‪ܶ Ά‬ܐ ܽ‬
‫ͻͣܢ ܀‬
‫ܘ͵ـ͘‪΍‬ܘ͔ͮ ‪Α͸΍͗ ͖͠Β‬ܬ͕‬
‫ܶ‬
‫ܳ‪ܳ͠ ͵ܰ Ζ‬ܪ ܳ‪ܰ ͔Β‬ܘ ܽ‬
‫͵ͳͣܢ ܳ‪ ͽͮܶ͠ ͸‬ܐܢ ܳܗ ܰͲͽ ̱ܗ ܽܘ ܃‬
‫ܰ ܳܶ ܶ ܰ ܳ‬
‫ܽ ܶ‬
‫ͣܬ͕ ܶ‪ܰ ͸‬‬
‫‪ ͧͳΓ‬܀‬
‫ܘܗܝ ܕܕܗܪܓ ͗͢ ‪͸‬‬
‫΄‪Α‬ܘ‪ܶ ͽ͸ ͣΎ‬ܨ ܰܐܕ ̱‬
‫ܶ ܰ‬
‫ͼͳͣܢ ܳ; ܶ‬
‫‪ܶ ͖υΈ‬‬
‫ܘ‪ܽ ͯ̈ Ͷܰ ͸ܶ ͽ͸‬‬
‫‪ܳ ΕΓ‬ܐ‪̱ Ζ‬ܐ ܳͻ͔ ܶ‪ܽ ͸‬‬
‫ͳͣܢ ܃‬
‫‪͸‬‬
‫ܳ‬
‫ܰ‬
‫ܳ‬
‫ܳ‬
‫ܺ‬
‫ܳ‬
‫ܰ‬
‫ܕ‪ͣΒ‬ܐ͵ ̈ͯ ܽ‬
‫ͮͣ͵‪ܽ ͔ͼΈ‬‬
‫ܳܘ‪̱ ͔Ώͯͼ; Ζ‬ܐͻ͔ ΄‪ܽ ͷ‬‬
‫ͳͣܢ ܀‬
‫ܶ ܰ ܰ ܶ ܰ ܰ ܳ‬
‫ܽ ܰ ܺ ܳ ܺ‬
‫ܨͮ͠ ΄‪Α‬ܬܝ ܙ͵ͣ ܘ‬
‫͓ͯͮ͘‪ Ε‬܃‬
‫‪ͣͳ͵ Η͘Ώ͸‬ܢ ͥ͘‬
‫ܳ‬
‫ܳ‬
‫ܳܗ͕ ܰ͗‪Α‬ܬ ܰ΄ ܳ‪ܳ ͔͹‬ܕܪ ܳ‬
‫ͥ‪ ͔͹‬ܕܪ ܳ‪ܰ ͔Β‬ܕ ܰ‬
‫‪ ݀ ͢͵ Ή͛ܶ Ϳ͸‬܀‬
‫̱‬
‫ܺ‬
‫ܽ ܳ ݀ ܰ ̈ܽ‬
‫ܳ‬
‫ܰ‬
‫ܺ‬
‫ܳ‬
‫ܶ‬
‫ܶ‬
‫ܳܗ͕ ܐͮ‪̱ Ε‬ܗܘ ͗͢ ܙܕܘ‪ ͔ͯΎ‬ܕ‪ ͽͯ͛Ϳ͸‬ܕܪ‪ ͽͯΒ‬܃‬
‫ܳ; ܶ‬
‫ܕ; ܺ‬
‫‪ܳ ͖υΈ‬‬
‫͘ͳͯͽ ܰ΄‪ܰ ͕Εܳ ܳͯͿ̈ Ͳܰ ͷ‬ܐͮʹ ܳܕܐܦ ܰܐ ̱ͻ ܽ‬
‫‪Ε‬ܘܢ ܀‬
‫ܳ ̈ܰ ܳ ܶ ܰ ܺ‬
‫;‪ܳ υͮܳ Ε‬ܬ͕ ܰܬ ܳ‪ܶ ͽ͸‬ܐ ܽ‬
‫ͻͣܢ ܃‬
‫ܗ͕ ‪͵͓Γ͸‬ـͼ͔ ܕ‬
‫ܰ ܳ ܰ ܰܳ ܰ ܳ‬
‫‪ͣͦΓ‬ܗ ܀݀‬
‫ܶܕ ܽ‬
‫ܪܬ͕ ܰ‪ܽ ͸‬‬
‫‪ܶ ͣΞ‬‬
‫‪̱ ͽͮ΍͸‬ܗܘܘ ܐܦ ͵‪ͤ͗ ͔ͯ͹Γ‬‬
‫͵͢ܘܢ ܶͻ ܰ‬
‫͵‪ܴ ͣܽ Γ‬ܐ ܶ‪ܳ Βܳ Ζ‬‬
‫ܳ‪̈ Ζ‬‬
‫‪Ε‬ܪ ܽ‬
‫ܽ‬
‫͗ͣܢ ܺ͗Ͱ ܃‬
‫͘‪̱ ͔Ώ‬ܐ ܳͻ͔‬
‫ͻ‪ܺ ͺͮΑ‬ܪ ܶ‪ܰ ;ܶ Εܳͼͯ͗ܰ ͢Β‬‬
‫ܳܘ‪ܳ͠ ͵ܰ Ζ‬ܪ ܳ‪ܰ ͔Β‬ܕ ܺ‬
‫͠‪τ‬ܝ ܀‬

‫‪354‬‬

‫‪776‬‬


49. I strike down every investigation occurring in me and do not permit the seed of inquiry to sprout. That Crucifier boasts about Scribes and questions. Let anyone desiring to dispute profusely go to her.

VI. The Church’s Adherence to Scriptures

50. I, the Church, lengthened my ropes in simplicity. My teaching is the same to both ordinary and wise [people]. A simple human is accepted in me just as a keen person. I receive a simple-minded individual just as an orator.

51. The entire Good News was plainly chanted to me. The teaching was not sent to me through philosophers! Wherefore should I dispute over Jesus who was crucified for me? Let his death be a witness to his love and how much he loved me.

52. I will not break [my] covenant with him with counterarguments. He is faithful to me, and God forbid that I should inquire into him like the schismatics.
If I disputed [over him], I would show I do not love him. I do not inquire [into him] that everyone may know how much I trust him.

53. I do not resemble the mad one, who disputed [over] and crucified [him] lest I forsake my Bridegroom as she [has done]. I do not hasten to [ask] crafty questions. Leave me alone that I may rest from divisive investigations.

42. “Siehe, jüdischer Geist ist in den stolzen Gelehrten und ihren ‘Problemen’,” Ibid.
43. See Is 54:2; 33:20.
45. “Ich gleiche nicht jener Närrin, die ihn am Kreuze erprobte,” Ibid.
777

49. لا تجدوا إنا نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن.

50. كنّكم نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن.

51. عّليكم نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن.

52. لا أعدنا إنا نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن.

53. لا أعدنا إنا نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن نحن.
54. O Disputants, do not debase me, for I am venerable
and do not come near the ways of baseness.
How would I abandon the bedchamber of the Bridegroom-King
and, as a stranger, ask about him in the assemblies?

55. Would the wedding guests discovering that I am asking about
him
not despise and shame me because of how debased I had become?
If I pressed on asking the [wedding] invitees about him,
I would be counted as a harlot before the lookers-on.

56. They would thus say, ‘If she did not know who the Bridegroom
was,
wherefore did she enter the bridal chamber with him without
investigation?
When she did not probe, wherefore did she wed? On that
account, she was terrified.
Now that she has entered, she has come out clamoring to learn
who he was?’

VII. The Church’s Teaching

57. I know him and have no need of questions,
for after I had inquired into him, then loved him to enter with
him.
The origin of his corporality (ܗܳܬܘܽܬ) is from the house of David.46
His glorified, divine nature is from the Exalted One.

58. His mother’s race is from the line of the house of Abraham.
His hypostasis (ܡ십시오) is the Word [stemming] from the Majesty, the
Author of [all] Origins
He put on humanity from the nation of the honorable Shem.
He sprouted like a shoot from the vine which Moses let grow.

46. See 2 Sm 7:12; Mt 1:1; Mk 12:35; Jn 7:42; Acts 13:22–23; Rom 1:3, 9:5; 2 Tm 2:8; Rev 22:16.
أَوْ هَذَا لَا لَا يَحْكَمُ عَلَى اِنَّا:
فَلَا فَعَلَ اِنَّا رَبّهُ أَصْبَحَ بَامْكَةُلاَمْء.
أَنَا أَهْفَرُ فِي ضُيُوْفِهَا وَسَدَبًا سَخَالًا:
قَامَ مَكَّتْـتُمُ حَكَمًا أَعْلَهَ كَحَكَمَةَلَمْء.

778

تَسْجِلْنَا وَمَعْتَبِرٌ إِنَّا سَيِّئَهُلَمْء:
فَلَا مَحْصُوْبٌ مَعْتَبِرٌ هَكَّذَا هَكَّذَا
إِنَّهُ ثُمَّ إِنَّا كَسَبَّعَةُ حَكَمَةٌ كَعَامَهُمْ:
آَمَّا اِنَّا فَخَذْتِمُ حَكَمًا إِنَّا ضَمِّعُ شَدَا.

55

فَاوْتِ أَحْدِثُ إِنَّا لَا بِضْحَا وَقَهَا شَدَا:
حَكَمًا كِيسَتْنَا حَكَمًا كِسَتُحَكَّمُهُ وَلا حَفْصَا:
فَلَا عَلَى يَدُهَا حَكَمًا تَصُدُّ حَدَّهُ وَإِلَّا هَدَى:
صُمُّهَا وَحَكَّمَهَا تَصُدُّهَا وَأَلِكَهُ كِسَتَهُ.

56

نَبَّأْ إِنَّا كَحَّرُ اِنَّا كَحَّرَ يَكُرُهُلَمْء:
وَكَرَّ حَكَّمَةَهُ فِي أَخْرَجَهُوَاحَكَّرَهُ
أَسْكَرْهُوَالِبَمَلَكُهُوَكَحَّرَهُ فَيَحْيَ وَأَسْقُمُ
صُلُّ هَمَّةٌ وَكَحَّرَهُوَأَهْوَاءُ فَيَلَاءُ.

57

يَنْفُعُهَا وَأَضُهُّهُ فِي هَمْمَدَا وَقَدْ أَضُظُّهُ:
صَعْبَتْهَا سَحَا فِي تُحَمَّلُهَا مَكَّا إِلَّا إِلَّا هَمَّةُـهُ.
حَكَمَهَا إِسْعَادًا أَنَّا لَا مَفْتَدَا وَفَضُّ دَعْمًا:
عَمَّا آمَّا مَفْتَدًا فِي مَفْتَدًا وَقَدْ مَفْتَدًا.

58

358
59. He is the Word, is also God, [and] is with his Begetter, and although he was not conceived, the Father begot him of his being. His divine begetting does not have a beginning, for he is with the Father, created as he did, [and] begotten of him.

60. The how and when are hidden from the mind and not intoned by the tongues of the fiery beings. His coming was at the hand of the Angel who brought his tidings. He dwelt in a virgin who was not known carnally by a mortal.

61. He entered through the ear to extirpate from it the slithering of the snake. He took on a body in a pure womb without marriage. He put on humanity to go out into the world like a person and came to birth from Mary, the daughter of David.

62. He was formed in the [womb of the] girl according to the flesh to come to birth like earthly beings according to the body. He preserved his mother’s virginal state at his birth as he exited lest the seals of the womb which carried him would be destroyed.

63. As he entered, the marital door was not sensible of him, and as he was exiting, did not break open the seals of virginity. He exited the womb [causing] birth pangs like a human being. He preserved [her] virginal state and performed a wonder, for he is God.

47. See Jn 1:1.
49. See Ps 14:4; Heb 1:7.
50. See Lk 1:26-38.
51. See Gn 3.
52. Grill does not translate this verse. See Grill, "Heiligtum der Kirche," 46.
بَلۡ لَبِّيَةٌ لَّهُ أَنْ أَكُلَّهُ مَمْثَّلٌ 
۵۹ كَمَّ مَدَّتَهَ مَنْ لَمْ يَكْلِمۡ 
۶۰ تَخُّصَّصَهُ وَحَدِيدًا مَّمۡتَعِمًّا 
۶۱ لَا مَكْبُولَ عَلَىٰ عِبۡرَةٍ وَأَدِمۡ بِهِ 
۶۲ ثُمَّ وَفۡقٌ مَكْبُولٌ حَدِيدًا وَأَدۡمَ بِهِ 
۶۳ لَا مَكْبُولَ حَدِيدًا وَأَدۡمَ بِهِ وَأَدِمۡ بِهِ
64. He afflicted his mother with pains and sufferings as he exited lest even the girl would think that she bore a spirit. His conception occurred in a great wonder divinely, yet his birth, on the other hand, in sufferings and pains humanly.

65. He made two proclamations amid his conception and birth:
Divinity and humanity are in the one savior. He became a blessed baby in Bethlehem in a despicable manger, yet since he was the Adored One, the shepherds requited him what is his.

66. He put on swaddling clothes to make known that he came to feebleness, yet heaven arose, came down, and prostrated before him, along with its children. He grew up in the house of Joseph like a needy person, yet since he was the King, he received tribute from those far away.

67. He became a runaway from Herod on the road to Egypt, but since he is the King of kings, he destroyed, by his death, the crown that persecuted him. He showed that he had truly put on a coward body, and like a frightened person, the Might One fled from a helpless man.

54. “Daß man nicht meine von ihr, sie habe nur geistig geboren,” Ibid. For Jacob of Sarug refuting docetism in his mimre, see Bou Mansour, “Christologie,” 484-491.
55. “Divinity and humanity are at the hand of the Savior.” HSJS IV,” 780, footnote 1. The body of the text has Divinity and humanity are at the hand of the Savior. The expression in the footnote fits better the context of this section of the mimro.
56. See Lk 2:7, 12.
57. See Lk 2:8-20.
58. See Lk 2:7, 12.
59. See Mt 1:18-25, 2:19-23.
60. See Mt 2:1-12.
64. أُعِيدَتْ لَهُمْ حَرَائِيَّةٌ مَّنفَعًا كَمَّ نَعْصَهَا حَرَائِيَّةٌ حَلَّىٰ نَعْصَهَا.

65. كَانَ كَلَمَتُهُ كَلَمَتَهُ أُرَيَّلٌ أُرَيَّلٌ حَلَّىٰ كَلَمَتُهُ كَلَمَتَهُ كَلَمَتُهُ كَلَمَتَهُ.

66. كَانَ كَلَمَتُهُ كَلَمَتَهُ وَكَلَمَتُهُ كَلَمَتَهُ كَلَمَتُهُ كَلَمَتَهُ.

67. كَانَ كَلَمَتُهُ حَلَّىٰ حَلَّىٰ حَلَّىٰ حَلَّىٰ حَلَّىٰ حَلَّىٰ حَلَّىٰ.
68. He returned to Nazareth to take the name Nazarene from it. He grew up to restore to humanity what belonged to it. He observed in weakness the order of nature for thirty years that the image of Adam might be fully grown in him, and then he would ascend.

69. He came to baptism not because he was in need of forgiveness but to perfect the justice found in the Law. He was baptized in a river yet not sanctified more than he was, and he poured his holiness into the bosom of the waters to sanctify all.

70. The priests’ treasury was poured out to alight on him although he did not receive an increase from John. John poured Aaron’s [priestly] consecration upon the Holy One, to render empty the right of succession that was at the hands of Moses.

71. The High Priest took away the priesthood from the Levites that the hand might go out from him into the world to forgive it. He perfected the way of the ancient ways, made them come to an end, and began on a new way to the kingdom.

62. See Mt 2:23.
64. See Lk 24:50-53; Acts 1:6-12.
65. See Mt 3:13-17; Mk 1:9–11; Lk 3:21–22; Jn 1:31–34.
66. See Mt 3:15.
68. See Ex 29:1-9, 30:30; Lev 8:12.
70. “Aufhob er das Hochpriester tum der levitischen Priester, daß ausgehe eines von ihm, ein (neues) die Welt zu entsühnen,” Ibid., 49.
71. “Auf neuem Wege begann er zu bauen das Haus seines Reiches,” Ibid.
68. رضى مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ:

لا يُمَثِّلُ مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

بِمَعِيَّةِ مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

69. إِلَّا هَوَّادُ مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

لا لَا يُعَدُّهُ مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

هَوَّادُ مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

70. مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

لا لَا يُعَدُّهُ مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

71. مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

لا لَا يُعَدُّهُ مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ

مَلِكُ وَأَمْضَى مَا نَبَّأْتُ مِنْ وَسُوءِهِ
72. The Great Sea descended and was baptized in a small river that the [priestly] consecration he sent from Mount Sinai might be poured out upon it. That priesthood the Father entrusted to Aaron’s family is what Christ took away from John at the baptism.

73. He deprived them of the priesthood that remained with him. The [priestly] consecration was not added to him in the waters. Up until his [advent], the horn of anointing seethed, and after he had come, the oil of all priests ceased.

74. He came up out of the river just as he had gone down to it without an increase although the brooklets of the children of Levi was poured out upon him. He entered the contest, not for the purpose of winning, for he was the Victor, but to give Adam the means by which he would be justified.

75. He undertook the contest as a man and fought Satan, that weakness shame the pride of that strong one. With human strength, he defeated the powerful athlete and made him a laughingstock to anyone who would come that they would mock him.

72. “Eine tiefes Meer stieg herab in ihm, doch er wurde getauft Flüßchen, Daß aufhöre die Weihe, die er gesandt von Sinais Höhen,” Ibid.
73. “Das Priestertum, das der Vater anvertraut den Nachkommen Aarons, Hob auf der Messias und zugleich auch des Johannes Taufe,” Ibid.
74. “Die Quellen der Levisöhne mußten durch ihn versiegen,” Ibid.
75. See Mt 4:1-11; Mk 1:12-13; Lk 4:1–13.
72. سميًا لذي شهد على حكمه حكمًا بحكّمًا:
وهكاكما إكمالًا في له، وكم حكمه، سكّنًا:
الف، فصيلة الله، إن هذا آدمًا:
حكّمه، ضعفًا حكم، سكّنًا في نسائى.

73. حكمتقم، في صفعة الله، وكتابًا:
حكّمه، موصلاً آدمًا، فحّة في رحالة:
حكّه، لا يد له، مائدة، وسمعة:
كمًا، ألا! هذا هكذا، حكّمه، ونال في صفعة.

74. حكمتقم في توأمه، ونابأ حكم، ولا أبهضًا:
 hoá راها وحده، حكم، أحكمًا،
نابأ، أو يعده، حكّم، حكّمه، أحكمًا:
ألا! فعال، حكّه، لي، يوم شامًا حز.

75. حكم إنشادًا، نابأ قائمًا، حكم ضعفًا:
حكّمه، سكّنًا، نابأ شامًا، وسماً، فحّة،
حكّسه، إنها، إكمالًا، كمًا، كمًا، أحكمًا،
حكّمه، ضعفًا حكم، ألا! بحكّه، حز.
76. After the frailty of the adversary had been revealed, the Savior emerged from the struggle to care for his own. He began to make signs to the earth that it might be aware of his divinity while teaching and showing it the might of his being.

77. He joined the exalted to lower things on the road he undertook that the world might be aware of his divinity and humanity: In part, he was invited to a wedding feast, and, also in part, he changed water into good wine.76

78. In part, he became weary on the road [and] asked for water, and, also in part, he gave life to those who so desired.77 At one place he wept over a deceased, and his tears ran down,78 yet after a little while, he called him out of the tomb, and he came out.79

79. Heavenly and earthly [things] were united, for they were bound together to onlookers: While they were seeking to see him, for he was asleep and still,80 they saw that when he rebukes the wind and sea, they obey him.81

80. As they gazed at him sitting and being happy among sinners,82 they also saw that he forgives the sins of the needy. Whenever they saw that he hungered83 and was weary as a helpless person,84 he multiplied bread, sated thousands, and made them marvel.85

76. See Jn 2:1-11.
77. See Jn 4:4-42.
78. See Jn 11:25.
79. See Jn 11:1-44.
80. See Lk 8:24.
81. See Mt 8:23-27; Mk 4:35–40; Lk 8:22–25.
82. See Mt 9:11
83. See Mt 4:2.
84. See Jn 4:6.
78. 368

79. 368

80. 368
81. Whenever they heard that the priests were determined to kill him, they draw closer, met the dead he had raised, and took heart. By the feeble things he endured, he confirmed his body, and, by the wonders, he showed the might of his divinity.

82. Whoever sought to deny him [saying,] ‘he is not God,’ he bound them with the signs as with fetters. Whoever erred by rejecting his body [saying], ‘it is not from us,’ he reproved them by the weakness manifested in it.”

83. “The apostles betrothed me to the Adored One,” the Church said, “I know him and have no need of Disputants. I learned the entire generation of my Betrothed from his heralds. Let no one come to play the wise with me by their pride!

84. I am sorry for you, O Disputants, lest you would be defeated. Indeed, I am not terrified of you, and, for this reason, I judge. I am confident that the bars of Sheol shall not prevail over me. How then will you word overpower me?

85. Behold my Betrothed’s promise to me! So, I am confident that the gates of death will not prevail over me, and I will not be overpowered. Since my dowry had been written by his finger, who can settle it, and the Bridegroom, who offered himself to me, is my marriage portion?

86. See 2 Cor 11:2.
87. See Mt 16:18.
88. See Ex 24:12, 31:18, 32:15–16; Dt 5:22.
81. حكمة أٔنَا أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا، أُتِمْ بِهَا كُلُّ حَقٍّ، أُتِمْ بِهَا كُلُّ كَرَاءٍ، 
>: مَقَلَّةٌ أَيُّهَا مُقَلَّةٌ، وَشِمْ أَيُّهَا مُقَلَّةٌ، 
> حَكَمَةٌ وَتَبَرَّأَتْ، حَكَمَةٌ تَبَرَّأَتْ، 
>: مَقَلَّةٌ لَّكَ مُقَلَّةٌ، مَقَلَّةٌ لَّكَ مُقَلَّةٌ.

82. أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا وَمِنْهَا حَقُّهُ، وَكَلَّمْهُ، كَلَّمْهُ، 
>: حَكَمَةٌ أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا وَمِنْهَا حَقُّهُ، 
> لَكَ حَقُّهُ وَلَسَى مَسَى فِي مَسَى، وَكَلَّمْهُ، 
>: حَكَمَةٌ أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا وَمِنْهَا حَقُّهُ،

83. حَكَمَةٌ أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا مُكَلْسَمَا مُكَلْسَمَا، أُتِمْ بِهَا كُلُّ حَقٍّ، 
>: بُعْصٌ إِنَّهُ أَيُّهَا مُكَلْسَمَا وَقَدْ أَيُّهَا لَمْ يَسْعَطْ إِنَّهُ، 
> مَكْلَّمَةٌ وَمِنْهَا حَقُّهُ وَلَسَى مَسَى تَكَامِلُهُ، 
>: أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا مُكَلْسَمَا مُكَلْسَمَا أُتِمْ بِهَا كُلُّ حَقٍّ.

84. حَكَمَةٌ أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا لَا مُكَلْسَمَةٌ، 
>: حَكَمَةٌ أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا مُكَلْسَمَا وَقَدْ أَيُّهَا لَمْ يَسْعَطْ إِنَّهُ، 
> مَكْلَّمَةٌ أَيُّهَا أَيُّهَا مُكَلْسَمَا لَا مُكَلْسَمَةٌ، 
>: قَاتِلَ مَكَلْسَمًا وَمِنْهَا حَقُّهُ، مَكَلْسَمًا;

85. مَقَلَّةٌ وَتَبَرَّأَتْ، مَقَلَّةٌ وَتَبَرَّأَتْ إِنَّهُ، 
>: مَقَلَّةٌ وَتَبَرَّأَتْ، مَقَلَّةٌ وَتَبَرَّأَتْ، 
> إِنَّهُ، حَكَمَةٌ مُكَلْسَمَا وَقَدْ أَيُّهَا لَمْ يَسْعَطْ إِنَّهُ;

784
86. If he desired to separate me from him, it would be impossible, and he could not, for he would have to deny himself because he is with me. She who leaves will lay claim to her dowry, for it is hers, and will take with her everything written in the [marital] bonds.

87. How can I leave when my dowry is the Bridegroom? Even if I left — God forbid that I would leave — he would come with me. I am joined to him, and there is no way that I separate from him, for I am with him whether in life or death!

88. Since I am thus joined to him, and he is laying holding of me, why will you, Learned, drag my Bridegroom in a dispute?”

VIII. The Poet’s Supplications

89. Virgin Girl, bring your account to a close. I regard you with wonder. No one comes between you and your Bridegroom. Do not let go of your Husband! Behold wonder fell upon the assemblies by your eloquence. With confidence, we pronounce your verdict, “You are victorious!”

90. Behold you abandoned the Disputants to defeat. The side of the learned raised its finger, yet you triumphed. Do not lay blame on me, for I did not investigate your Lord. He testifies that I did not arrogantly violate his concealed things.

90. See 2 Tm 12-13.
86. 

87. 

88. 

89. 

90. 

372
91. Know what I mean based on my sayings, for they plainly utter hymns that please you. I have never pressed on speaking cunningly nor have I given dispute an opportunity to dwell in me.

92. May whoever seeks to divide you, Church, leave you, and whoever exalts themselves to inquire into your Lord not adore him. May whoever causes a schism among your assemblies not enter you, and whoever disturbs your simplicity be entangled.

93. May whoever ruffles you by their counterarguments not be received, and the word of the one who disputes in you to cause harm come to an end. May whoever stretches their hand to controversy be reproached in you, and the soul of the one who causes quarrel in you be damned.

94. May whoever incites dangerous billows against you be drowned in them, and the life of the one who finds fault in your faith end. May whoever turns you away from the truth become a laughingstock and your Lord hate the one who innovates your truth with time.

95. May the voice of the one who goes back on their word for the sake of someone be silent, and whoever deride your simplicity be reviled. May the feet of the one who plays the wise within you to stir up his [horde] buckle, and whoever troubles you bear judgment. 92

92. See Gal. 5:10
91. فقد تعطى عقيدة، أينك أ센터؟:
لا مسجد شيخًا، يعني أ센터.
لا كهنة، إنما أセンター.

92. أينك وجها يهديك، كبر، نعمة شمسه:
لا إسلام، إسلام، يعني أセンター.
لا كهنة، إنما أセンター.

93. وَمَرْكَزَ كُلَّ جَهَةٍ هُمْهُ أَضْفُعُ وَمَرْكَزَ كُلَّ عِبَادَةٍ تَهْدِيَهُ آمِنًا
لا إسلام، إسلام، يعني أセンター.
لا كهنة، إنما أセンター.

94. وَحَدِيثَ حَكِيفٍ، يَكُونُ عِبَادَةً حَجَّةٍ تَدْخِلُ بِهِ
لا إسلام، إسلام، يعني أセンター.
لا كهنة، إنما أセンター.

95. وَفَقِيكُمُ شَوَىِّهَا، إنفاذًا فَكُلَّهُ شَرَىِّهَا:
لا إسلام، إسلام، يعني أセンター.
لا كهنة، إنما أセンター.
96. May the word on the tongue of whoever reproaches you cease, and death shut the mouth of whoever quarrels with and scorn you, May whoever draws a bow toward you be struck with its arrow and the spear enter the heart of whoever is hurling it at you.

97. May whoever establishes a side to weigh against you be scattered, and whoever summons you to strife retreat [in defeat]. May the mount of the one who rides pride to pursue you be wearied out, and their neck break by their fall for threatening you.

98. May you trample on kings, may you not be conquered by rulers and your heel be lifted up higher than the shoulders of the governors of the earth. May your bosom be dilated larger than the edges of all the regions, and you close the gate, and all sovereignties be enclosed within you.

99. May your ropes be lengthened even longer than the seas and rivers and your poles not be entirely pulled out by any wind. May your wall surpass even the firmament by its force, and you be a fortress and all nations be sheltered in you.

100. May you be a fishnet capable of catching the sea and land, and may the world be taken in your bosom to life at the hands of your Lord. May your head be exalted high above sovereigns and lords, and nothing reach you in greatness.

---

93. See Is 54:2; 33:20.
لا يوجد نص يمكن قراءته بشكل طبيعي من الصورة المقدمة.
101. May you place your foot above the high necks of kings
to trample every kingdom under that which belongs to you.
May heaven be spread lower than your edifice, and you be raised
up,
and high mountains become depths before your habitations.

102. May the dense forests fall before your vegetation and your fruit
sprout,
you set fire to orchards, and you grow.
May your horn be exalted above judges and their authorities
and every horn that gores you be hewn down by you.

103. May your mouth be opened against your enemies surrounding
you,
the voices of those who quarrel with you be silent, and your
[voice] thunder.
May your harvest multiply while your seed produces a
hundredfold\textsuperscript{94}
and fire consume the tares pricking you.

104. May the word spread among the nations that the Church is risen
to high honors,
while every power is despised, but your [power] remains.
May the sick who were led astray by the schism be healed in you
and possess the strong faith from your teaching.

105. May you lift up the hand of those who fell, and they stand in you
while the rifts among your ranks may no longer be seen.
May you be salt,\textsuperscript{95} the tasteless be seasoned with you,
and everyone possess a sweet taste from your meditation.

\textsuperscript{94} See Mt 12:23, 19:29.
\textsuperscript{95} See Mt 5:13; Mk 9:50; Lk 14:34–35.
101. ۱۰۱. ﷽ ﷼ ﷺ ﷽ ﷼ ﷻ ﷼ ﷺ ﷽ ﷼ ﷼ ﷼ ﷼ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ 

787

102. ۱۰۲. ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ 

103. ۱۰۳. ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ 

104. ۱۰۴. ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ 

105. ۱۰۵. ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ ﷽ 

378
106. May your assembly increase with singing choirs
   until heaven, you sister, becomes envious of you and imitates you.
   May the hymns of praise ascend from you, the watchers rejoice, and your chants be an illustration to the companions Gabriel.

107. May your children praise the Lord in you without inquiry and the sayings of the heavenly beings be chanted in you. May a sea of praise gush out and thrust out of your lips, and the world bathe in holiness poured out in you.

108. May you, altogether, learn the sweet singing of the Seraphim and inquiry be not recited in your midst by the Disputants. May the Wise be reformed in you lest they may be puffed up and compose plain hymns to the delight of your assemblies.

109. May the priests responsible for your service be made to shine in you while they are kept pure from controversy like heavenly beings. May the Spirit enshroud the deacons ministering in you, and they distribute with great care the Mystery carried in you.

110. May chaste covenant be a diadem on your exalted and the oil in the guarded vessels of your virginity increase. May marriage, along with its purity, rejoice in you, and holiness and its respect be also exalted in you.

111. May you be the cause of virtues to all ranks and renew the world that grew old because of its sores.
لا يوجد نص قابل للقراءة بشكل طبيعي من الصورة المقدمة.
IX.  The End

112. And I, insignificant [servant], not worthy of your account,
adjure you by the life of the Bridegroom to pray for me.
Your Lord [is due praise,] you [are owed] victory, and I [ask for]
forgiveness.
O Bridegroom who betrothed the Church by his blood, have pity
on me, a sinner.

The end of the mimro Against the Scrutinizers and on the Sanctity of the Church of
446 hemistichs96

---

96. The Syriac text Bedjan published contains only 444 hemistichs, two hemistichs less than
what the end of the mimro claims.
112. فإنما حَرَّباً ولَّهُ خُذُوهُ أَلَّا تُحِصَّ؛
حَسَّنَتْ سَلَامًا كَمَا إِنَا حَصَّ أَفْسَعَ سَكَّفًهُ;
حَمَّلَتْ مَعْصِمًا مَكْحُولًا إِنَّهُ مَكْحُولًا;
شَلَّينَ هُمْ كِبْرُاءُ كَيْفَهُ سَيَسْتَغْفَرَهُ.

هَكَنِئِمْ مَعَدَّةً وَكَمَالًا فِي هَذَا مَعْوَى حُبّاً
فِي يَنْفُصُ فِي أَوْحَانتُهُ تَأْوِيْحٌ مَعْدَةً. ً

Kapitel 1: Leben und Werke des Jakob von Sarug

Die zur Rekonstruktion des Lebens des Jakob von Sarug zu Gebote stehenden Quellen erweisen sich aufgrund der hagiographischen Stilisierung als kaum glaubwürdig. Es lassen sich aus ihnen nur wenige authentische Auskünfte gewinnen, die aber eine grobe Skizze seines Lebens erlauben.

unbekannte Versmaß zugeschrieben, als dessen Erfinder und Namensgeber er gilt.


Insbesondere stellt sich die Frage nach Jakobs Haltung zur Annahme des Konzils von Chalcedon (451), zumal er sowohl von der Syrisch-Orthodoxen Kirche, die dem Konzils ablehnend gegenübersteht, als auch von der chalcedonischen Maronitischen Kirche in Anspruch genommen wird. In

384


Kapitel 2. Kirche als Gebäude auf Golgotha


einmalig, aber es wiederholt sich durch das eucharistische Sakrament, das die Kirche auf ihrem Altar feiert. Demnach nimmt Abrahams und Isaaks Altar Bezug auf die Kirche, das Haus der Geheimnisse.


Golgotha bildhaft dar: Moses mit hocherhobenen Armen als das Kreuz. So konnten die Israeliten wegen des Gekreuzigten endgültig den Kampf gegen die Amalekiter gewinnen. Der Stein, worauf er sitzt, erweist sich als die Kirche am Ort der Kreuzigung. Durch das Kreuz, das an der Spitze der Kirche steht, gewinnt die Kirche den Kampf gegen das Böse der Welt und bleibt immer siegreich, weil Jesus Christ, der Gekreuzigte, für immer seine Arme erhoben hält.

**Kapitel 3. Kirche als Fischer und Fischernetz**


Jesus Christus, der Fischer, steht mit dem Fischernetz als Symbol der Kirche in Zusammenhang, weil er derjenige ist, der das Netz sozusagen in das Meer der Welt auswirft. Sein Zweck besteht darin, dass es die Menschen zu Jesus Christus zieht und sie einfängt, um ihnen das ewige Leben zu spenden. Dafür benutzt er verschiedene „Fallen“. Was für Bedeutung dieser Ausdruck hat, verdeutlichen die folgenden zwei Beispiele.

Im Ersten geht es darum, wie Jesus Christus die Magier (vgl. Mt 2,1–12) fängt. Diese interessieren sich für Planeten, Gestirne, Himmelskörper und Zodiakalastrologie, und zwar für alles, was sich am Himmel befindet und sich bewegt. Genau in der Himmelsgegend stellt der Sohn Gottes seinen Köder bzw. seine Falle auf, um sie einzufangen, weil er ein Meisterfänger ist. Er verbirgt sich mittendrin und liegt in Lauerstellung. Der Meisterfänger weiß, was der exakt passende Köder ist. Wenn er den Magiern Propheten geschickt hätte, würden sie die Gottgesandten steinigen und umbringen. Ihre Botschaft wäre der falsche Köder. Für die Sterndeuter ist der leuchtende Stern
der richtige Köder. Tatsächlich folgen die Magier dem Stern, kommen zu Jesus Christus, und fallen vor ihm nieder.

Das zweite Beispiel zeigt, wie Jesus Christus das Wasser als Köder verwendet, um die Samariterin und durch sie die Samariter (vgl. Joh 4,1–42) zu fangen. In der Absicht, ein Gespräch mit der samaritanischen Frau zu halten, kommt Jesus zum Brunnen. Er wusste vorher, dass sie dahin kommt. Seine Müdigkeit und sein Durst sind bloß eine Ausrede, damit er sie treffen kann. Außerdem, weil er sie allein anreden will, verwendet er seinen Hunger als Vorwand und schickt seine Jünger, ihm Essen zu besorgen. Als die dürstende samaritanische Frau an den Brunnen kommt, fängt Jesus an sie anzusprechen und sie um Wasser zu bitten. Seine Unterhaltung mit ihr ist die Falle und das Wasser der Köder. Er offenbart ihr, dass er Christus ist und ihr lebendiges Wasser gibt, damit sie nie mehr durstig wird. So fängt er sie und sie glaubt an ihn. Infolgedessen kehrt sie sofort ins Dorf zurück und brachte zu ihm die Samariter, die ebenso an ihn glaubten.

Im Gegensatz zu dem wohltätigen Jesus Christus, der den Menschen das ewige Leben spendet und die Erlösung verleiht, gibt es aber auch einen Gegenspieler: einen blutdürstigen Fänger, das Böse, um die Menschen, wie schon im Paradies, zu vernichten. Die folgenden zwei Beispiele zeigen, dass der Böse auch ein Meisterfänger ist und erklären weiter, dass er sich mit der Absicht trägt, die Menschen zunichtezumachen. Aber weil Gottvater barmherzig ist, schickt er seinen Sohn, damit er die Menschen von ihrem Unglück erlöst.

Das erste Beispiel für den bösen Meisterfänger ist die Darstellung vom Mann, der von der Legion Dämonen besessen ist (vgl. Lk 8,26–39). Das Böse verabscheute die Menschheit, seitdem Adam und Eva geschaffen sind. Der unversöhnliche Hass des Bösen auf die Menschen führt zahlreiche böse Geister, die sich normalerweise verachten, zusammen. Sie vereinigen sich, um einen Mann zu fangen und von ihm Besitz zu ergreifen. Sie quälen ihn zu Tode und ihretwegen lebt er nicht mehr wie ein normaler Mensch zu Hause,


Die Kirche ist nicht nur ein Fischnetz, sondern auch eine Menschenfischerin, insofern sie den Fischer, Jesus Christ, nachahmt. Sobald er Menschen fängt, schickt er sie, damit sie seine Botschaft weitergeben. Die Magier und die Samariterin sind zwei Beispiele dafür. Als die Magier zu Herodes mit der Botschaft der Geburt Christi kamen, waren sie schon zu neuen Aposteln Christi geworden. Der irdische König lehnte ihre Kunde ab und versuchte den himmlischen König umzubringen. Sie kehrten trotzdem in

Als Sinnbild der Kirche sind auch Petrus und die Jünger Jesu zu Menschenfischern berufen (vgl. Mt 4,19; Mk 1,17; Lk 5,10). Petrus traf die falsche Entscheidung, als er und einige Jünger zum Fischen gingen. Sie hätten keinen Fisch fangen können, weil das Fischen nicht mehr ihr Beruf war. Am Ufer fordert sie Jesus aufs Neue auf Menschenfischer zu werden. Dieses Mal legen die Apostel Jesu ihren Fischerberuf ab und nehmen endgültig die neue Berufung an.

Jesus fängt auch Paulus für den Dienst der Heilsbotschaft. Mit großem Eifer diente Paulus Gott, sodass er die Christen verfolgte. Dieser Eifer verwendet Jesus, um Paulus an sich zu reißen. Diese Gefangenschaft aber veranlasst der Herr, ohne die Person zu zwingen, und damit wird der Verfolger zum Verfolgten, insofern als Paulus nach seiner Bekehrung zum Christentum, die Botschaft Christi in die Welt verbreitet.

Kapitel 4. Kirche als Garten von Eden auf der Erde


Der vom Gott gepflanzte Weinstock ist Adam, dessen Nachwuchs, Kain und Abel (vgl. Gen 4,1–7), seine Früchte, Sprosse und Weinbeeren darstellen. Wegen des Sündenfalls zertrampelt Adam die Weinrebe, die trotz Adams Handlung Trauben trägt und zu einem großen Weingarten wird, weil Adams Sünde nicht vernichten kann, was Gott erschaffen hat. Des Weiteren bringt dieser Weingarten wilde, saure Weinreben, weshalb ihn eine Sintflut (vgl. Gen 8) überflutet und den ganzen Stock – außer einer süßen Weintraube,


Auch der Feigenbaum versinnbildlicht gemäß Jakob von Sarug die Kirche. Der von Jesus verfluchte Feigenbaum (vgl. Mt 21,18–22; Mk 11,12–14; Mk 11,20–25) stellt Israel dar, weil er ihm die Frucht des Glaubens verweigert. Hingegen ist der Feigenbaum, worauf Zachäus klettert, um einen Blick auf Jesus werfen zu können (vgl. Lk 19,1–10), ein Symbol für die Kirche, indem Zachäus die köstliche Frucht dieses Baumes ist. Seine Tat bezeugt seinen Glauben an Jesus Christ.

Pflanzungsbilder gelten nicht nur für die Kirche, sondern auch für Jesus Christus, den die Weintraube, der Ölbaum und der Baum des Lebens symbolisieren. Diese Sinnbilder sind mit der Kirche verbunden, indem Jesus Christus die Quelle des Lebens der Kirche ist.


Jesus Christus, auf den dieses Bildsymbol verweist, ist diese wahrhaftige Weintraube, die zum Heilmittel der Welt wird, wenn sie auf Golgotha ausgepresst wird. In dieser Ansicht geht es eindeutig um das Wasser und Blut, die aus der mit der Lanze durchstoßenen Seite Jesus herausflossen. Dieses eucharistische Blut, das die niederfallende Kirche trinkt, ist die Arznei der Welt. Die Seite Christi ist dementsprechend die Quelle des sakramentalen Lebens der Kirche. Das heißt, dass Jesus Christ das Ursakrament ist.

beauftragt er seine Jünger, alle Menschen zu seinen Jüngern zu machen und sie zu taufen (vgl. Mt 28,19).


In der Szene der Verklärung des Herrn (vgl. Mt 17,1–19; Mk 9,2–10; Lk 9,28–36) stellt Jakob von Sarug Moses und Elija als diejenigen hin, die schon diesen Schlüssel besaßen. Diese Propheten überliefern ihre Schlüssel, ihre Vollmacht, den Aposteln, Johannes und Petrus. Der Ausdruck „Im Anfang“ (vgl. Gen 1,1; Joh 1,1) ermöglicht die Verknüpfung zwischen Moses und Johannes, die beauftragt werden zu schreiben, und der von „binden und lösen“ zwischen Elija und Petrus, die Macht über die Schöpfung ihnen vergönnt ist (vgl. 2. Kön 2,1–14).


Kapitel 5. Kirche als Jungfrau Braut Christi


Der Abstieg Gottes auf den Berg Sinai (vgl. Ex 19) deutet nach Interpretation des Bischofs von Batnan auf die Absicht des himmlischen Vaters hin, seinen Sohn mit der Menschheit zu verloben. Aber die Verlobte in der Wüste Sinai war nicht die Kirche, sondern Israel, das Volk, das Moses durch die Macht Gottes von der pharaonischen Tyrannie befreit hat, aus Ägypten zum Sinai, dem Ort der Verlobung, geführt hat, und zu ihrem Verlobten gebracht hat. Dort machte Moses drei Tage lang das Volk Israel, die Braut, bereit, die schon die auf das Bundesangebot Gottes deutende eheliche Verbindung angenommen hatte, indem er sie reinigte (vgl. Ex 19,10). Darauf ist Gott, mit dunklen, dichten, schweren Wolken (vgl. Ex 19,9) verhüllt, von lautstarkem Donner und furchterregenden Blitzen (vgl. Ex 19,16) begleitet, endlich auf die Bergspitze herabgestiegen, währenddessen der Berg schon in Rauch und Flammen gehüllt war und gewaltig bebte (vgl. Ex 19,18–19). Auf der Bergspitze Sinai hat Gott für seine Verlobte das Brautgemach, wo die Vereinigung Gottes mit der Menschheit geschehen sollte, vorbereitet. Die Verlobung hätte in der Wüste Sinai stattfinden können, aber diese gewaltigen Erscheinungen haben die Braut so in Schrecken versetzt, dass sie den Bräutigam abgewiesen hat, indem sie ihn des Nachts um die Verlobung betrog. Diese Untreue bezieht sich auf die Handlung des Volkes Gottes, das ein von Menschen hergestelltes goldenes Kalb angebetet hat (vgl. Ex 32,1–6); damit ist es von dem Weg abgewichen, den Gott ihm vorgeschrieben hat (Ex


Im Gegensatz zu Israel verliebte sich die Kirche der Nationen in Jesus Christus. Gott auf dem Berg Sinai hatte die Absicht Israel mit den wundervollen, prachtvollen Erscheinungen zu erfüllen. Dagegen bewirken sie das Gegenteil: das befreite Volk hatte Angst vor Gott und hat sich für die Götter entschieden. Obgleich diese Herrlichkeit Gottes der Kirche nicht offenbart wurde, hat sie sich Jesus Christus angeschlossen. Dieser hatte eine bescheidene Geburt (vgl. Lk 2,7,12), war hungrig (vgl. Mt 4,2) und durstig (vgl. Joh 19,28), und musste arbeiten (vgl. Joh 5,17). Außerdem wurde er in Versuchung geführt (vgl. Mt 4,1–11), Anführer der Dämonen genannt (vgl. Mt 9,34), geschmäht, weil er mit Zöllnern und Sündern aß (vgl. Mt 9,11). Darüber hinaus hatte er keinen Ort, wo er sein Haupt niederlegen konnte (vgl. Mt 8,20), wusch er die Füße seiner Jünger (vgl. Joh 13,1–11), wurde angespuckt und geschlagen (Mt 27,30; Mk 15,19; Lk 23,16; Joh 19,1), mit einem Kranz aus Dornen gekrönt (vgl. Mt 27,29; Mk 17,17; Joh 19,2,5), trug er sein Kreuz (vgl. Joh 19,17), wurden seine Füße und Hände ans Kreuz genagelt (vgl. Mt 27,35; Mk 15,24; Lk 23,33; Joh 19,18; 20,25; 20,27), wurde seine Seite mit einer Lanze durchbohrt (vgl. Joh 19,34), wurde er begraben (vgl. Mt 27,59–60; Mk 15,46; Lk 23,53; Joh 19,39–42). Trotz alledem halte die Kirche sich an ihn und ist ihm stets treu. Infolgedessen erwählte sich der Bräutigam die Kirche und vermählte sich mit ihr am Kreuz.

Diese Ehe zwischen Jesus Christus und der Kirche ist unaufloslich. Moses hatte schon diese Ehe angekündigt, als er schrieb, „Darum verlässt der

Das Hochzeitsmahl fand auf Golgotha statt und das Ehepaar bietet den Bräutigam, die Eucharistie, den Leib und das Blut Christi, als die Hochzeitsspeise. Alle sind eingeladen, aber diejenigen, die kommen werden, sind die, die an Jesus Christus glauben. Das Kleid der Braut ist gleichzeitig weiß und rot. Diese Farben weisen auf das von der Seite Jesu hervorstömende Wasser und Blut, auf die Taufe und Eucharistie, hin.


**Anhang. Gedicht 134: Die Forschung und das Heiligtum der Kirche**


Jakob von Sarug personifizierte die Kirche und stellte sich vor, dass die Kirche in eine heftige Auseinandersetzung mit Grüblern, die den Gottessohn erforschen, geraten ist. Der historische, theologische Hintergrund dieses Gedichtes ist eindeutig das Konzil von Chalcedon (451), aber die Persönlichkeit dieser Grübler ist unklar.


402


Cardahi, Gabriel. Liber thesauri de arte poetica Syrorum nec non de eorum poetarum vitis et carminibus. Roma: Typographia Polyglotta, 1875.


——. “Christological Insights in Jacob of Serugh’s Typology as Reflected in His Memre.” ETL, 77:1, (201): 46-72.


Phillips, George. A Letter By Mar Jacob, Bishop of Edessa, on Syriac Orthography; Also a Tract By the Same Author, and a Discourse By Gregory Bar Hebrews on Syriac Accents. London, Edinburgh: Williams and Norgate, 1869.


